

City University of New York (CUNY)

## CUNY Academic Works

---

Open Educational Resources

New York City College of Technology

---

2021

### Elementary College Geometry (2021 ed.)

Henry Africk

*CUNY New York City College of Technology*

[How does access to this work benefit you? Let us know!](#)

More information about this work at: [https://academicworks.cuny.edu/ny\\_oers/44](https://academicworks.cuny.edu/ny_oers/44)

Discover additional works at: <https://academicworks.cuny.edu>

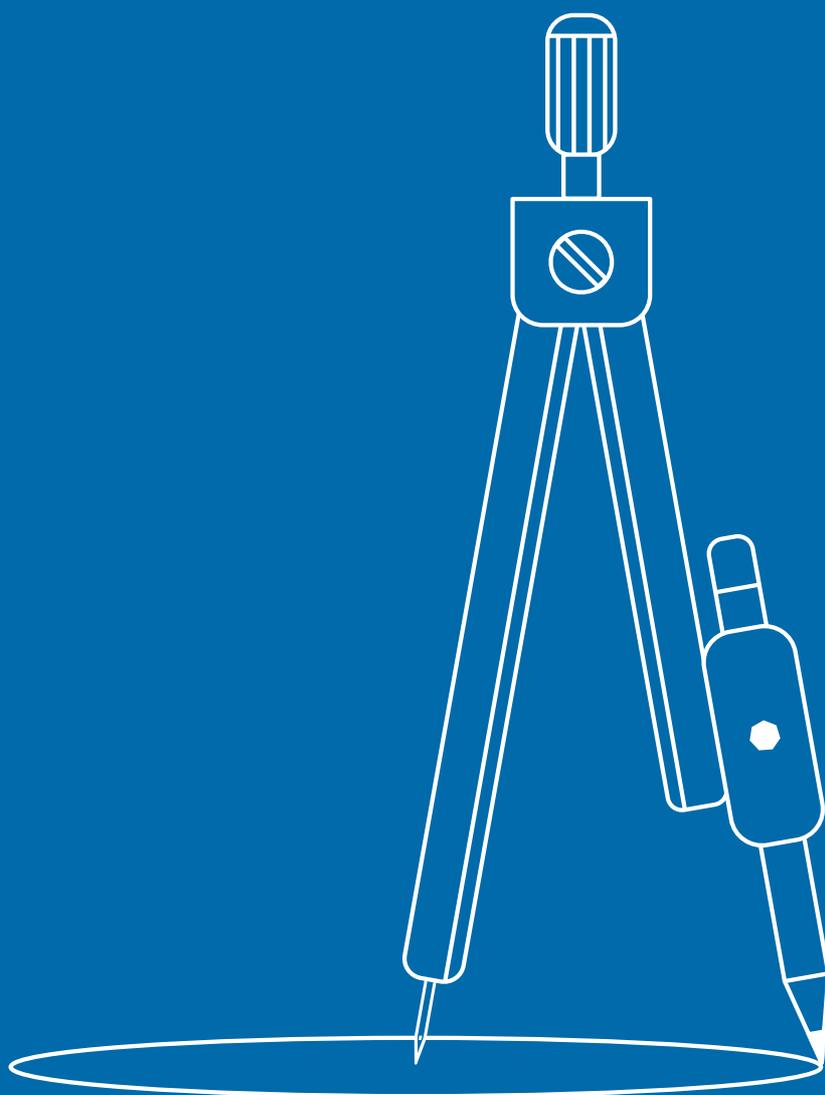
---

This work is made publicly available by the City University of New York (CUNY).

Contact: [AcademicWorks@cuny.edu](mailto:AcademicWorks@cuny.edu)

# Elementary College Geometry

*Henry Africk*



# Elementary College Geometry

*Henry Africk*

NEW YORK CITY COLLEGE OF  
TECHNOLOGY

2021 edition with corrections and  
new diagrams

This work is licensed under a Creative  
Commons Attribution - NonCommercial - ShareAlike 4.0 License  
(CC BY-NC-SA 4.0)



To view a copy of the license, visit:

<https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/4.0/>

**You are free to:**

**Share** — copy and redistribute the material in any medium or format

**Adapt** — remix, transform, and build upon the material

The licensor cannot revoke these freedoms as long as you follow the license terms.

**Under the following terms:**

**Attribution** — You must give appropriate credit, provide a link to the license, and indicate if changes were made. You may do so in any reasonable manner, but not in any way that suggests the licensor endorses you or your use.

**NonCommercial** — You may not use the material for commercial purposes.

**ShareAlike** — If you remix, transform, or build upon the material, you must distribute your contributions under the same license as the original.

**No additional restrictions** — You may not apply legal terms or technological measures that legally restrict others from doing anything the license permits.

**Notices:**

- You do not have to comply with the license for elements of the material in the public domain or where your use is permitted by an applicable exception or limitation.
- No warranties are given. The license may not give you all of the permissions necessary for your intended use. For example, other rights such as publicity, privacy, or moral rights may limit how you use the material.

## PREFACE

This text is intended for a brief introductory course in plane geometry. It covers the topics from elementary geometry that are most likely to be required for more advanced mathematics courses. The only prerequisite is a semester of algebra.

The emphasis is on applying basic geometric principles to the numerical solution of problems. For this purpose the number of theorems and definitions is kept small. Proofs are short and intuitive, mostly in the style of those found in a typical trigonometry or precalculus text. There is little attempt to teach theorem-proving or formal methods of reasoning. However the topics are ordered so that they may be taught deductively.

The problems are arranged in pairs so that just the odd-numbered or just the even-numbered can be assigned. For assistance, the student may refer to a large number of completely worked-out examples. Most problems are presented in diagram form so that the difficulty of translating words into pictures is avoided. Many problems require the solution of algebraic equations in a geometric context. These are included to reinforce the student's algebraic and numerical skills. A few of the exercises involve the application of geometry to simple practical problems. These serve primarily to convince the student that what he or she is studying is useful. Historical notes are added where appropriate to give the student a greater appreciation of the subject.

This book is suitable for a course of about 45 semester hours. A shorter course may be devised by skipping proofs, avoiding the more complicated problems and omitting less crucial topics.

I would like to thank my colleagues at New York City Technical College who have contributed, directly or indirectly, to the development of this work. In particular, I would like to acknowledge the influence of L. Chosid, M. Graber, S. Katoni, F. Parisi and E. Stern.

**Henry Africk**

New York City Technical College  
City University of New York

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

I would especially like to thank Ümit Kaya for the typesetting and graphics which have greatly enhanced the appearance of the original work.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

---

## LINES, ANGLES and TRIANGLES

- 01** 1.1 Lines 5  
1.2 Angles 11  
1.3 Angle Classifications 19  
1.4 Parallel Lines 30  
1.5 Triangles 45  
1.6 Triangle Classifications 56

## CONGRUENT TRIANGLES

- 02** 2.1 The Congruence Statement 64  
2.2 The SAS Theorem 69  
2.3 The ASA and AAS Theorems 78  
2.4 Proving Lines and Angles Equal 87  
2.5 Isosceles Triangles 92  
2.6 The SSS Theorem 101  
2.7 The Hyp-Leg Theorem and Other Cases 107

## QUADRILATERALS

- 03** 3.1 Parallelograms 115  
3.2 Other Quadrilaterals 125

## SIMILAR TRIANGLES

- 04** 4.1 Proportions 137  
4.2 Similar Triangles 141  
4.3 Transversals to Three Parallel Lines 154  
4.4 Pythagorean Theorem 158  
4.5 Special Right Triangles 171  
4.6 Distance from a Point to a line 182

## TRIGONOMETRY OF THE RIGHT TRIANGLE

- 05** 5.1 The Trigonometric Functions 185  
5.2 Solution of Right Triangles 194  
5.3 Applications of Trigonometry 205

## AREA AND PERIMETER

- 06** 6.1 The Area of a Rectangle and Square 209  
6.2 The Area of a Parallelogram 216  
6.3 The Area of a Triangle 222  
6.4 The Area of a Rhombus 228  
6.5 The Area of a Trapezoid 232

## REGULAR POLYGONS AND CIRCLES

- 07** 7.1 Regular Polygons 237  
7.2 Circles 247  
7.3 Tangents to the Circle 257  
7.4 Degrees in an Arc 265  
7.5 Circumference of a Circle 283  
7.6 Area of a Circle 292

- 
- Appendix 299  
Bibliography 302  
Values of the Trigonometric Functions 303  
Answers to Odd Numbered Problems 304  
List of Symbols 310  
Index 311

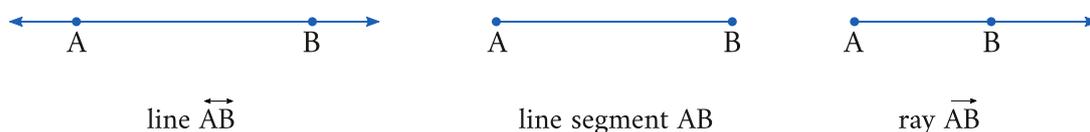
## LINES, ANGLES and TRIANGLES

## 1.1 LINES

**Geometry** (from Greek words meaning earth-measure) originally developed as a means of surveying land areas. In its simplest form, it is a study of figures that can be drawn on a perfectly smooth flat surface, or **plane**. It is this **plane geometry** which we will study in this book and which serves as a foundation for trigonometry, solid and analytic geometry and calculus.

The simplest figures that can be drawn on a plane are the point and the line. By a **line** we will always mean a **straight line**. Through two distinct points one and only one (straight) line can be drawn. The line through points A and B will be denoted by  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  (Figure 1).

The arrows indicate that the line extends indefinitely in each direction. The **line segment** from A to B consists of A, B and that part of  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  between A and B. It is denoted by  $\overline{AB}$ \*. The **ray**  $\overrightarrow{AB}$  is the part of  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  which begins at A and extends indefinitely in the direction of B.



*Figure 1.* Line  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$ , line segment  $\overline{AB}$ , and ray  $\overrightarrow{AB}$ .

We assume everyone is familiar with the notion of **length** of a line segment and how it can be measured inches, or feet, or meters etc. The **distance** between two points A and B is the same as the length of  $\overline{AB}$ .

Two line segments are **equal** if they have the same length.

In Figure 2,  $AB = CD$ .



*Figure 2.*  $AB = CD$ .

## Lines, Angles and Triangles

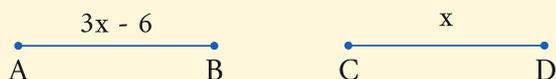
We often indicate two line segments are equal by marking them in the same way. In Figure 3,  $AB = CD$  and  $EF = GH$ .



*Figure 3.*  $AB = CD$  and  $EF = GH$ .

### ? EXAMPLE A

Find  $x$  if  $AB = CD$ :



#### SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned} AB &= CD \\ 3x - 6 &= x \\ 3x - x &= 6 \\ 2x &= 6 \\ x &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

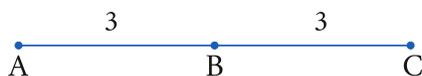
#### CHECK

$$\begin{array}{r|l} AB &= CD \\ 3x - 6 & x \\ 3(3) - 6 & 3 \\ 9 - 6 & \\ 3 & \end{array}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 3$ .

Notice that in Example A we have not indicated the unit of measurement. Strictly speaking, we should specify that  $AB = 3x - 6$  inches (or feet or meters) and that  $CD = x$  inches. However since the answer would still be  $x = 3$  we will usually omit this information to save space.

We say that  $B$  is the **midpoint** of  $AC$  if  $B$  is a point on  $AC$  and  $AB = BC$  (see Figure 4).



*Figure 4.*  $B$  is the midpoint of  $AC$ .

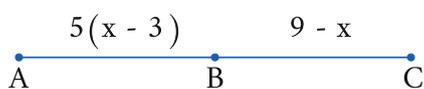
**? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$  and  $AC$  if  $B$  is the midpoint of  $AC$  and  $AB = 5(x - 3)$  and  $BC = 9 - x$ .

**SOLUTION**

We first draw a picture to help visualize the given information:

Since  $B$  is a midpoint,



$$\begin{aligned} AB &= BC \\ 5(x - 3) &= 9 - x \\ 5x - 15 &= 9 - x \\ 5x + x &= 9 + 15 \\ 6x &= 24 \\ x &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

We obtain  $AC = AB + BC = 5 + 5 = 10$ .

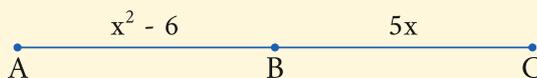
**ANSWER:**  $x = 4$ ,  $AC = 10$ .

**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} AB &= BC \\ 5(x - 3) & 9 - x \\ 5(4 - 3) & 9 - 4 \\ 5(1) & 5 \\ 5 & \end{array}$$

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find  $AB$  if  $B$  is the midpoint of  $AC$ :



**SOLUTION**

$$\begin{aligned} AB &= BC \\ x^2 - 6 &= 5x \\ x^2 - 5x - 6 &= 0 \\ (x - 6)(x + 1) &= 0 \\ \begin{array}{l} x - 6 = 0 \\ x = 6 \end{array} & \Bigg| \begin{array}{l} x + 1 = 0 \\ x = -1 \end{array} \end{aligned}$$

**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} AB &= BC \\ x^2 - 6 & 5x \\ 6^2 - 6 & 5(6) \\ 36 - 6 & 30 \\ 30 & \end{array}$$

## Lines, Angles and Triangles

If  $x = 6$  then

$$AB = x^2 - 6 = 6^2 - 6 = 36 - 6 = 30.$$

If  $x = -1$  then

$$AB = (-1)^2 - 6 = 1 - 6 = -5.$$

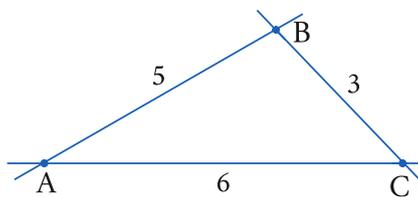
We reject the answer  $x = -1$  and  $AB = -5$  because the length of a line segment is always positive. Therefore  $x = 6$  and  $AB = 30$ .

**ANSWER:**  $AB = 30$ .

Three points are **collinear** if they lie on the same line.



**Figure 5.** A, B and C are collinear  
 $AB = 5$ ,  $BC = 3$  and  $AC = 8$ .

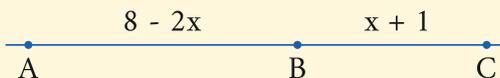


**Figure 6.** A, B and C are not collinear  
 $AB = 5$ ,  $BC = 3$  and  $AC = 6$ .

A, B, and C are collinear if and only if  $AB + BC = AC$ .

### ? EXAMPLE D

If A, B, and C are collinear and  $AC = 7$ , find  $x$ :



#### SOLUTION

$$\begin{aligned} AB + BC &= AC \\ 8 - 2x + x + 1 &= 7 \\ 9 - x &= 7 \\ 2 &= x \end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 2$ .

#### CHECK

$$\begin{array}{r|l} AB + BC & = AC \\ 8 - 2x + x + 1 & 7 \\ 8 - 2(2) + 2 + 1 & \\ 8 - 4 + 3 & \\ 4 + 3 & \\ 7 & \end{array}$$



#### HISTORICAL NOTE

Geometry originated in the solution of practical problems. The architectural remains of Babylon, Egypt, and other ancient civilizations show a knowledge of simple geometric relationships. The digging of canals, erection of buildings, and the laying out of cities required computations of lengths, areas, and volumes. Surveying is said to have developed in Egypt so that tracts of land could be relocated after the annual overflow of the Nile. Geometry was also utilized by ancient civilizations in their astronomical observations and the construction of their calendars.

The Greeks transformed the practical geometry of the Babylonians and Egyptians into an organized body of knowledge. Thales (c. 636 - c. 546 B.C.), one of the "seven wise men" of antiquity, is credited with being the first to obtain geometrical results by logical reasoning, instead of just by intuition and experiment. Pythagoras (c. 582 - c. 507 B.C.) continued the work of Thales. He founded the Pythagorean school, a mystical society devoted to the unified study of philosophy, mathematics, and science. About 300 B.C., Euclid, a Greek teacher of mathematics at the university at Alexandria, wrote a systematic exposition of elementary geometry called the *Elements*. In his *Elements*, Euclid used a few simple principles, called **axioms** or **postulates**, to derive most of the mathematics known at the time. For over 2000 years, Euclid's *Elements* has been accepted as the standard textbook of geometry and is the basis for most other elementary texts, including this one.



PROBLEMS

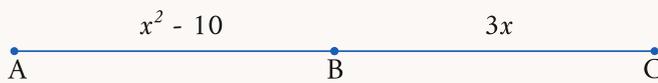
1. Find  $x$  if  $AB = CD$  :



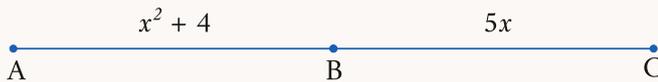
2. Find  $x$  if  $AB = CD$  :



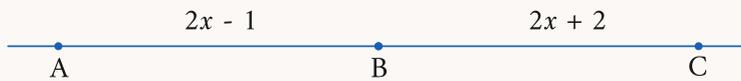
3. Find  $x$  and  $AC$  if  $B$  is the midpoint of  $AC$  and  $AB = 3(x-5)$  and  $BC = x + 3$ .  
 4. Find  $x$  and  $AC$  if  $B$  is the midpoint of  $AC$  and  $AB = 2x + 9$  and  $BC = 5(x - 9)$ .  
 5. Find  $AB$  if  $B$  is the midpoint of  $AC$  :



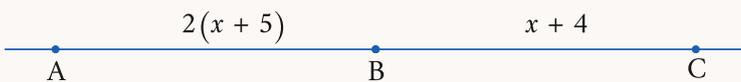
6. Find  $AB$  if  $B$  is the midpoint of  $AC$  :



7. If  $A, B$  and  $C$  are collinear and  $AC = 13$  find  $x$ .

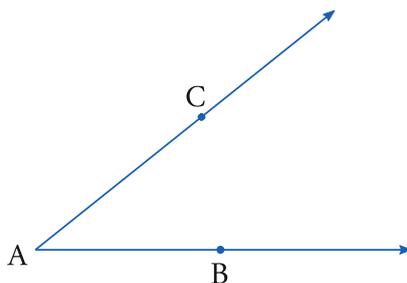


8. If  $A, B$  and  $C$  are collinear and  $AC = 26$  find  $x$ .



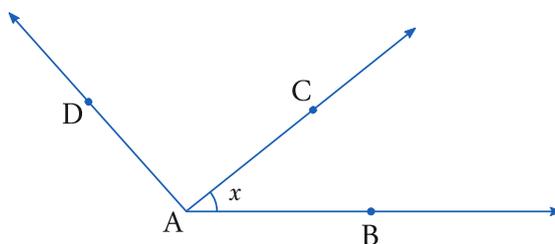
1.2 ANGLES

An **angle** is the figure formed by two rays with a common end point. The two rays are called the **sides** of the angle and the common end point is called the **vertex** of the angle. The symbol for angle is  $\angle$ .



**Figure 1.** Angle BAC has vertex A and sides  $\vec{AB}$  and  $\vec{AC}$ .

The angle in Figure 1 has vertex A and sides AB and AC. It is denoted by  $\angle BAC$  or  $\angle CAB$  or simply  $\angle A$ . When three letters are used, the middle letter is always the vertex. In Figure 2 we would not use the notation  $\angle A$  as an abbreviation for  $\angle BAC$  because it could also mean  $\angle CAD$  or  $\angle BAD$ . We could however use the simpler name  $\angle x$  for  $\angle BAC$  if "x" is marked in as shown.

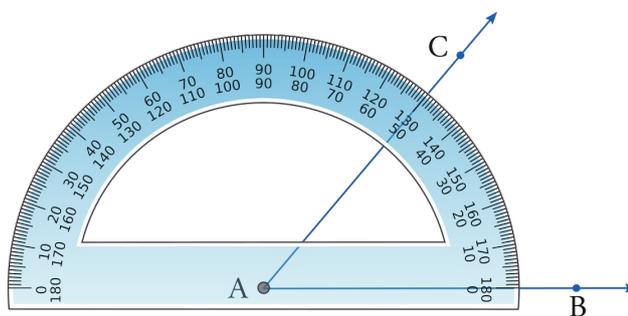


**Figure 2.**  $\angle BAC$  may also be denoted by  $\angle x$ .

Angles can be measured with an instrument called a **protractor**. The unit of measurement is called a **degree** and the symbol for degree is  $^\circ$ .

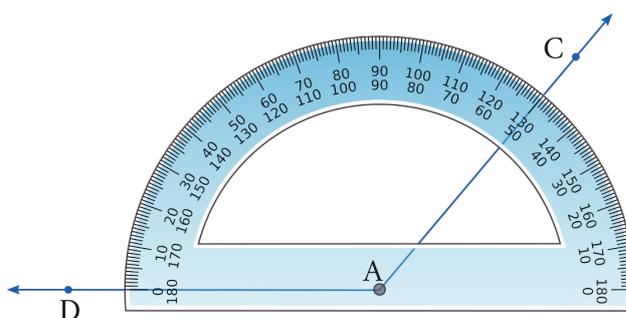
To measure an angle, place the center of the protractor (often marked with a cross or a small circle) on the vertex of the angle. Position the protractor so that one side of the angle cuts across 0, at the beginning of the scale, and so that the other side cuts across a point further up on the scale. We use either the upper scale or the lower scale, whichever is more convenient. For example, in Figure 3, one side of  $\angle BAC$  crosses 0 on the lower scale and the other side crosses 50 on the lower scale. The measure of  $\angle BAC$  is therefore  $50^\circ$  and we write  $\angle BAC = 50^\circ$ .

## Lines, Angles and Triangles



**Figure 3.** The protractor shows  $\angle BAC = 50^\circ$ .

In Figure 4, side  $\vec{AD}$  of  $\angle DAC$  crosses 130 on the upper scale. Therefore we look on the upper scale for the point at which  $\vec{AC}$  crosses and conclude that  $\angle DAC = 130^\circ$ .



**Figure 4.**  $\angle DAC = 130^\circ$ .

### ? EXAMPLE A

Draw an angle of  $40^\circ$  and label it  $\angle BAC$ .

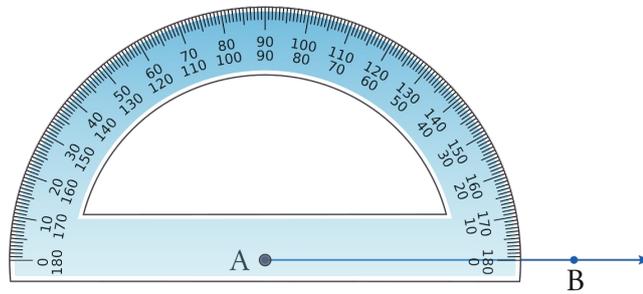
### SOLUTION

Draw ray  $\vec{AB}$  using a straight edge:

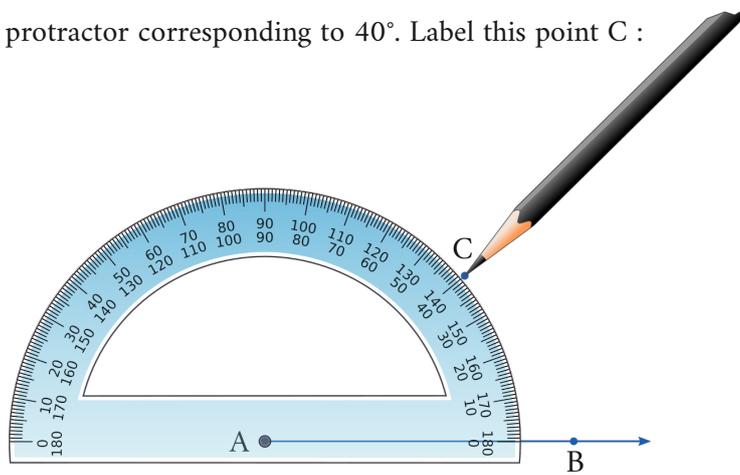


Place the protractor so that its center coincides with A and  $\vec{AB}$  crosses the scale at 0:

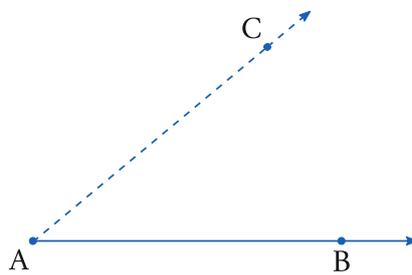
# Lines, Angles and Triangles



Mark the place on the protractor corresponding to  $40^\circ$ . Label this point C :

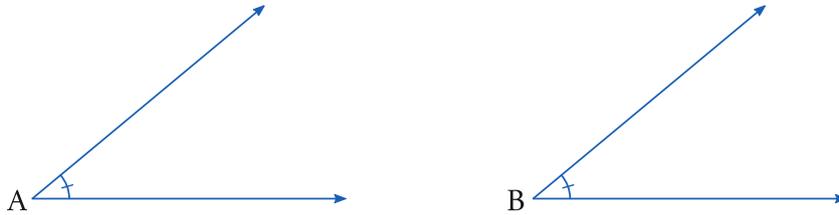


Connect A with C :



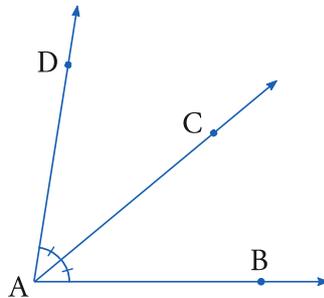
## Lines, Angles and Triangles

Two angles are said to be **equal** if they have the same measure in degrees. We often indicate two angles are equal by marking them in the same way. In Figure 5,  $\angle A = \angle B$ .



*Figure 5.* Equal angles.

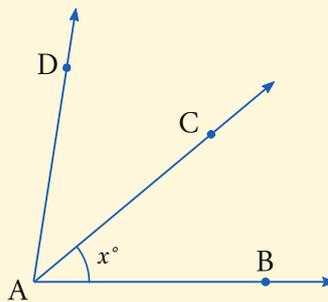
An **angle bisector** is a ray which divides an angle into two equal angles. In Figure 6,  $\vec{AC}$  is an angle bisector of  $\angle BAD$ . We also say  $\vec{AC}$  **bisects**  $\angle BAD$ .



*Figure 6.*  $\vec{AC}$  bisects  $\angle BAD$ .

### ? EXAMPLE B

Find  $x$  if  $\vec{AC}$  bisects  $\angle BAD$  and  $\angle BAD = 80^\circ$ :



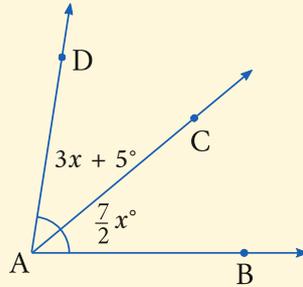
### SOLUTION

$$x^\circ = \frac{1}{2}(\angle BAD) = \frac{1}{2}(80^\circ) = 40^\circ$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 40$ .

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find  $x$  if  $\overrightarrow{AC}$  bisects  $\angle BAD$ :



**SOLUTION**

$$\begin{aligned} \angle BAC &= \angle CAD \\ \frac{7}{2}x &= 3x + 5 \\ (2)\frac{7}{2}x &= (2)(3x + 5) \\ 7x &= 6x + 10 \\ 7x - 6x &= 10 \\ x &= 10 \end{aligned}$$

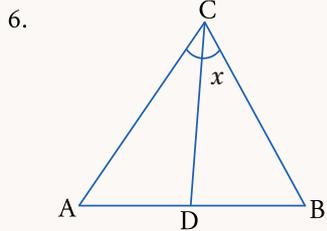
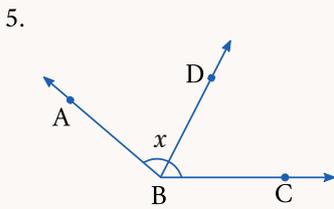
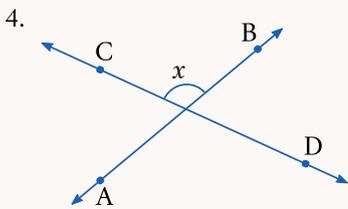
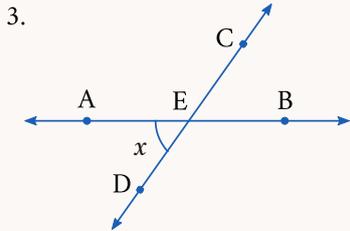
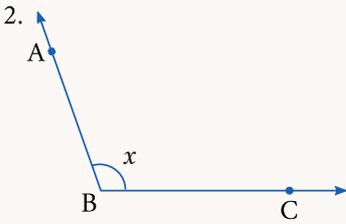
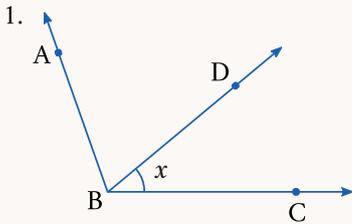
**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{l|l} \angle BAC & \angle CAD \\ \frac{7}{2}x & 3x + 5 \\ \frac{7}{2}(10)^\circ & 3(10)^\circ + 5^\circ \\ 35^\circ & 30^\circ + 5^\circ \\ & 35^\circ \end{array}$$

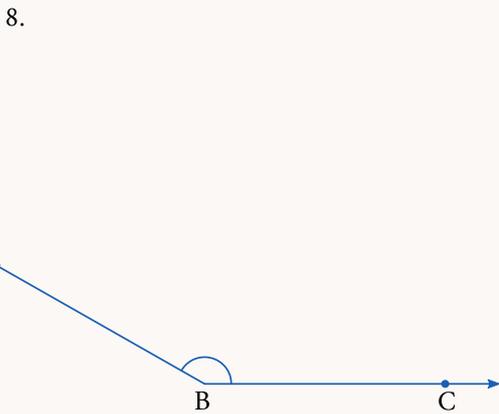
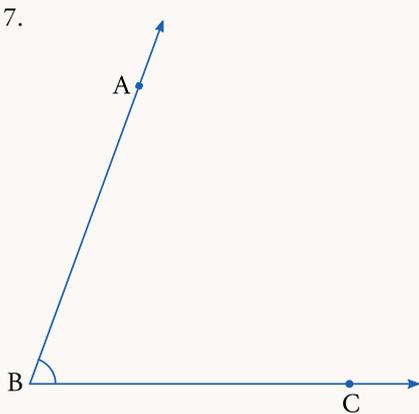
**ANSWER :**  $x = 10$ .

 **PROBLEMS**

1 - 6. For each figure, give another name for  $\angle x$ :

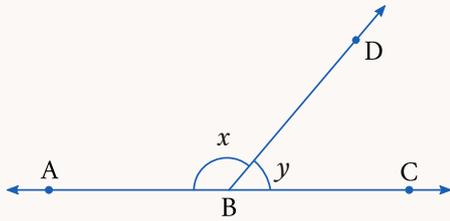


7 - 16. Measure each of the indicated angles:

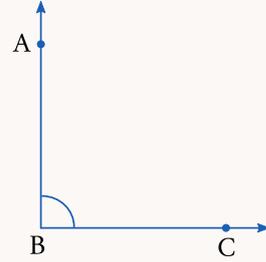


Lines, Angles and Triangles

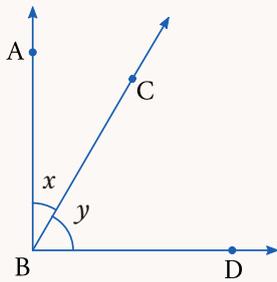
9.



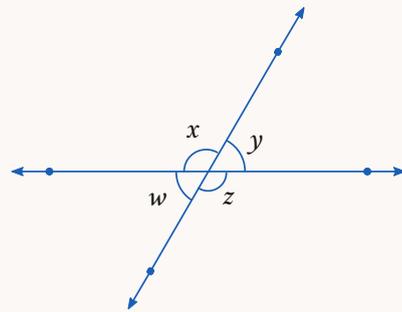
10.



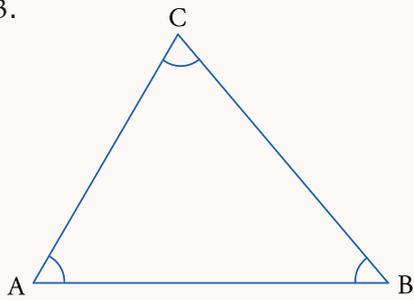
11.



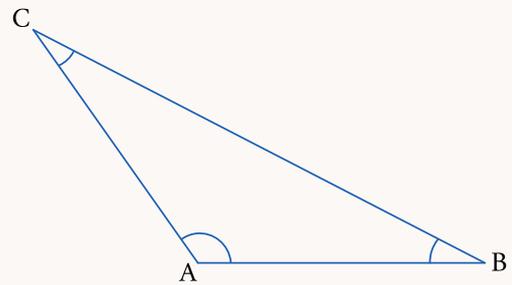
12.



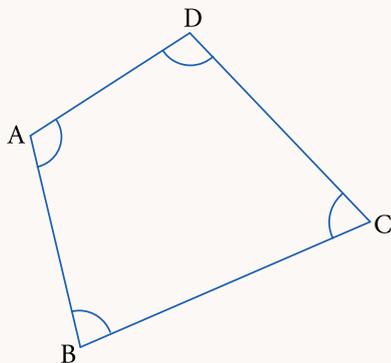
13.



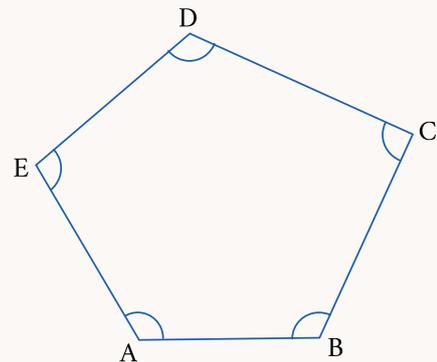
14.



15.



16.



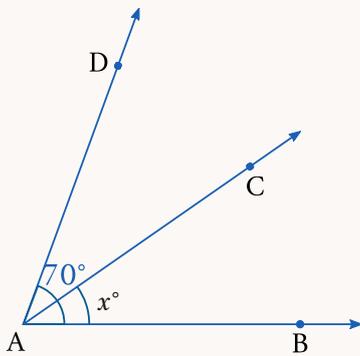
Lines, Angles and Triangles

17 - 24. Draw and label each angle :

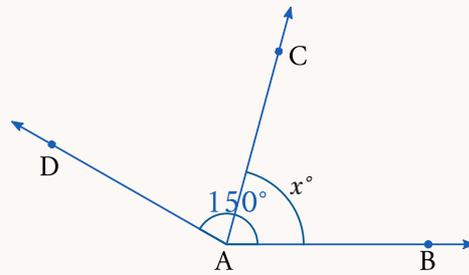
- |                              |                              |
|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 17. $\angle BAC = 30^\circ$  | 18. $\angle BAC = 40^\circ$  |
| 19. $\angle ABC = 45^\circ$  | 20. $\angle EFG = 60^\circ$  |
| 21. $\angle RST = 72^\circ$  | 22. $\angle XYZ = 90^\circ$  |
| 23. $\angle PQR = 135^\circ$ | 24. $\angle JKL = 164^\circ$ |

25 - 28. Find  $x$  if  $\vec{AC}$  bisects  $\angle BAD$ :

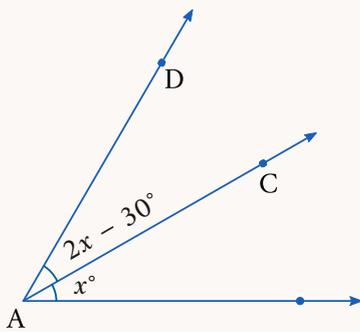
25.



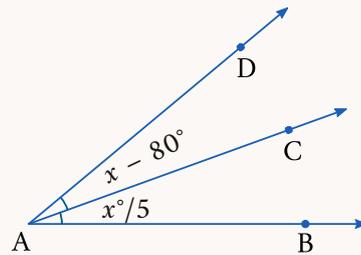
26.



27.



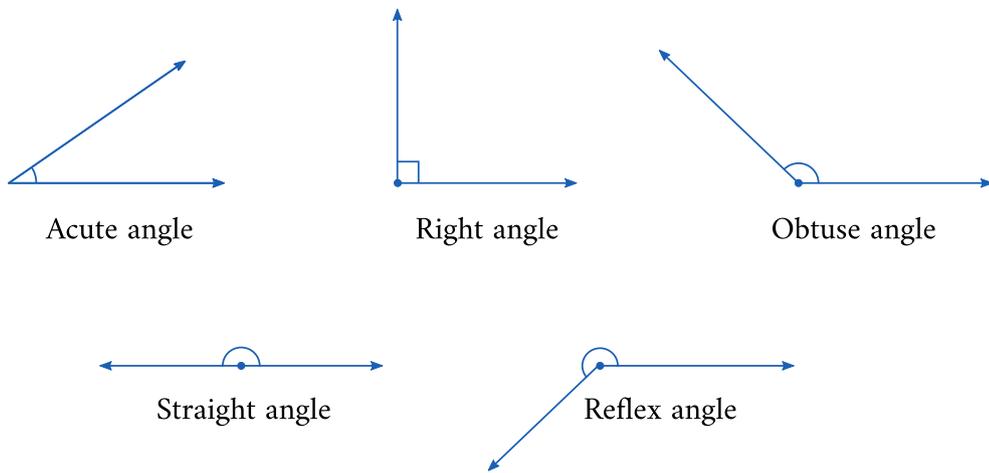
28.



### 1.3 ANGLE CLASSIFICATIONS

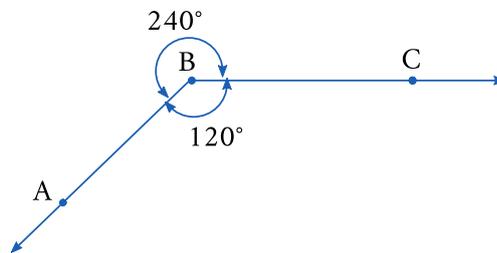
Angles are classified according to their measures as follow:

- An **acute angle** is an angle whose measure is between  $0^\circ$  and  $90^\circ$ .
- A **right angle** is an angle whose measure is  $90^\circ$ . We often use a little square to indicate a right angle.
- An **obtuse angle** is an angle whose measure is between  $90^\circ$  and  $180^\circ$ .
- A **straight angle** is an angle whose measure is  $180^\circ$ . A straight angle is just a straight line with one of its points designated as the vertex.
- A **reflex angle** is an angle whose measure is greater than  $180^\circ$ .



**Figure 1.** Angles classified according to their measures.

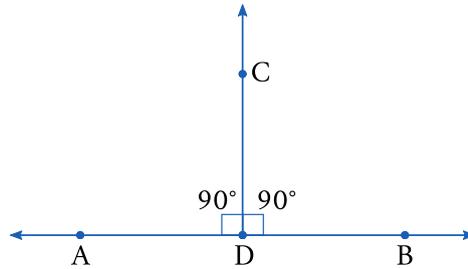
Notice that an angle can be measured in two ways. In Figure 2,  $\angle ABC$  is a reflex of  $240^\circ$  or an obtuse angle of  $120^\circ$  depending on how it is measured. Unless otherwise indicated, we will always assume the angle has measure less than  $180^\circ$ .



**Figure 2.**  $\angle ABC$  can be measured in two different ways.

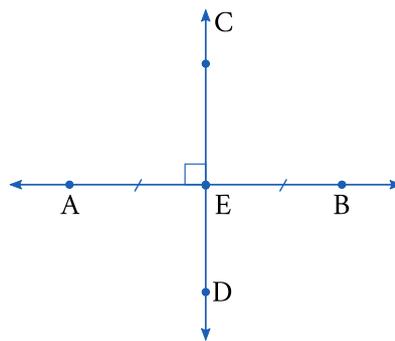
## Lines, Angles and Triangles

Two lines are **perpendicular** if they meet to form right angles. In Figure 3,  $\vec{AB}$  is perpendicular to  $\vec{CD}$ . The symbol for perpendicular is  $\perp$  and we write  $\vec{AB} \perp \vec{CD}$ .



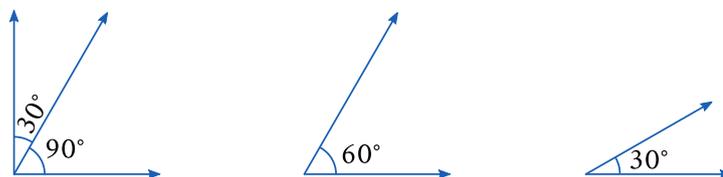
*Figure 3.*  $\vec{AB}$  is perpendicular to  $\vec{CD}$ .

The **perpendicular bisector** of a line segment is a line perpendicular to the line segment at its midpoint. In Figure 4,  $\vec{CD}$  is a perpendicular bisector of AB.



*Figure 4.*  $\vec{CD}$  is a perpendicular bisector of AB.

Two angles are called **complementary** if the sum of their measures is  $90^\circ$ . Each angle is called the **complement** of the other. For example, angles of  $60^\circ$  and  $30^\circ$  are complementary.



*Figure 5.* Complementary angles.

**? EXAMPLE A**

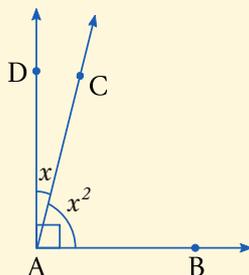
Find the complement of a  $40^\circ$  angle.

**SOLUTION**  $90^\circ - 40^\circ = 50^\circ$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 50^\circ$

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$  and the complementary angles.



**SOLUTION**

Since  $\angle BAD = 90^\circ$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} x^2 + x &= 90^\circ \\ x^2 + x - 90 &= 0 \\ (x - 9)(x + 10) &= 0 \\ x - 9 = 0 &\text{ or } x + 10 = 0 \\ x = 9 &\qquad\qquad x = -10 \end{aligned}$$

$\angle CAD = x = 9^\circ$	$\angle CAD = x = -10^\circ$
$\angle BAC = x^2 = 9^2 = 81^\circ$	We reject this answer because the
$\angle BAC + \angle CAD = 81^\circ + 9^\circ = 90^\circ$	measure of an angle is always
	positive.*

**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{r} x = 9^\circ, \\ x^2 + x = 90^\circ \\ 9^2 + 9 \quad | \\ 81 + 9 \quad | \\ 90^\circ \end{array}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 9$ ,  $\angle CAD = 9^\circ$ ,  $\angle BAC = 81^\circ$

---

\*In trigonometry, when directed angles are introduced, angles can have negative measure. In this book, however, all angles will be thought of as having positive measure.

## Lines, Angles and Triangles

Two angles are called **supplementary** if the sum of their measures is  $180^\circ$ . Each angle is called the **supplement** of the other. For example, angle of  $150^\circ$  and  $30^\circ$  are supplementary.



**Figure 6.** Supplementary angles.

### ? EXAMPLE C

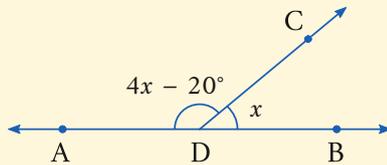
Find the supplementary of an angle  $40^\circ$ .

**SOLUTION**  $180^\circ - 40^\circ = 140^\circ$

**ANSWER :**  $x = 140^\circ$

### ? EXAMPLE D

Find  $x$  and the supplementary angles.



#### **SOLUTION**

Since  $\angle ADB = 180^\circ$ ,

$$4x - 20 + x = 180$$

$$5x = 180 + 20$$

$$5x = 200$$

$$x = 40$$

$$\angle ADC = 4x - 20^\circ = 4(40) - 20 = 160 - 20 = 140^\circ$$

$$\angle BDC = x = 40^\circ$$

$$\angle ADC + \angle BDC = 140^\circ + 40^\circ = 180^\circ.$$

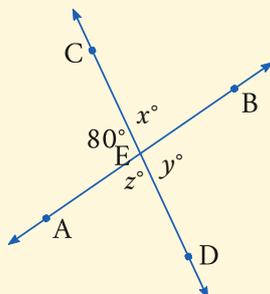
#### **CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{r} 4x - 20 + x = 180^\circ \\ 40(40) - 20 + 40 \\ 160 - 20 + 40 \\ 140 + 40 \\ 180^\circ \end{array}$$

**ANSWER :**  $x = 40^\circ$ ,  $\angle ADC = 140^\circ$ ,  $\angle BDC = 40^\circ$

**? EXAMPLE E**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $z$ :

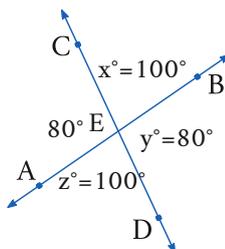


**SOLUTION**

$x^\circ = 180^\circ - 80^\circ = 100^\circ$  because  $x^\circ$  and  $80^\circ$  are the measures of supplementary angles.

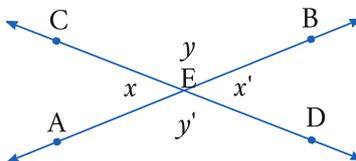
$y^\circ = 180^\circ - x^\circ = 180^\circ - 100^\circ = 80^\circ$

$z^\circ = 180^\circ - 80^\circ = 100^\circ$



**ANSWER:**  $x = 100^\circ$ ,  $y = 80^\circ$ ,  $z = 100^\circ$

When two lines intersect as in *Example E*, they form two pairs of angles that are opposite to each other called **vertical** angles. In Figure 7,  $\angle x$  and  $\angle x'$  are one pair of vertical angles.  $y$  and  $\angle y'$  are the other pair of vertical angles. As suggested by *Example E*,  $\angle x = \angle x'$  and  $\angle y = \angle y'$ . To see this in general, we can reason as follows:  $\angle x$  is the supplement of  $\angle y$  so  $\angle x = 180^\circ - \angle y$ .  $\angle x'$  is also the supplement of  $\angle y$  so  $\angle x' = 180^\circ - \angle y$ . Therefore  $\angle x = \angle x'$ . Similarly, we can show  $\angle y = \angle y'$ . Therefore vertical angles are always equal.

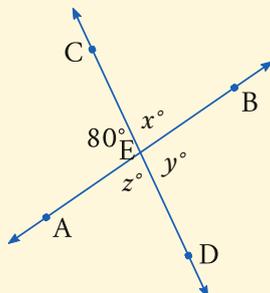


**Figure 7.**  $\angle x$ ,  $\angle x'$  and  $\angle y$ , and  $\angle y'$  are pairs of vertical angles.

We can now use "vertical angles are equal" in solving problems:

**? EXAMPLE E (REPEATED)**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $z$ :



**SOLUTION**

$\angle x = 180^\circ - 80^\circ = 100^\circ$  because  $\angle x$  is the supplement of  $80^\circ$ .

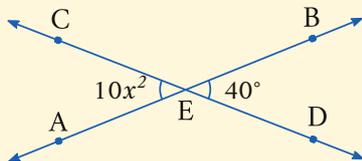
$\angle y = 80^\circ$  because vertical angles are equal.

$\angle z = \angle x = 100^\circ$  because vertical angles are equal.

**ANSWER:**  $x = 100^\circ$ ,  $y = 80^\circ$ ,  $z = 100^\circ$

**? EXAMPLE F**

Find  $x$ :



**SOLUTION**

Since the vertical angles are equal,  $10x^2 = 40^\circ$ .

**Method 1**

$$\begin{aligned} 10x^2 &= 40 \\ 10x^2 - 40 &= 0 \\ 10(x^2 - 4) &= 0 \\ 10(x - 2)(x + 2) &= 0 \\ x + 2 = 0 &\quad x - 2 = 0 \\ x = -2 &\quad x = 2 \end{aligned}$$

**Method 2**

$$\begin{aligned} 10x^2 &= 40 \\ \frac{10x^2}{10} &= \frac{40}{10} \\ x^2 &= 4 \\ x &= \pm 2 \end{aligned}$$

If  $x = 2$  then  $\angle AEC = 10x^2 = 10(2)^2 = 10(4) = 40^\circ$ .

If  $x = -2$  then  $\angle AEC = 10x^2 = 10(-2)^2 = 10(4) = 40^\circ$ .

We accept the solution  $x = -2$  even though  $x$  is negative because the value of the angle  $10x^2$  is still positive.

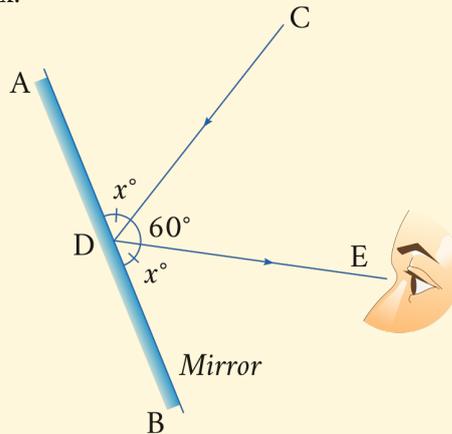
**CHECK**

$x = 2$	$x = -2$
$10x^2 = 40^\circ$	$10x^2 = 40^\circ$
$10(2)^2$	$10(-2)^2$
40	40

**ANSWER :**  $x = 2$  or  $x = -2$

**? EXAMPLE G**

In the diagram, AB represents a mirror, CD represents a ray of light approaching the mirror from C and E represents the eye of a person observing the ray as it is reflected from the mirror at D. According to a law of physics,  $\angle CDA$  equals  $\angle EDB$ . If  $\angle CDE = 60^\circ$ , how much is  $x$ ?



**SOLUTION**

Let  $x^\circ = \angle CDA = \angle EDB$

$$x + x + 60 = 180$$

$$2x + 60 = 180$$

$$2x = 120$$

$$x = 60^\circ$$

**ANSWER :**  $x = 60^\circ$

 **THEOREMS AND POSTULATES**

The statement "vertical angles are always equal" is an example of a theorem. A **theorem** is a statement which we can prove to be true. A **proof** is a process of reasoning which uses statements already known to be true to show the truth of a new statement. An example of a proof is the discussion preceding the statement "Vertical angles are always equal." We used facts about supplementary angles that were already known to establish the new statement, that "Vertical angles are always equal."

Ideally we would like to prove all statements in mathematics which we think are true. However before we can begin proving anything we need some true statements with which to start. Such statements should be so self-evident as not to require proofs themselves. A statement of this kind, which we assume to be true without proof, is called a **postulate** or an **axiom**. An example of a postulate is the assumption that all angles can be measured in degrees. This was used without actually being stated in our proof that "Vertical angles are always equal."

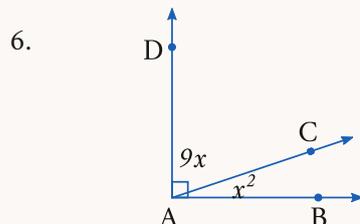
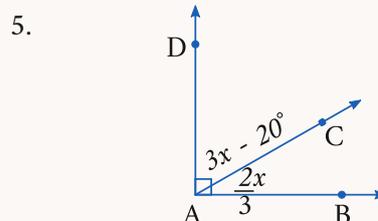
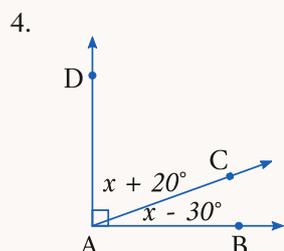
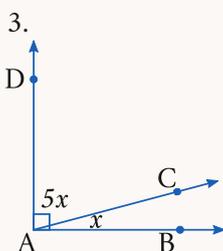
Theorems, proofs, and postulates constitute the heart of mathematics and we will encounter many more of them as we continue our study of geometry.

 **PROBLEMS**

1. Find the complement of an angle of  
 a.  $37^\circ$    b.  $45^\circ$    c.  $53^\circ$    d.  $60^\circ$

2. Find the complement of an angle of  
 a.  $30^\circ$    b.  $40^\circ$    c.  $50^\circ$    d.  $81^\circ$

- 3 - 6. Find  $x$  and the complementary angles:



Lines, Angles and Triangles

7. Find the supplement of an angle of

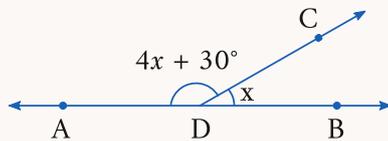
- a.  $30^\circ$  b.  $37^\circ$  c.  $90^\circ$  d.  $20^\circ$

8. Find the supplement of an angle of

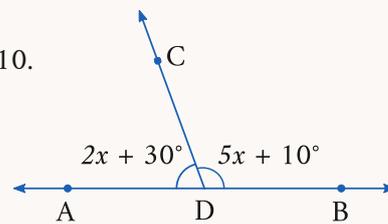
- a.  $45^\circ$  b.  $52^\circ$  c.  $85^\circ$  d.  $135^\circ$

9 - 14. Find  $x$  and the supplementary angles:

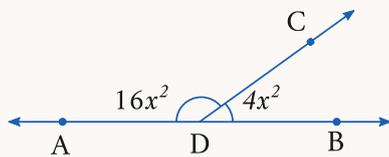
9.



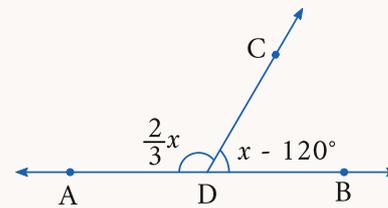
10.



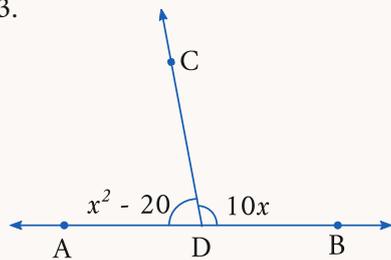
11.



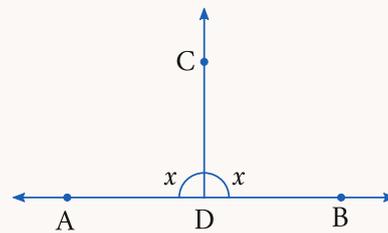
12.



13.



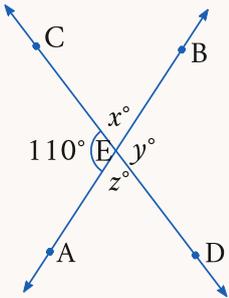
14.



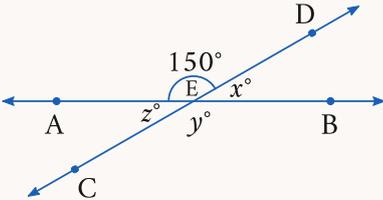
Lines, Angles and Triangles

15 - 22. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  :

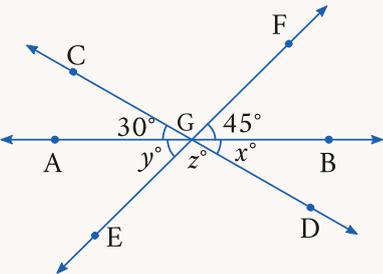
15.



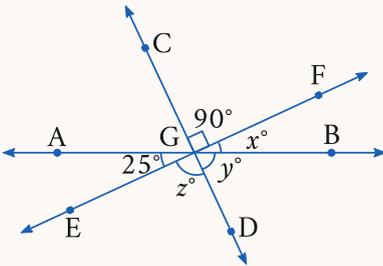
16.



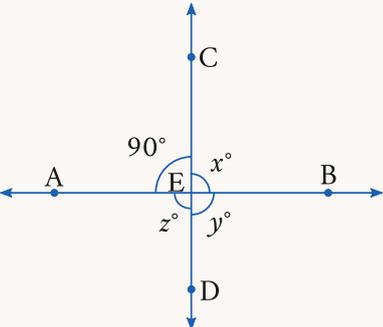
17.



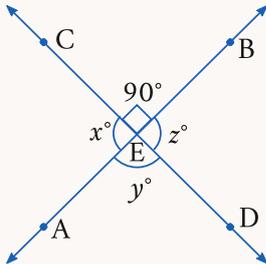
18.



19.

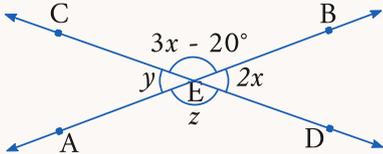


20.

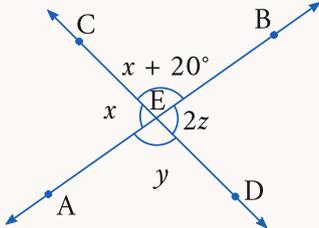


Lines, Angles and Triangles

21.

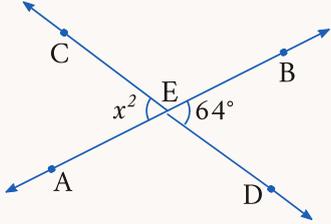


22.

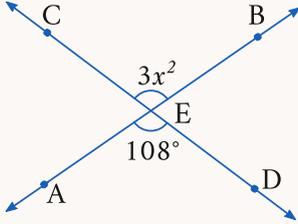


23 - 26. Find x :

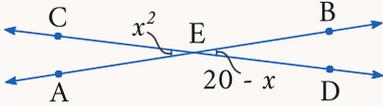
23.



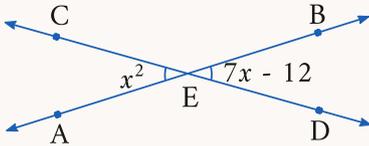
24.



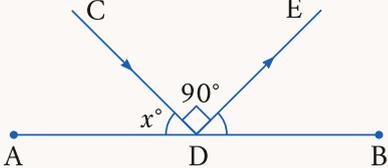
25.



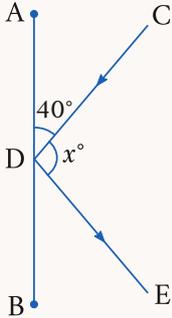
26.



27. Find x if  $\angle CDA = \angle EDB$  :

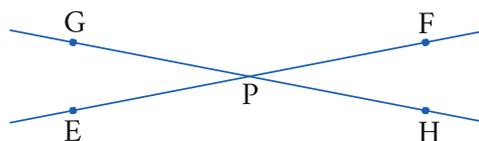
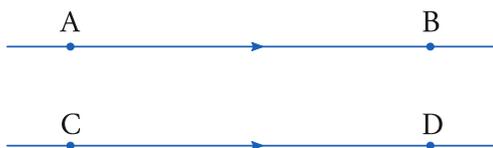


28. Find x if  $\angle CDA = \angle EDB = 40^\circ$ :



1.4 PARALLEL LINES

Two lines are **parallel** if they do not meet, no matter how far they are extended. The symbol for parallel is  $\parallel$ . In Figure 1,  $\vec{AB} \parallel \vec{CD}$ . The arrow marks are used to indicate the lines are parallel.

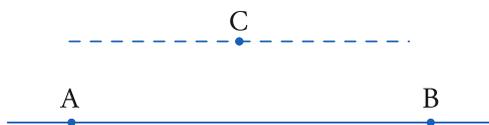


**Figure 1.**  $\vec{AB}$  and  $\vec{CD}$  are parallel. They do not meet no matter how far they are extended.

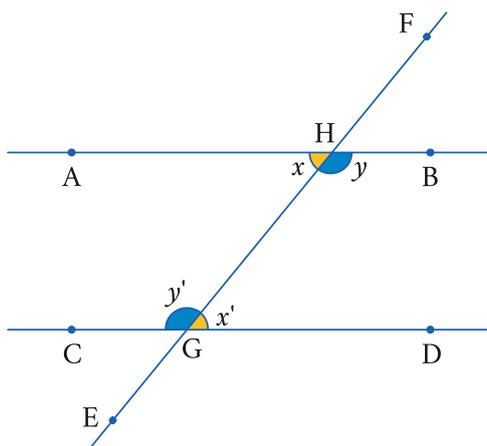
**Figure 2.**  $\vec{EF}$  and  $\vec{GH}$  are not parallel. They meet at point P.

We make the following assumption about parallel lines, called the **parallel postulate**: Through a point not on a given line one and only one line can be drawn parallel to the given line.

So in Figure 3, there is exactly one line that can be drawn through C that is parallel to  $\vec{AB}$ .

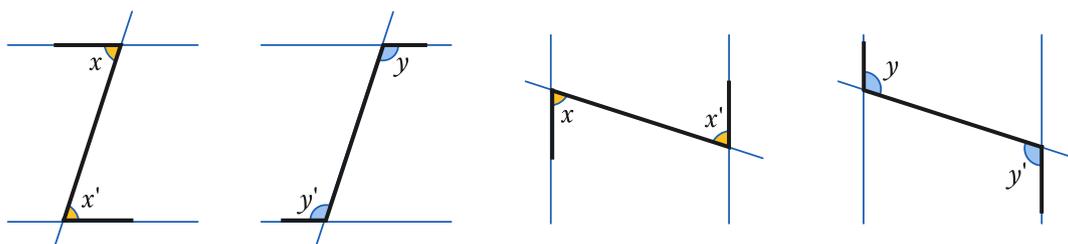


**Figure 3.** There is exactly one line that can be drawn through C parallel to  $\vec{AB}$ .



**Figure 4.**  $\vec{EF}$  is a transversal.

A **transversal** is a line that intersects two other lines at two distinct points. In Figure 4,  $\vec{EF}$  is a transversal.  $\angle x$  and  $\angle x'$  are called **alternate interior angles** of lines  $\vec{AB}$  and  $\vec{CD}$ . The word "alternate," here, means that the angles are on different sides of the transversal, one angle formed with  $\vec{AB}$  and the other formed with  $\vec{CD}$ . The word "interior" means that they are between the two lines. Notice that they form the letter "Z" (Figure 5).  $y$  and  $y'$  are also alternate interior angles. They also form a "Z" though it is stretched out and backwards. Viewed from the side, the letter "Z" may also look like an "N."



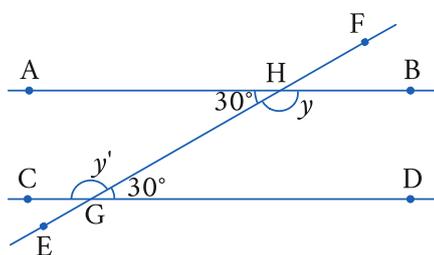
**Figure 5.** Alternate interior angles form the letter of "Z" or "N". The letters may be stretched out or backwards.

Alternate interior angles are important because of the following theorem:

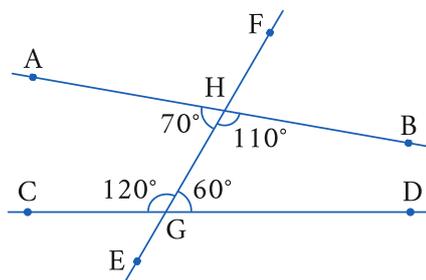
**THEOREM 1 (THE "Z" THEOREM)**

If two lines are parallel then their alternate interior angles are equal. If the alternate interior angles of two lines are equal then the lines must be parallel.

In Figure 6,  $\vec{AB}$  must be parallel to  $\vec{CD}$  because the alternate interior angles are both  $30^\circ$ . Notice that the other pair of alternate interior angles,  $\angle y$  and  $\angle y'$ , are also equal. They are both  $150^\circ$ . In Figure 7, the lines are not parallel and none of the alternate interior angles are equal.



**Figure 6.** The lines are parallel and their alternate interior angles are equal.

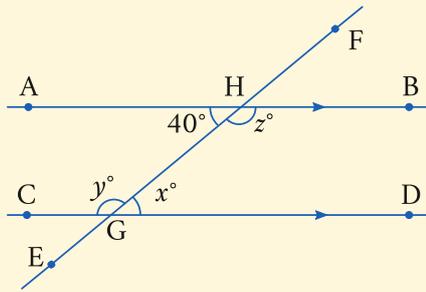


**Figure 7.** The lines are not parallel and their alternate interior angles are not equal.

The proof of **Theorem 1** is complicated and will be deferred to the appendix.

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :

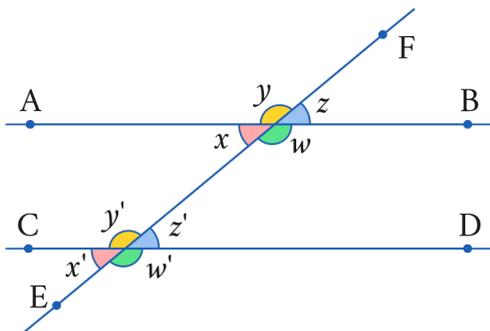


**SOLUTION**

$\vec{AB} \parallel \vec{CD}$  since the arrows indicate parallel lines.  $x = 40^\circ$  because alternate interior angles of parallel lines are equal.  $y^\circ = z^\circ = 180^\circ - 40^\circ = 140^\circ$ .

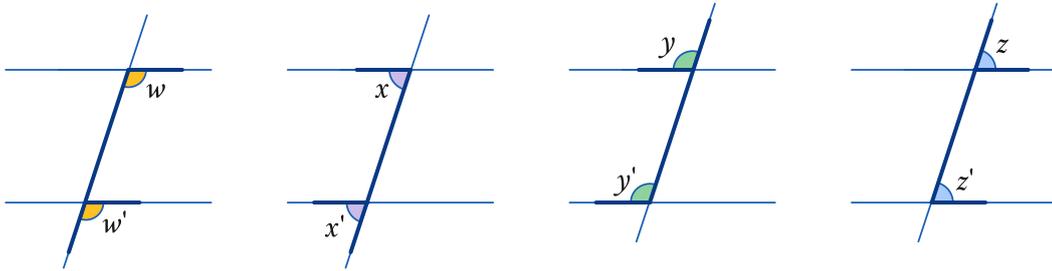
**ANSWER :**  $x = 40^\circ$ ,  $y = 140^\circ$ ,  $z = 140^\circ$ .

**Corresponding angles** of two lines are two angles which are on the same side of the two lines and the same side of the transversal. In Figure 8,  $\angle w$  and  $\angle w'$  are corresponding angles of lines AB and CD. They form the letter "F".  $\angle x$  and  $\angle x'$ ,  $\angle y$  and  $\angle y'$  and  $\angle z$  and  $\angle z'$  are other pairs of corresponding angles of AB and CD. They all form the letter "F", though it might be a backwards or upside down "F" (Figure 9)



**Figure 8.** Four pairs of corresponding angles are illustrated.

Lines, Angles and Triangles



**Figure 9.** Corresponding angles form the letter "F", though it may be a backwards or upside down "F".

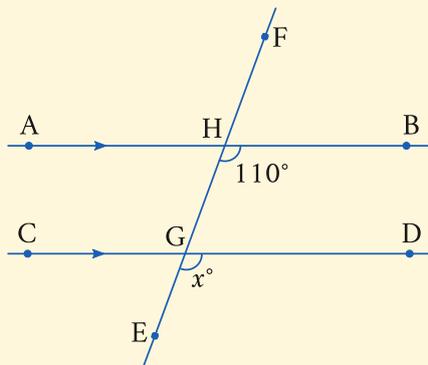
Corresponding angles are important because of the following theorem:

**THEOREM 2 (THE "F" THEOREM)**

If two lines are parallel then their corresponding angles are equal. If the corresponding angles of two lines are equal then the lines must be parallel.

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$ :

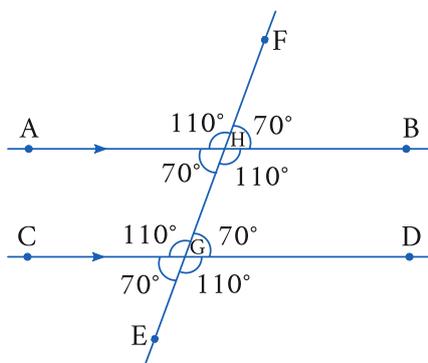


**SOLUTION**

The arrow indicate  $\vec{AB} \parallel \vec{CD}$ . Therefore  $x = 110^\circ$  because  $x^\circ$  and  $110^\circ$  are the measures of corresponding angles of the parallel lines  $\vec{AB}$  and  $\vec{CD}$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x = 110$ .

## Lines, Angles and Triangles

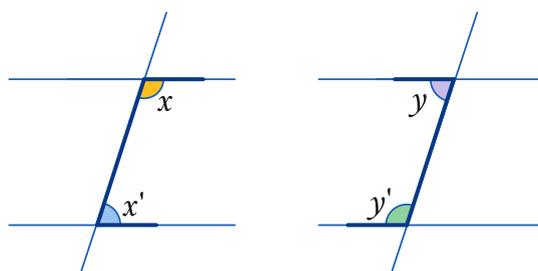


**Figure 10.** Each pair of corresponding angles is equal.

Notice that we can now find all the other angles in Example B. Each one is either supplementary to one of the  $110^\circ$  angles or forms equal vertical angles with one of them (Figure 10). Therefore all the corresponding angles are equal. Also each pair of alternate interior angles is equal. It is not hard to see that if just one pair of corresponding angles or one pair of alternate interior angles are equal then so are all other pairs of corresponding and alternate interior angles.

**Proof of Theorem 2:** The corresponding angles will be equal if the alternate interior angles are equal and vice versa. Therefore **Theorem 2** follows directly from **Theorem 1**.

In Figure 11,  $\angle x$  and  $\angle x'$  are called **interior angles on the same side of the transversal**.\*  $\angle y$  and  $\angle y'$  are also interior angles on the same side of the transversal. Notice that each pair of angles forms the letter "C". Compare Figure 11 with Figure 10 and also with Example A. The following theorem is then apparent:



**Figure 11.** Interior angles on the same side of the transversal form the letter "C".  
It may also be a backwards "C".

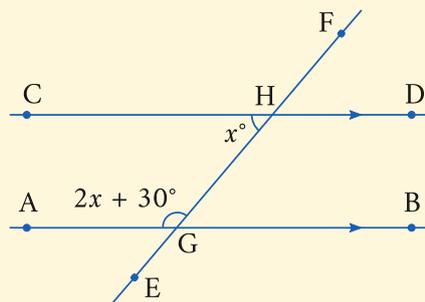
\*In some textbooks, interior angles on the same side of the transversal are called **cointerior angles**.

**THEOREM 3 (THE "C" THEOREM)**

If two lines are parallel then the interior angles on the same side of the transversal are supplementary (they add up to  $180^\circ$ ). If the interior angles of two lines on the same side of the transversal are supplementary then the lines must be parallel.

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find  $x$  and the marked angles:



**SOLUTION**

The lines are parallel so by **Theorem 3** the two labelled angles must be supplementary.

$$\begin{aligned} x + 2x + 30 &= 180 \\ 3x + 30 &= 180 \\ 3x &= 180 - 30 \\ 3x &= 150 \\ x &= 50 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \angle CHG &= x = 50^\circ \\ \angle AGH &= 2x + 30 = 2(50) + 30 = 100 + 30 = 130^\circ \end{aligned}$$

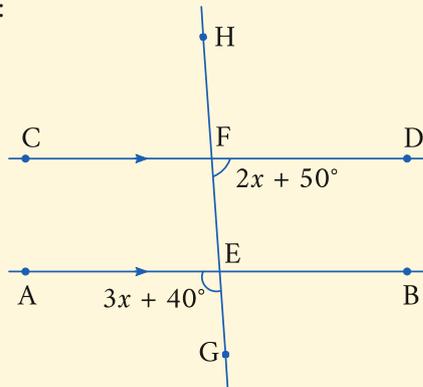
**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} x + 2x + 30 & = 180^\circ \\ 50 + 2(50) + 30 & \\ 50 + 130 & \\ 180 & \end{array}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 50$ ,  $\angle CHG = 50^\circ$ ,  $\angle AGH = 130^\circ$

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find  $x$  and the marked angles:



**SOLUTION**

$\angle BEF = 3x + 40^\circ$  because vertical angles are equal,  $\angle BEF$  and  $\angle DFE$  are interior angles on the same side of the transversal, and therefore are supplementary because the lines are parallel.

$$\begin{aligned} 3x + 40 + 2x + 50 &= 180 \\ 5x + 90 &= 180 \\ 5x &= 180 - 90 \\ 5x &= 90 \\ x &= 18 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \angle AEG &= 3x + 40 = 3(18) + 40 = 54 + 40 = 94^\circ. \\ \angle DFE &= 2x + 50 = 2(18) + 50 = 36 + 50 = 86^\circ. \end{aligned}$$

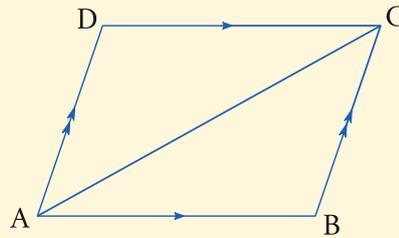
**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{r} 3x + 40 + 2x + 50 = 180 \\ 3(18) + 40 + 2(18) + 50 \\ 54 + 40 + 36 + 50 \\ 94 + 86 \\ \hline 180 \end{array}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 18^\circ$ ,  $\angle AEG = 94^\circ$ ,  $\angle DFE = 86^\circ$ .

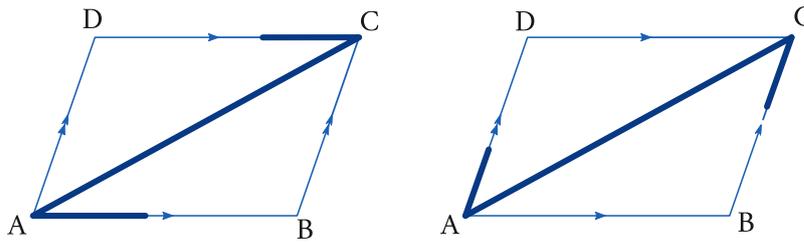
**? EXAMPLE E**

List all pairs of alternate interior angles in the diagram. (The single arrow indicates  $\vec{AB}$  is parallel to  $\vec{CD}$  and the double arrow indicates  $\vec{AD}$  is parallel to  $\vec{BC}$ .)



**SOLUTION**

We see if a letter Z or N can be formed using the line segments in the diagram (Figure 12).



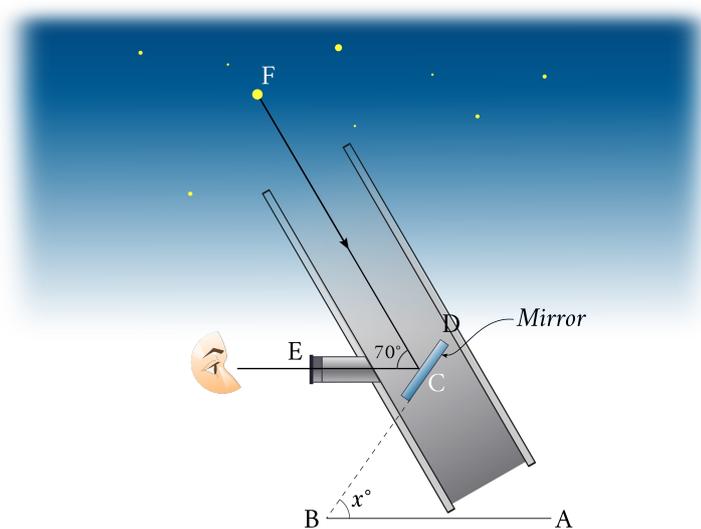
**Figure 12.** Forming the letter Z or N from the line segments in the diagram.

**ANSWER :**  $\angle DCA$  and  $\angle CAB$  are alternate interior angles of lines  $\vec{AB}$  and  $\vec{CD}$ .  $\angle DAC$  and  $\angle ACB$  are alternate interior angles of lines  $\vec{AD}$  and  $\vec{BC}$ .

**? EXAMPLE F**

A telescope is pointed at a star  $70^\circ$  above the horizon. What angle  $x^\circ$  must the mirror BD make with the horizontal so that the star can be seen in the eyepiece E? (See the next page for the figure.)

## Lines, Angles and Triangles



### SOLUTION

$x^\circ = \angle BCE$  because they are alternate interior angles of parallel lines AB and CE.

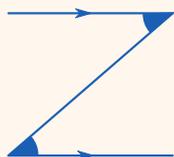
$\angle DCF = \angle BCE = x^\circ$  because of the laws of physics.

Therefore

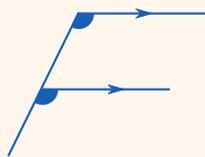
$$\begin{aligned} x + 70 + x &= 180 \\ 2x + 70 &= 180 \\ 2x &= 180 - 70 \\ 2x &= 110 \\ x &= 55 \end{aligned}$$

ANSWER :  $55^\circ$

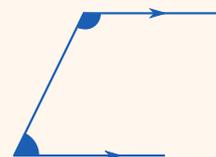
### SUMMARY



Alternate interior angles of parallel lines are equal. They form letter "Z".



Corresponding angles of parallel lines are equal. They form letter "F".



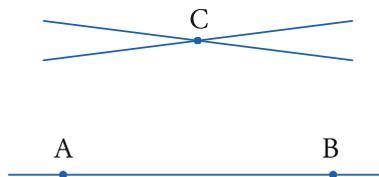
Interior angles on the same side of the transversal of parallel lines are supplementary. They form the letter "C".


**HISTORICAL NOTE**

The parallel postulate given earlier in this section is the equivalent of the fifth postulate of Euclid's *Elements*. Euclid was correct in assuming it as a postulate rather than trying to prove it as a theorem. However this did not become clear to the mathematical world until the nineteenth century, 2200 years later. In the interim, scores of prominent mathematicians attempted unsuccessfully to give a satisfactory proof of the parallel postulate. They felt that it was not as self-evident as a postulate should be, and that it required some formal justification.

In 1826, N. I. Lobachevsky, a Russian mathematician, presented a system of geometry based on the assumption that through a given point more than one straight line can be drawn parallel to a given line (see Figure 13). In 1854, the German mathematician Georg Bernhard Riemann proposed a system of geometry in which there are no parallel lines at all. A geometry in which the parallel postulate has been replaced by some other postulate is called a **non-Euclidean** geometry. The existence of these geometries shows that the parallel postulate need not necessarily be true. Indeed Einstein used the geometry of Riemann as the basis for his theory of relativity.

Of course our original parallel postulate makes the most sense for ordinary applications, and we use it throughout this book. However, for applications where great distances are involved, such as in astronomy, it may well be that a non-Euclidean geometry gives a better approximation of physical reality.



**Figure 13.** In the geometry of Lobachevsky, more than one line can be drawn through C parallel to AB.

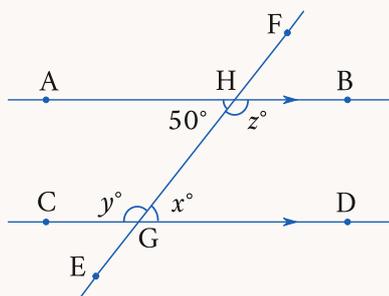


PROBLEMS

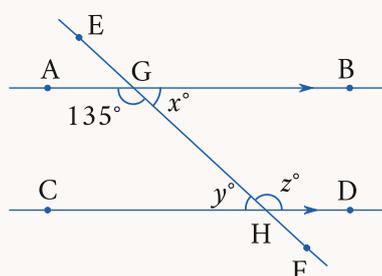
For each of the following, state the theorem(s) used in obtaining your answer (for example, "alternate interior angles of parallel lines are equal"). Lines marked with the same arrow are assumed to be parallel.

1-2. Find  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  :

1.

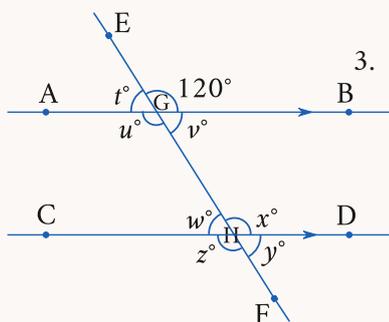


2.

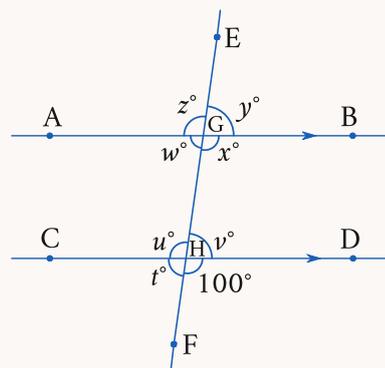


3-4. Find  $t$ ,  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $w$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :

4.

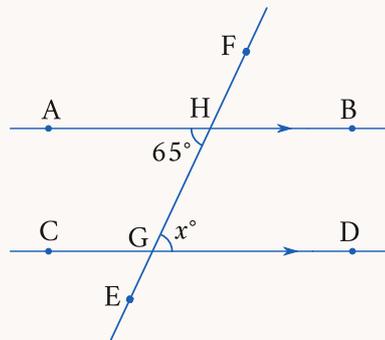
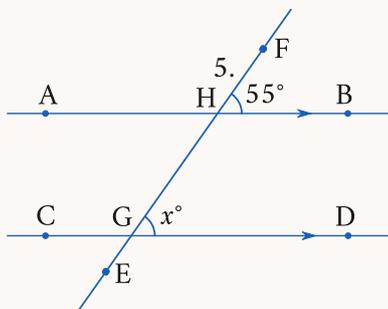


3.



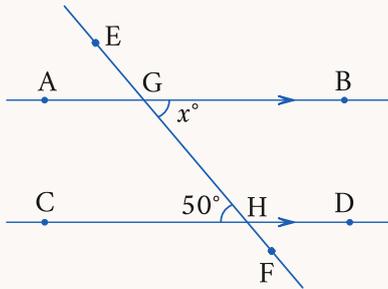
5-10. Find  $x$ :

6.

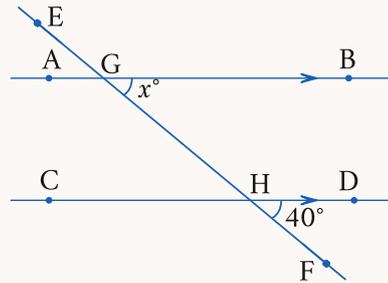


Lines, Angles and Triangles

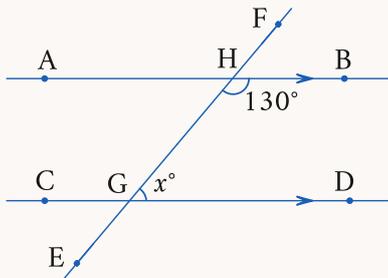
7.



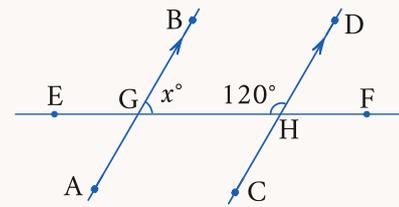
8.



9.

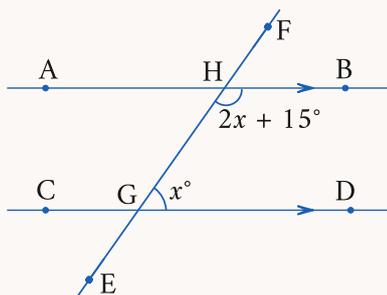


10.

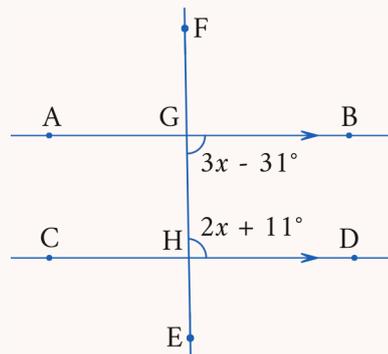


11 - 18. Find  $x$  and the marked angles:

11.

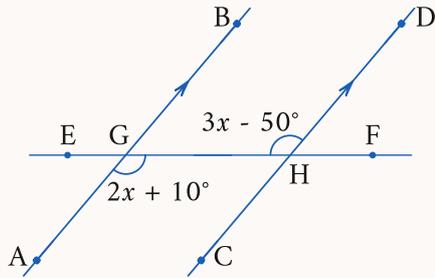


12.

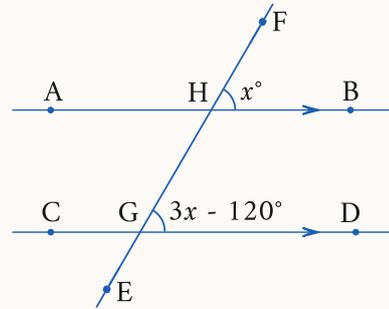


Lines, Angles and Triangles

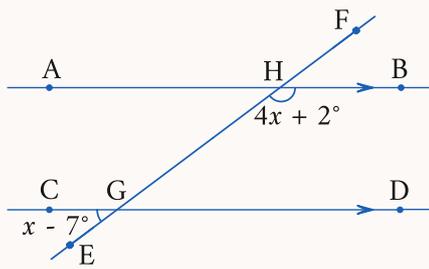
13.



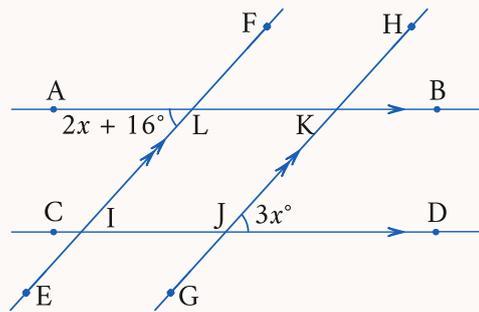
14.



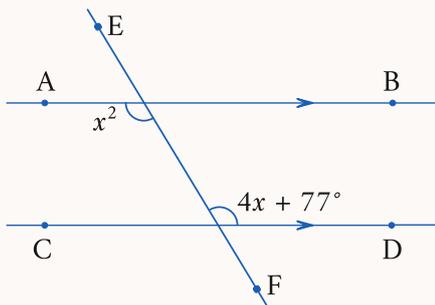
15.



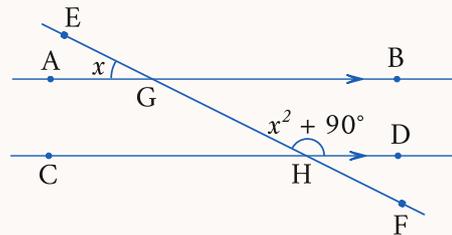
16.



17.



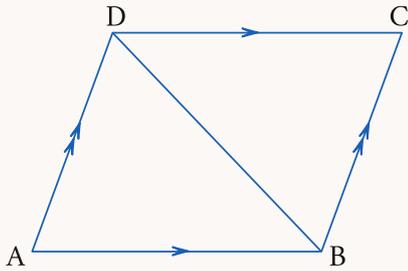
18.



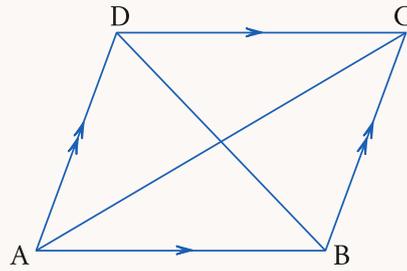
Lines, Angles and Triangles

19 - 26. For each of the following, list all pairs of alternate interior angles and corresponding angles. If there are none, then list all pairs of interior angles on the same side of the transversal. Indicate the parallel lines which form each pair of angles.

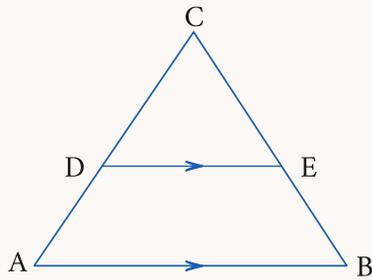
19.



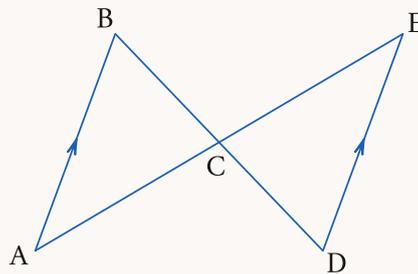
20.



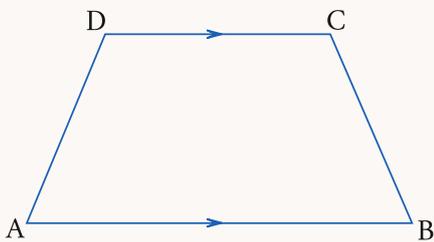
21.



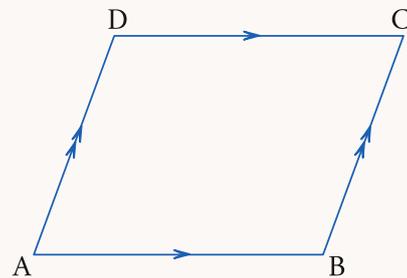
22.



23.

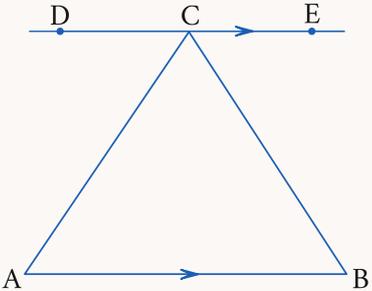


24.

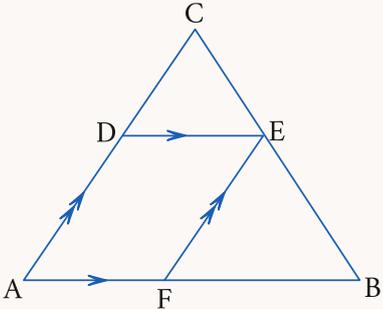


Lines, Angles and Triangles

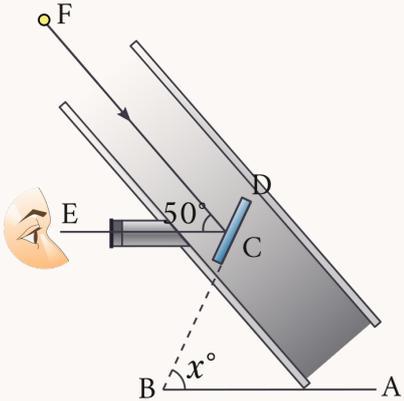
25.



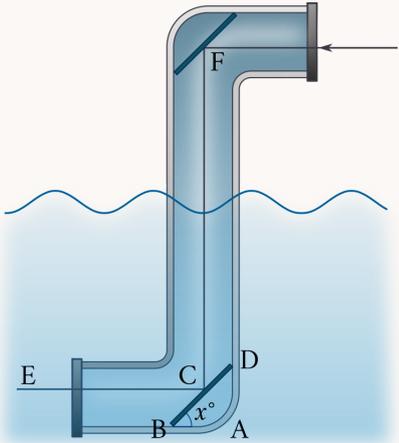
26.



27. A telescope is pointed at a star  $50^\circ$  above the horizon. What angle  $x^\circ$  must the mirror BD make with the horizontal so that the star can be seen in the eyepiece E?



28.

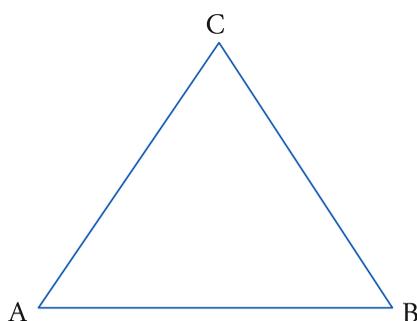


A periscope is used by sailors in a submarine to see objects on the surface of the water. If  $\angle ECF = 90^\circ$ , what angle  $x^\circ$  does the mirror BD make with the horizontal?

## 1.5 TRIANGLES

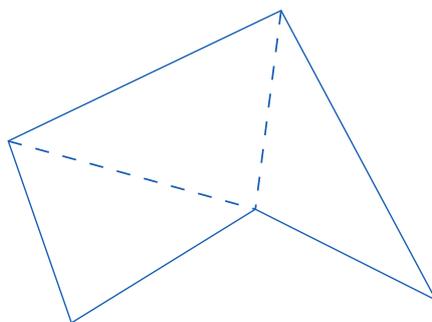
A **triangle** is formed when three straight line segments bound a portion of the plane, The line segments are called the **sides of the triangle**. A point where two sides meet is called a **vertex of the triangle**, and the angle formed is called an **angle of the triangle**. The symbol for triangle is  $\triangle$ .

The triangle in Figure 1 is denoted by  $\triangle ABC$  (or  $\triangle BCA$  or  $\triangle CAB$ , etc.). Its sides are AB, AC, and BC. Its vertices are A, B, and C. Its angles are  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ , and  $\angle C$ .



*Figure 1.* Triangle ABC

The triangle is the most important figure in plane geometry. This is because figures with more than 3 sides can always be divided into triangles (Figure 2). If we know the properties of a triangle, we can extend this knowledge to the study of other figures as well.



*Figure 2.* A closed figure formed by more than 3 straight lines can be divided into triangles.

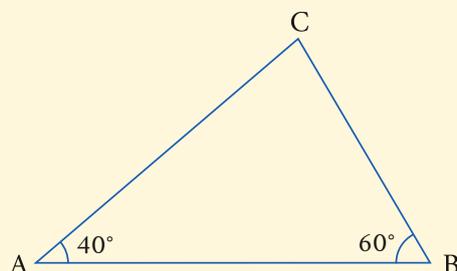
A fundamental property of triangles is the following:

▶ **THEOREM 1**

The sum of the angles of a triangle is  $180^\circ$ . In  $\triangle ABC$  of Figure 1;  
 $\angle A + \angle B + \angle C = 180^\circ$ .

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find  $\angle C$ :



**SOLUTION**

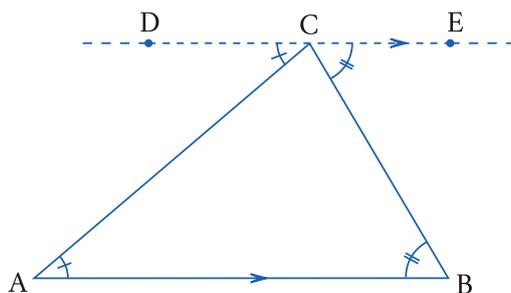
$$\begin{aligned} \angle A + \angle B + \angle C &= 180^\circ \\ 40^\circ + 60^\circ + \angle C &= 180^\circ \\ 100^\circ + \angle C &= 180^\circ \\ \angle C &= 180^\circ - 100^\circ \\ \angle C &= 80^\circ \end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER:**  $\angle C = 80^\circ$

**Proof of Theorem 1 :**

Through C draw DE parallel to AB (see Figure 3). Note that we are using the parallel postulate here.  $\angle 1 = \angle A$  and  $\angle 3 = \angle B$  because they are alternate interior angles of parallel lines.

$$\angle A + \angle B + \angle C = \angle 1 + \angle 3 + \angle 2 = 180^\circ.$$

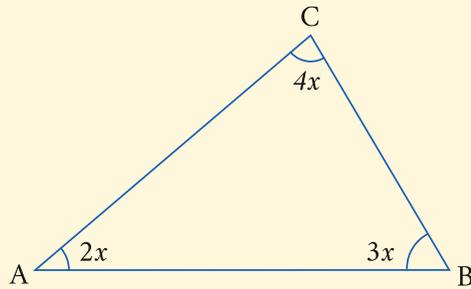


**Figure 3.** Through C draw DE parallel to AB.

We may verify **Theorem 1** by measuring the angles of a triangle with a protractor and taking the sum, However no measuring instrument is perfectly accurate, It is reasonable to expect an answer such as  $179^\circ$ ,  $182^\circ$ ,  $180.5^\circ$ , etc. The purpose of our mathematical proof is to assure us that the sum of the angles of every triangle must be exactly  $180^\circ$ .

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$ :



**SOLUTION**

$$\begin{aligned}\angle A + \angle B + \angle C &= 180^\circ \\ 2x + 3x + 4x &= 180^\circ \\ 9x &= 180^\circ \\ x &= 20^\circ\end{aligned}$$

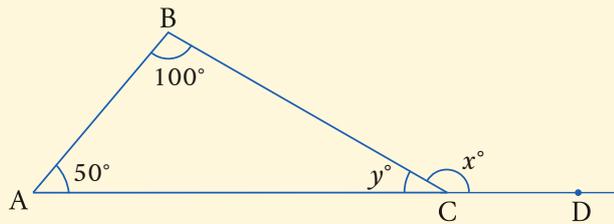
**CHECK**

$$\begin{aligned}\angle A + \angle B + \angle C &= 180^\circ \\ 2x + 3x + 4x & \\ 2(20^\circ) + 3(20^\circ) + 4(20^\circ) & \\ 40^\circ + 60^\circ + 80^\circ & \\ 180^\circ & \end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER :**  $20^\circ$

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find  $y$  and  $x$ :

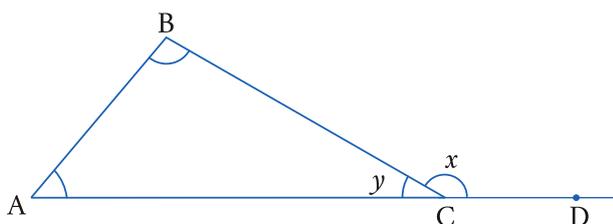


$$\begin{aligned}50 + 100 + y &= 180 \\ 150 + y &= 180 \\ y &= 180 - 150 \\ y &= 30 & x &= 180 - 30 = 150\end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER :**  $y = 30, x = 150$

## Lines, Angles and Triangles

In Figure 4,  $\angle x$  is called an **exterior angle** of  $\triangle ABC$ .  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$  and  $\angle y$  are called the **interior angles** of  $\triangle ABC$ .  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  are said to be the interior angles **remote** from the exterior angle  $\angle x$ . The results of Example C suggest the following theorem:



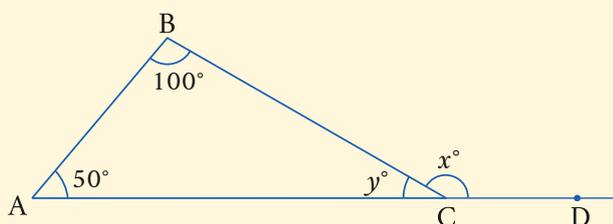
**Figure 4.**  $\angle x$  is an exterior angle of  $\triangle ABC$

### THEOREM 2

An exterior angle is equal to the sum of the two remote interior angles.  
In Figure 4,  $\angle x = \angle A + \angle B$ .

### ? EXAMPLE D

Find  $x$ :



### SOLUTION

Using **Theorem 2**,  $x^\circ = 100^\circ + 50^\circ = 150^\circ$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x = 150$

### *Proof of Theorem 2 :*

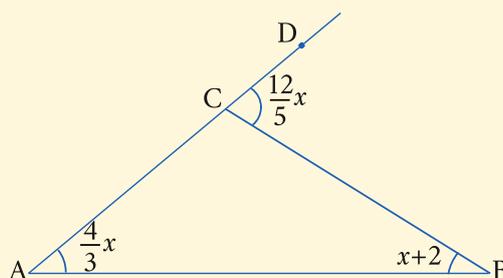
We present this proof in double-column form, with statements in the left column and the reason for each statement in the right column. The last statement is the theorem we wish to prove.

Lines, Angles and Triangles

	Statements	Reasons
1	$\angle A + \angle B + \angle y = 180^\circ$	The sum of the angles of a triangle is $180^\circ$ .
2	$\angle A + \angle B = 180^\circ - \angle y$	Subtract $\angle y$ from both sides of the equation. (Statement 1)
3	$\angle x = 180^\circ - \angle y$	$\angle x$ and $\angle y$ are supplementary.
4	$\angle x = \angle A + \angle B$	Both $\angle x$ (Statement 3) and $\angle A + \angle B$ (Statement 2) equal $180^\circ - \angle y$

? EXAMPLE E

Find  $x$ :



**SOLUTION**

$\angle BCD$  is an exterior angle with remote interior angles  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$ . By **Theorem 2**,  $\angle BCD = \angle A + \angle B$

$$\frac{12}{5}x = \frac{4}{3}x + x + 2$$

The lowest common denominator (l. c. d.) is 15.

$$(\cancel{15})^3 \frac{12}{\cancel{5}} x = (\cancel{15})^5 \frac{4}{\cancel{3}} x + (15)x + (15)(2)$$

$$36x = 20x + 15x + 30$$

$$36x = 35x + 30$$

$$36x - 35x = 30$$

$$x = 30$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 30$

**CHECK**

$$\angle BCD = \angle A + \angle B$$

$$\begin{array}{l|l} \frac{12}{5}x & \frac{4}{3}x + x + 2 \\ \hline \frac{12}{5}(30) & \frac{4}{3}(30) + 30 + 2 \\ 72^\circ & 40^\circ + 32^\circ \\ & 72^\circ \end{array}$$

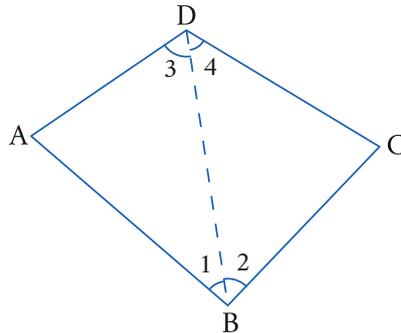
Our work on the sum of the angles of a triangle can easily be extended to other figures:

**? EXAMPLE F**

Find the sum of the angles of a quadrilateral (four-sided figure).

**SOLUTION**

Divide the quadrilateral into two triangles as illustrated:



$$\begin{aligned} \angle A + \angle B + \angle C + \angle D &= \angle A + \angle 1 + \angle 3 + \angle 2 + \angle 4 + \angle C \\ &= 180^\circ + 180^\circ \\ &= 360^\circ \end{aligned}$$

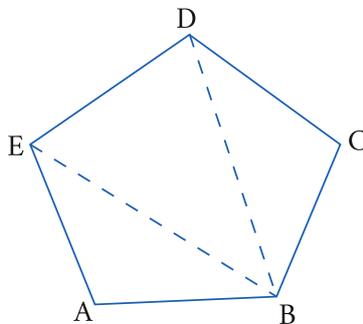
**ANSWER :**  $360^\circ$

**? EXAMPLE G**

Find the sum of the angles of a pentagon (five-sided figure).

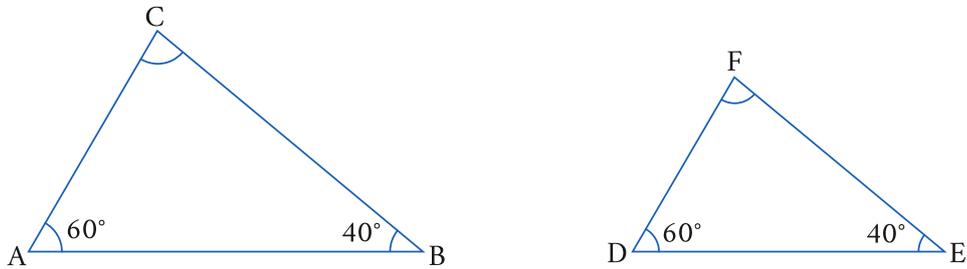
**SOLUTION**

Divide the pentagon into three triangles as illustrated. The sum is equal to the sum of the angles of the three triangles =  $(3)(180^\circ) = 540^\circ$ .



**ANSWER :**  $x = 540^\circ$

There is one more simple principle which we will derive from **Theorem 1**. Consider the two triangles in Figure 5.



**Figure 5.** Each triangle has an angle of  $60^\circ$  and  $40^\circ$ .

We are given that  $\angle A = \angle D = 60^\circ$  and  $\angle B = \angle E = 40^\circ$ . A short calculation shows that we must also have  $\angle C = \angle F = 80^\circ$ . This suggests the following theorem:

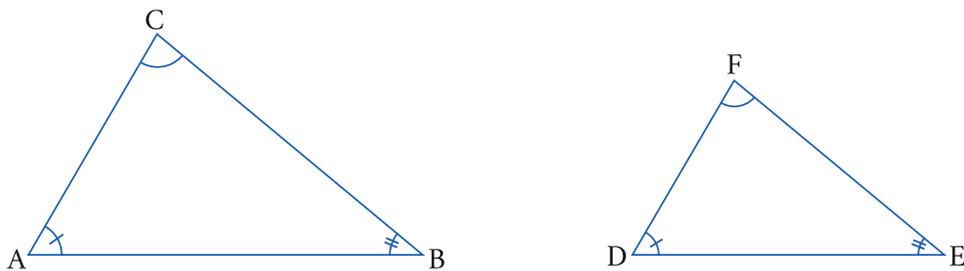
**THEOREM 3**

If two angles of one triangle are equal respectively to two angles of another triangle, then their remaining angles are also equal.

In Figure 6, if  $\angle A = \angle D$  and  $\angle B = \angle E$  then  $\angle C = \angle F$ .

**Proof of Theorem 3 :**

$$\angle C = 180^\circ - (\angle A + \angle B) = 180^\circ - (\angle D + \angle E) = \angle F$$



**Figure 6.**  $\angle A = \angle D$  and  $\angle B = \angle E$

**HISTORICAL NOTE**

Our Theorem 1, which states that the sum of the angles of a triangle is  $180^\circ$ , is one of the most important consequences of the parallel postulate. Therefore, one way of testing the truth of the parallel postulate (see the **Historical Note** in section 1.4) is to test the truth of Theorem 1. This was actually tried by the German mathematician, astronomer and physicist, Karl Friedrich Gauss (1777 - 1855). (This is the same Gauss whose name is used as a unit of measurement in the theory of magnetism). Gauss measured the sum of the angles of the triangle formed by three mountain peaks in Germany. He found the sum of the angles to be 14.85 seconds more than  $180^\circ$  (60 seconds = 1 minute, 60 minutes = 1 degree). However this small excess could have been due to experimental error, so the sum might actually have been  $180^\circ$ .

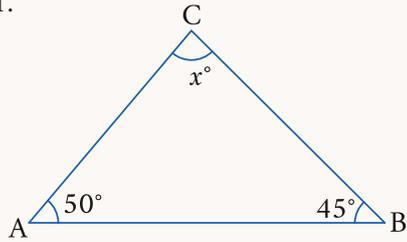
Aside from experimental error, there is another difficulty involved in verifying the angle sum theorem. According to the non-Euclidean geometry of Lobachevsky, the sum of the angles of a triangle is always **less** than  $180^\circ$ . In the non-Euclidean geometry of Riemann, the sum of the angles is always **more** than  $180^\circ$ . However in both cases the difference from  $180^\circ$  is insignificant unless the triangle is very large. Neither theory tells us exactly how large such a triangle should be. Even if we measured the angles of a very large triangle, like one formed by three stars, and found the sum to be indistinguishable from  $180^\circ$ , we could only say that the angle sum theorem and parallel postulate are apparently true for these large distances. These distances still might be too small to enable us to determine which geometric system best describes the universe as a whole.



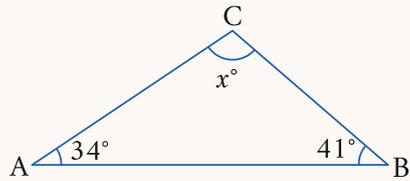
PROBLEMS

1 - 12. Find  $x$  and all the missing angles of each triangle:

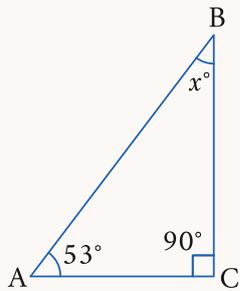
1.



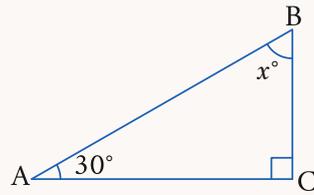
2.



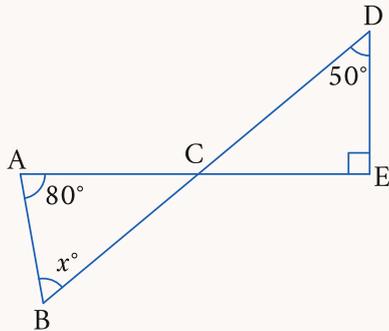
3.



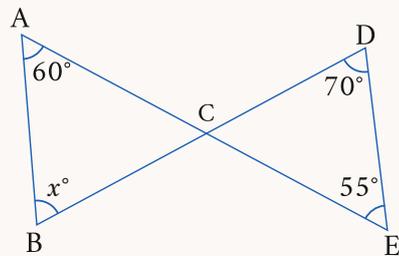
4.



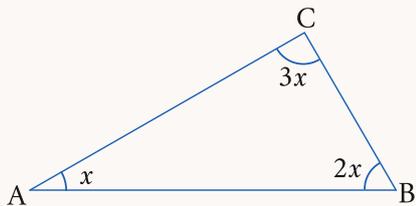
5.



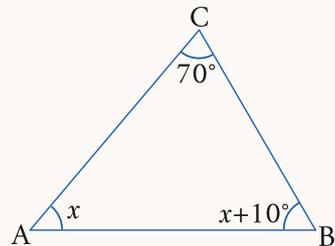
6.



7.

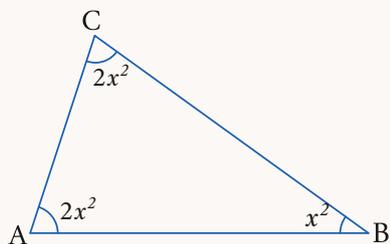


8.

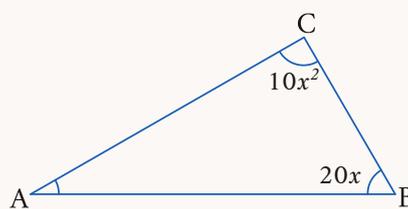


Lines, Angles and Triangles

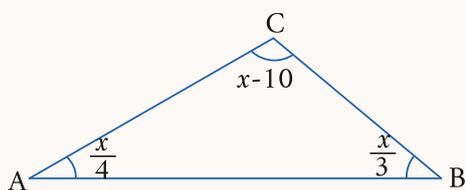
9.



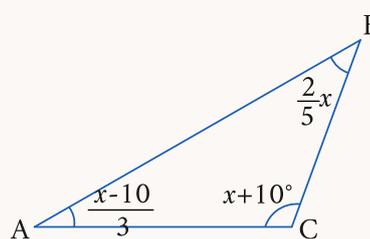
10.



11.

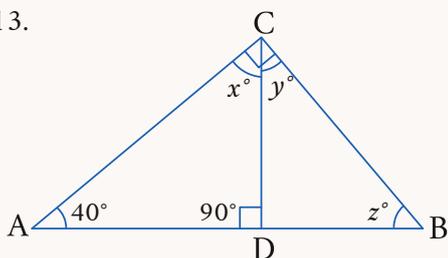


12.

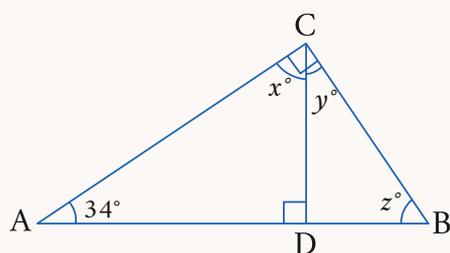


13 - 14. Find x, y and z:

13.

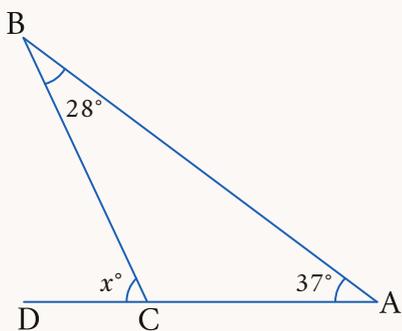


14.

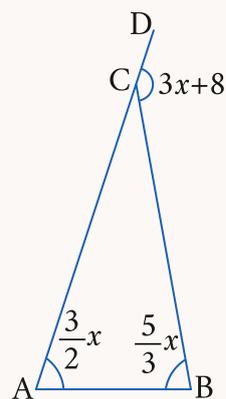


15 - 20. Find x:

15.



16.

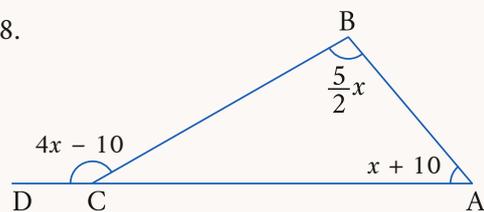


Lines, Angles and Triangles

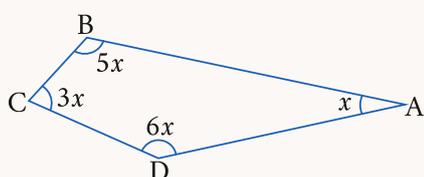
17.



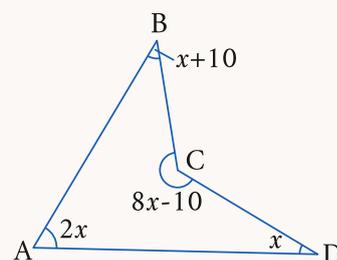
18.



19.



20.

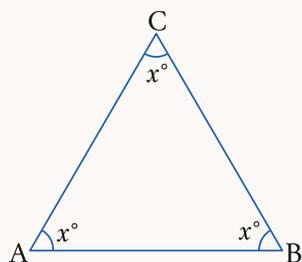


21. Find the sum of the angles of a hexagon (6-sided figure).

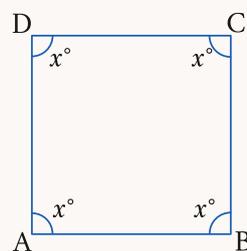
22. Find the sum of the angles of an octagon (8-sided figure).

23 - 26. Find  $x$ :

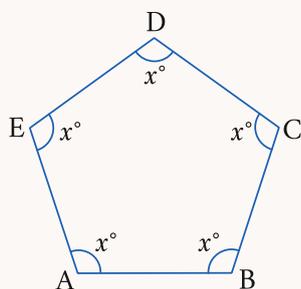
23.



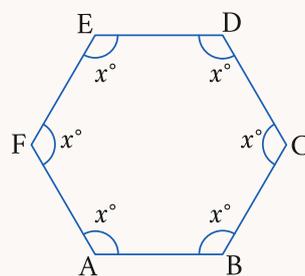
24.



25.



26.



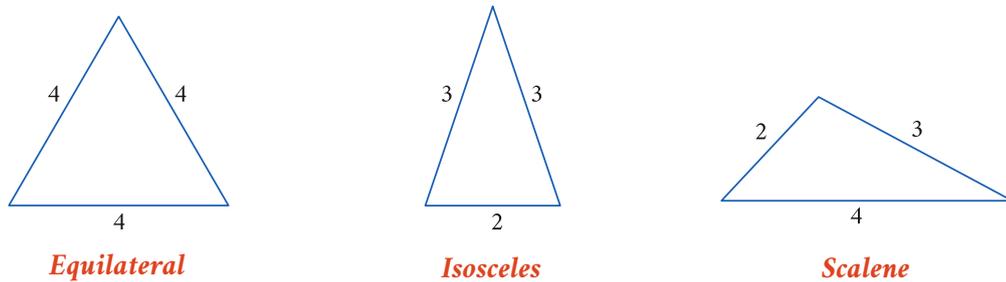
1.6 TRIANGLE CLASSIFICATIONS

Triangles may be classified according to the relative lengths of their sides:

An **equilateral** triangle has three equal sides.

An **isosceles** triangle has two equal sides.

A **scalene** triangle has no equal sides.



*Figure 1.* Triangles classified according to their sides.

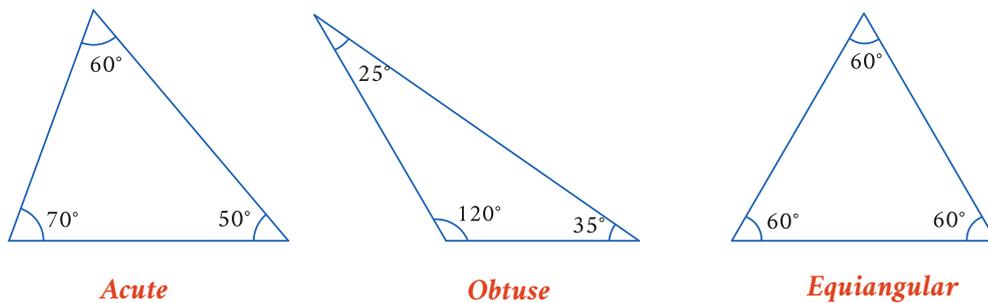
Triangles may also be classified according to the measure of their angles:

An **acute** triangle is a triangle with three acute angles.

An **obtuse** triangle is a triangle with one obtuse angle.

An **equiangular** triangle is a triangle with three equal angles.

Each angle of an equiangular triangle must be  $60^\circ$ . We will show in section 2.5 that equiangular triangles are the same as equilateral triangles.



*Figure 2.* Triangles classified according to their angles.

A **right** triangle is a triangle with one right angle. The sides of the right angle are called the **legs** of the triangle and the remaining side is called the **hypotenuse**.

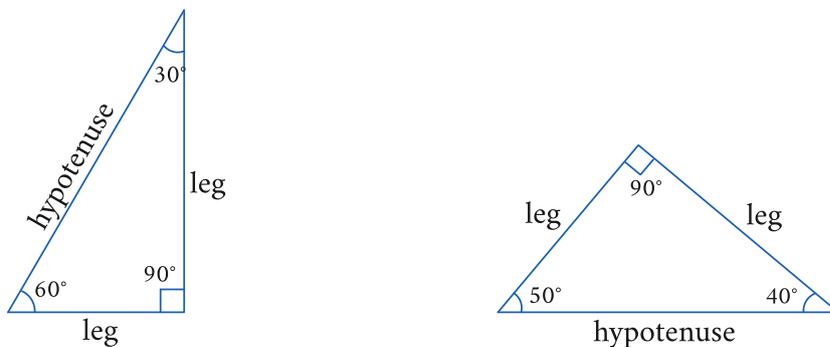
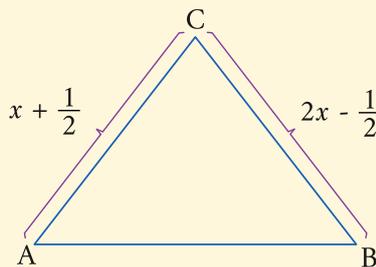


Figure 3. Right triangles.

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find  $x$  if  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles with  $AC = BC$ :



**SOLUTION**

$$\begin{aligned}
 x + \frac{1}{2} &= 2x - \frac{1}{2} \\
 (2)(x + \frac{1}{2}) &= (2)(2x - \frac{1}{2}) \\
 2x + 2(\frac{1}{2}) &= (2)(2x) - (2)(\frac{1}{2}) \\
 2x + 1 &= 4x - 1 \\
 1 + 1 &= 4x - 2x \\
 2 &= 2x \\
 1 &= x
 \end{aligned}$$

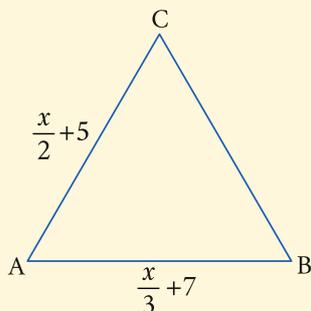
**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{l|l}
 x + \frac{1}{2} & = 2x - \frac{1}{2} \\
 1 + \frac{1}{2} & \left| \begin{array}{l} 2(1) - \frac{1}{2} \\ 2 - \frac{1}{2} \\ 1\frac{1}{2} \end{array} \right.
 \end{array}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 1$

**? EXAMPLE B**

$\triangle ABC$  is equilateral. Find  $x$ :



**SOLUTION**

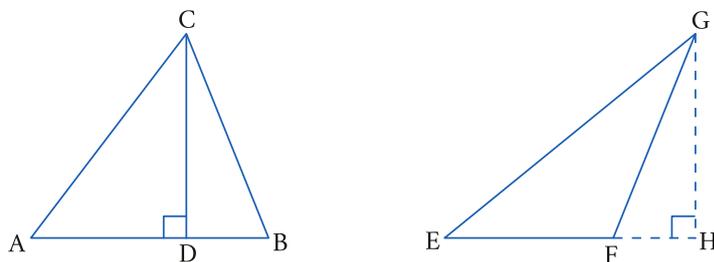
$$\begin{aligned} \frac{x}{2} + 5 &= \frac{x}{3} + 7 \\ (6)\left(\frac{x}{2} + 5\right) &= (6)\left(\frac{x}{3} + 7\right) \\ (6)\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) + (6)(5) &= (6)\left(\frac{x}{3}\right) + (6)(7) \\ 3x + 30 &= 2x + 42 \\ 3x - 2x &= 42 - 30 \\ x &= 12 \end{aligned}$$

**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} \frac{x}{2} + 5 &= \frac{x}{3} + 7 \\ \frac{12}{2} + 5 & \left| \frac{12}{3} + 7 \right. \\ 6 + 5 & \left| 4 + 7 \right. \\ 11 & \left| 11 \right. \end{array}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 12$

An **altitude** of a triangle is a line segment from a vertex perpendicular to the opposite side. In Figure 4,  $CD$  and  $GH$  are altitudes. Note that altitude  $GH$  lies outside  $\triangle EFG$  and side  $EF$  must be extended to meet it.



**Figure 4.**  $CD$  and  $GH$  are altitudes.

Lines, Angles and Triangles

A **median** of a triangle is a line segment from a vertex to the midpoint of the opposite side. In Figure 5,  $CD$  is a median.

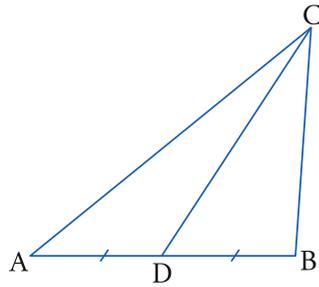


Figure 5.  $CD$  is a median.

An **angle bisector** is a ray which divides an angle into two equal angles. In Figure 6,  $\vec{CD}$  is an angle bisector.

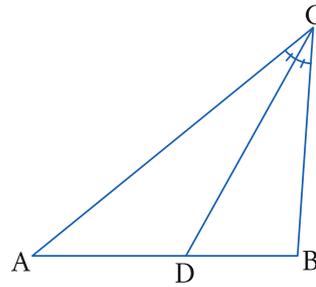
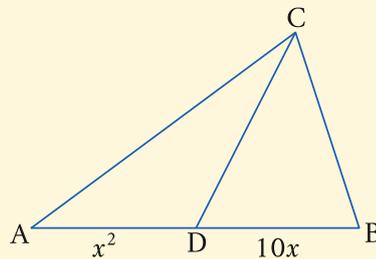


Figure 6.  $\vec{CD}$  is an bisector of  $\angle ACB$ .

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find  $AB$  if  $CD$  is a median:



**SOLUTION**

$$\begin{aligned} AD &= DB \\ x^2 &= 10x \\ x^2 - 10x &= 0 \\ x(10 - x) &= 0 \\ x = 0 \text{ or } x - 10 &= 0 \\ x &= 10 \end{aligned}$$

**CHECK**

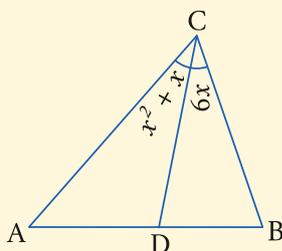
$x = 0$	$x = 10$
$AD = DB$	$AD = DB$
$x^2 \mid 10x$	$x^2 \mid 10x$
$0^2 \mid 10(0)$	$10^2 \mid 10(10)$
$0 \mid 0$	$100 \mid 100$

We reject the answer  $x = 0$  because the length of a line segment must be greater than 0. Therefore  $AB = AD + DB = 100 + 100 = 200$ .

**ANSWER:**  $AB = 200$ .

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find  $\angle ACB$  if  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  is an angle bisector:



**SOLUTION**

$$\begin{aligned} \angle ACD &= \angle BCD \\ x^2 + x &= 6x \\ x^2 + x - 6x &= 0 \\ x^2 - 5x &= 0 \\ x(x - 5) &= 0 \\ x = 0 \text{ or } x - 5 &= 0 \\ x &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

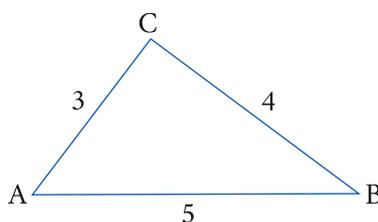
**CHECK**

$x = 0$	$x = 5$
$\angle ACD = \angle BCD$	$\angle ACD = \angle BCD$
$\begin{array}{l l} x^2 + x & 6x \\ 0^2 + 0 & 6(0) \\ 0 & 0 \end{array}$	$\begin{array}{l l} x^2 + x & 6x \\ 5^2 + 5 & 6(5) \\ 30 & 30 \end{array}$

We reject the answer  $x = 0$  because the measures of  $\angle ACD$  and  $\angle BCD$  must be greater than 0.  
Therefore  $\angle ACB = \angle ACD + \angle BCD = 30^\circ + 30^\circ = 60^\circ$ .

**ANSWER:**  $\angle ACB = 60^\circ$ .

The **perimeter** of a triangle is the sum of the lengths of the sides. The perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  in Figure 7 is  $3 + 4 + 5 = 12$ .



**Figure 7.** The perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  is 12.

**THEOREM 1**

The sum of any two sides of a triangle is greater than the remaining side.

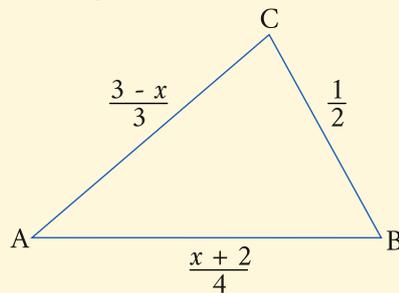
For example, in Figure 7,  $AC + BC = 3 + 4 > AB = 5$ .

**Proof of Theorem 1 :**

This follows from the postulate that the shortest distance between two points is along a straight line. For example, in Figure 7, the length AB (a straight line segment) must be less than the combined lengths of AC and CB (not on a straight line from A to B).

**? EXAMPLE E**

Find the perimeter of the triangle in terms of  $x$ . Then find the perimeter if  $x = 1$ :



**SOLUTION**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Perimeter} &= \frac{3-x}{3} + \frac{x+2}{4} + \frac{1}{2} \quad (\text{l. c. d.} = 12) \\ &= \frac{(4)(3-x)}{(4)(3)} + \frac{(3)(x+2)}{(3)(4)} + \frac{(6)1}{(6)2} \\ &= \frac{12-4x}{12} + \frac{3x+6}{12} + \frac{6}{12} \\ &= \frac{12-4x+3x+6+6}{12} \\ &= \frac{24-x}{12} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{If } x = 1 \quad \frac{24-x}{12} = \frac{24-1}{12} = \frac{23}{12}$$

**ANSWER :**  $\frac{24-x}{12}$  ,  $\frac{23}{12}$

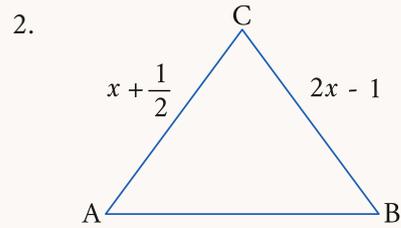
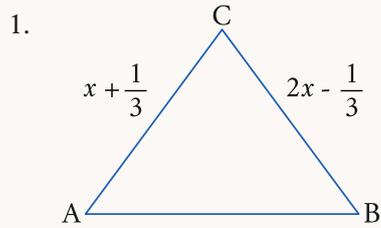
**CHECK**

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{3-x}{3} + \frac{x+2}{4} + \frac{1}{2} &= \frac{24-x}{12} \\ \frac{3-1}{3} + \frac{1+2}{4} + \frac{1}{2} &= \frac{24-1}{12} \\ \frac{2}{3} + \frac{3}{4} + \frac{1}{2} &= \frac{23}{12} \\ \frac{8}{12} + \frac{9}{12} + \frac{6}{12} &= \frac{23}{12} \end{aligned}$$

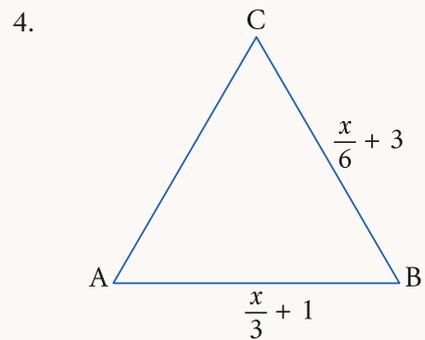
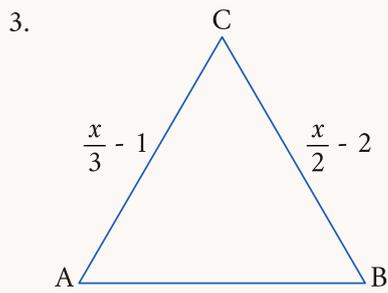


PROBLEMS

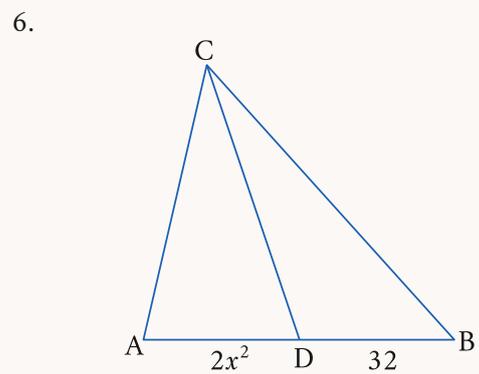
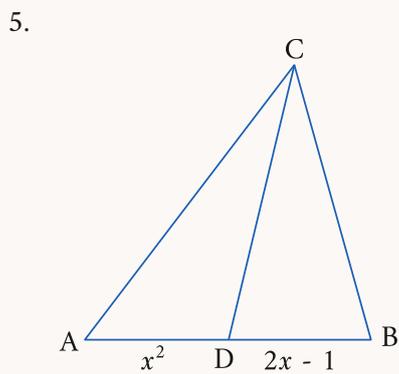
1 - 2. Find  $x$  if  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles with  $AC = BC$  :



3 - 4. Find  $x$  if  $\triangle ABC$  is equilateral :



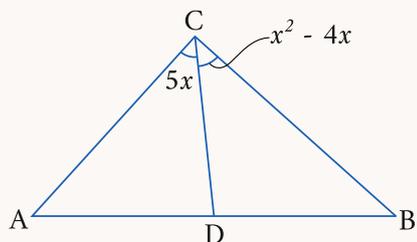
5 - 6. Find  $AB$  if  $CD$  is a median :



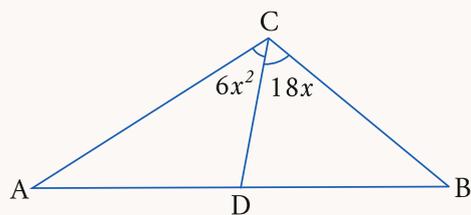
Lines, Angles and Triangles

7 - 8. Find  $\angle ACB$  if  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  is an angle bisector:

7.

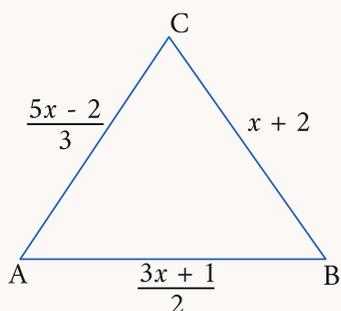


8.

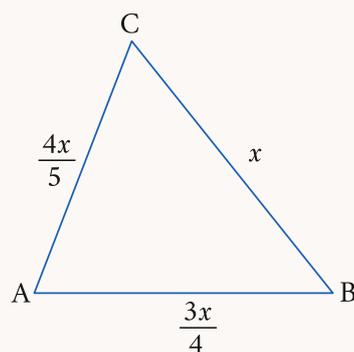


9 - 10. Find the perimeter of the triangle in terms of  $x$ .  
Then find the perimeter if  $x=4$  :

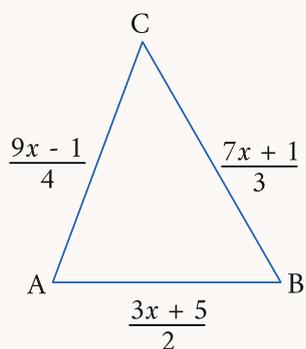
9.



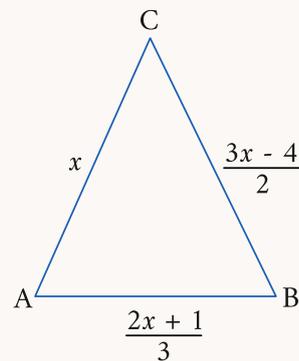
10.



11. Find  $x$  if the perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  is 33.



12. Find  $x$  if the perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  is 11.



## CONGRUENT TRIANGLES

## 2.1 THE CONGRUENCE STATEMENT

Two triangles are said to be **congruent** if one can be placed over the other so that they coincide (fit together). This means that congruent triangles are exact copies of each other and when fitted together the sides and angles which coincide, called **corresponding sides** and **angles**, are equal.

In Figure 1,  $\triangle ABC$  is congruent to  $\triangle DEF$ . The symbol for congruence is  $\cong$  and we write  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ .  $\angle A$  corresponds to  $\angle D$ ,  $\angle B$  corresponds to  $\angle E$  and  $\angle C$  corresponds to  $\angle F$ . Side  $AB$  corresponds to  $DE$ ,  $BC$  corresponds to  $EF$  and  $AC$  corresponds to  $DF$ .



*Figure 1.*  $\triangle ABC$  is congruent to  $\triangle DEF$ .

In this book the congruence statement  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$  will always be written so that corresponding vertices appear in the same order. For the triangles in Figure 1, we might also write  $\triangle BAC \cong \triangle EDF$  or  $\triangle ACB \cong \triangle DFE$  but **never** for example  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDF$  nor  $\triangle ACB \cong \triangle DEF$ .\*

Therefore we can always tell which parts correspond just from the congruence statement. For example, given that  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ , side  $AB$  corresponds to side  $DE$  because each consists of the first two letters.  $AC$  corresponds to  $DF$  because each consists of the first and last letters.  $BC$  corresponds to  $EF$  because each consists of the last two letters.

\* Be warned that not all textbooks follow this practice. Many authors will write the letters without regard to the order. If that is the case then we cannot tell which parts correspond from the congruence statement.

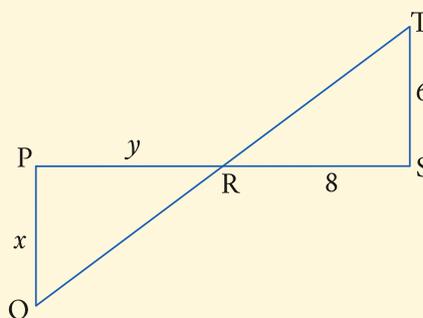
## Congruent Triangles

### ? EXAMPLE A

If  $\triangle PQR \cong \triangle STR$

(1) list the corresponding angles and sides;

(2) find  $x$  and  $y$ .



### SOLUTION

(1)  $\triangle PQR \cong \triangle STR$

$\angle P = \angle S$  *first letter of each triangle in congruence statement*

$\angle Q = \angle T$  *second letter*

$\angle PRQ = \angle SRT$  *third letter. We don't write " $\angle R = \angle R$ " since each  $\angle R$  is different.*

$PQ = ST$  *first two letters*

$PR = SR$  *first and last letters*

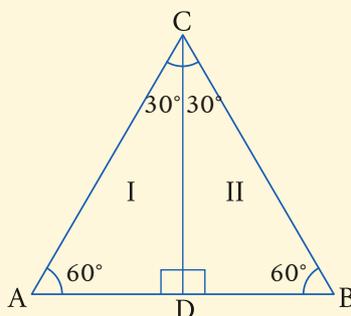
$QR = TR$  *last two letters*

(2)  $x = PQ = ST = 6.$   
 $y = PR = SR = 8.$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 6, y = 8$

### ? EXAMPLE B

Assuming  $\triangle I \cong \triangle II$ , write a congruence statement for  $\triangle I$  and  $\triangle II$ :



## Congruent Triangles

### SOLUTION

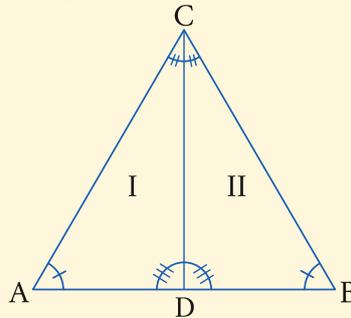
<u><math>\triangle I</math></u>	<u><math>\triangle II</math></u>	
$\angle A = \angle B$		<i>both = 60°</i>
$\angle ACD = \angle BCD$		<i>both = 30°</i>
$\angle ADC = \angle BDC$		<i>both = 90°</i>

Therefore  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$

**ANSWER :**  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$

### **?** EXAMPLE C

Assuming  $\triangle I \cong \triangle II$ , write a congruence statement for  $\triangle I$  and  $\triangle II$ :



### SOLUTION

The angles that are marked the same way are assumed to be equal.

<u><math>\triangle I</math></u>	<u><math>\triangle II</math></u>	
$\angle A = \angle B$		<i>both marked with one stroke</i>
$\angle ACD = \angle BCD$		<i>both marked with two strokes</i>
$\angle ADC = \angle BDC$		<i>both marked with three strokes</i>

The relationships are the same as in *Example B*.

**ANSWER :**  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$

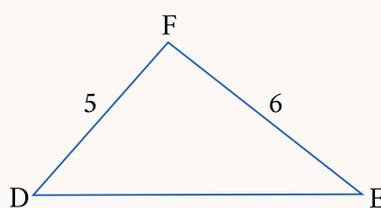
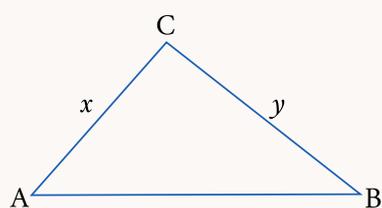
## Congruent Triangles



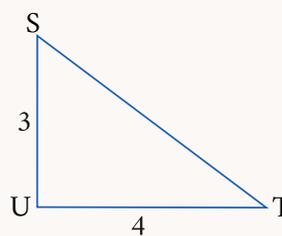
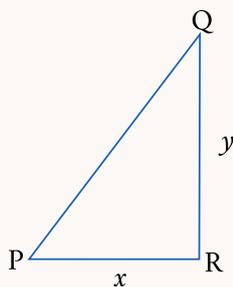
### PROBLEMS

- 1 - 4. For each pair of congruent triangles.  
 a. list the corresponding sides and angles;  
 b. find  $x$  and  $y$ ,

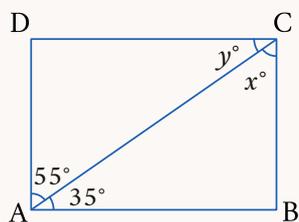
1.  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ :



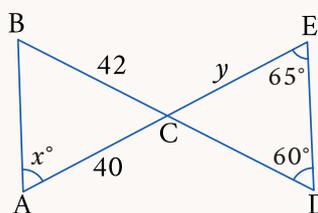
2.  $\triangle PQR \cong \triangle STU$ :



3.  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle CDA$  :

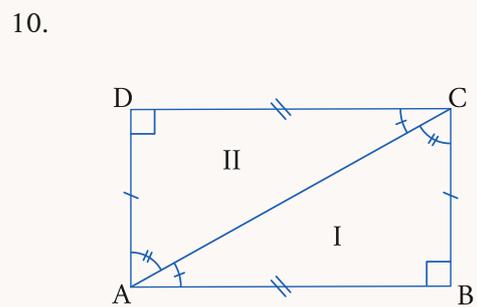
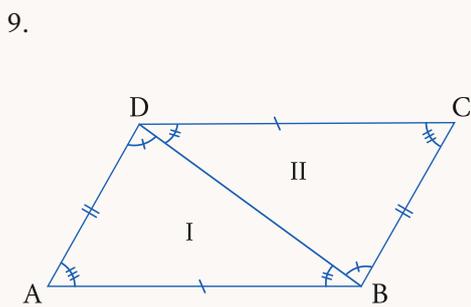
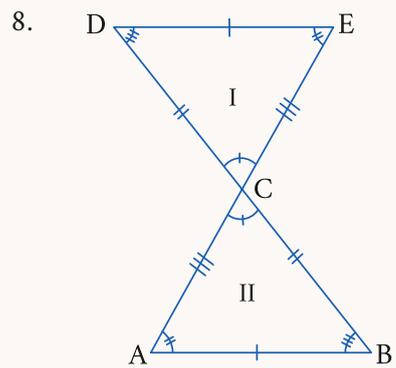
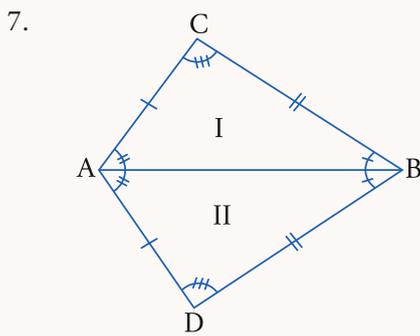
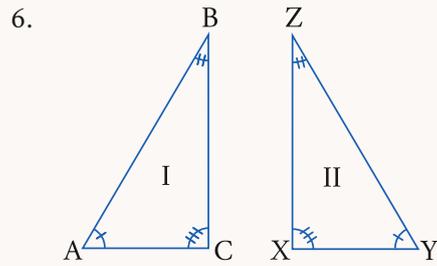
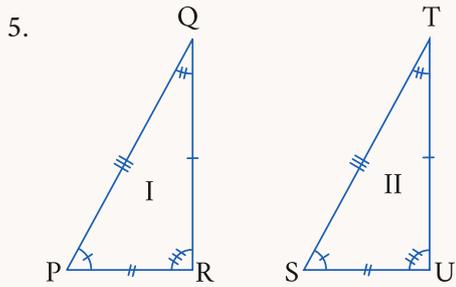


4.  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$  :



### Congruent Triangles

5 - 10. Write a congruence statement for each of the following. Assume the triangles are congruent and that angles or sides marked in the same way are equal.



2.2 THE SAS THEOREM

We have said that two triangles are congruent if all their corresponding sides and angles are equal. However in some cases, it is possible to conclude that two triangles are congruent, with only partial information about their sides and angles.

Suppose we are told that  $\triangle ABC$  has  $\angle A = 53^\circ$ ,  $AB = 5$  inches, and  $AC = 3$  inches. Let us attempt to sketch  $\triangle ABC$ . We first draw an angle of  $53^\circ$  with a protractor and label it  $\angle A$ . Using a ruler, we find the point 5 inches from the vertex on one side of the angle and label it B. On the other side of the angle, we find the point 3 inches from the vertex and label it C. See Figure 1. There is now only one way for us to complete our sketch of  $\triangle ABC$ , and that is to connect points B and C with a line segment. We could now measure BC,  $\angle B$ , and  $\angle C$  to find the remaining parts of the triangle.

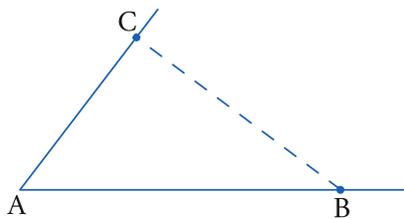


Figure 1. Sketching  $\triangle ABC$ .

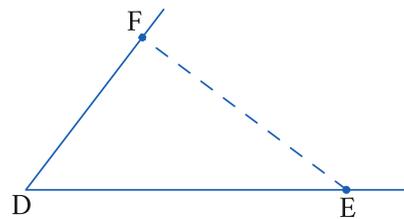


Figure 2. Sketching  $\triangle DEF$ .

Suppose now  $\triangle DEF$  were another triangle, with  $\angle D = 53^\circ$ ,  $DE = 5$  inches, and  $DF = 3$  inches. We could sketch  $\triangle DEF$  just as we did  $\triangle ABC$ , and then measure  $EF$ ,  $\angle E$ , and  $\angle F$  (Figure 2). It is clear that we must have  $BC = EF$ ,  $\angle B = \angle E$ , and  $\angle C = \angle F$  because both triangles were drawn in exactly the same way. Therefore  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ .

In  $\triangle ABC$ , we say that  $\angle A$  is the angle **included** between sides AB and AC.

In  $\triangle DEF$ , we say that  $\angle D$  is the angle included between sides DE and DF.

Our discussion suggests the following theorem:

THEOREM 1 (SAS OR SIDE - ANGLE - SIDE THEOREM)

Two triangles are congruent if two sides and the included angle of one are equal respectively to two sides and the included angle of the other.

In Figures 1 and 2,  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$  because AB, AC, and  $\angle A$  are equal respectively to DE, DF, and  $\angle D$ . We sometimes abbreviate **Theorem 1** by simply writing SAS = SAS.

## Congruent Triangles

### ? EXAMPLE A

In  $\triangle PQR$  name the angle included between sides

- (1) PQ and QR,
- (2) PQ and PR,
- and (3) PR and QR.

### SOLUTION

Note that the included angle is named by the letter that is common to both sides.

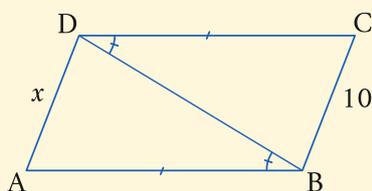
For (1), the letter "Q" is common to PQ and QR and so  $\angle Q$  is included between sides PQ and QR. Similarly for (2) and (3).

**ANSWER :** (1)  $\angle Q$  (2)  $\angle P$  (3)  $\angle R$ .

### ? EXAMPLE B

For the two triangles in the diagram

- (1) list two sides and an included angle of each triangle that are respectively equal, using the information given in the diagram,
- (2) write the congruence statement,
- and (3) find  $x$  by identifying a pair of corresponding sides of the congruent triangles.



### SOLUTION

(1) The angles and sides that are marked the same way in the diagram are assumed to be equal. So  $\angle B$  in  $\triangle ABD$  is equal to  $\angle D$  in  $\triangle CDB$ .

Therefore "B" corresponds to "D." We also have  $AB = CD$ , Therefore "A" must correspond to "C". Thus, if the triangles are congruent, the correspondence must be

$$\triangle A B D \cong \triangle C D B$$

Finally, BD (the same as DB) is a side common to both triangles. Summarizing,

## Congruent Triangles

$$\underline{\triangle ABD} \quad \underline{\triangle CDB}$$

Side	$AB = CD$	(marked = in diagram)
Included angle	$\angle B = \angle D$	(marked = in diagram)
Side	$BD = DB$	(common side)

(2)  $\triangle ABD \cong \triangle CDB$  because of the **SAS Theorem** (SAS = SAS).

(3)  $x = AD = CB = 10$  because AD and CB are corresponding sides (first and third letters in the congruence statement) and corresponding sides of congruent triangles are equal.

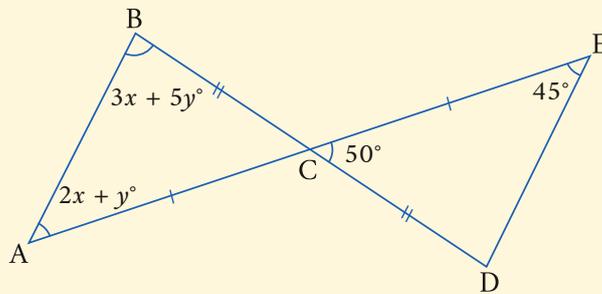
### ANSWER :

- (1) AB,  $\angle B$ , BD of  $\triangle ABD = CD$ ,  $\angle D$ , DB of  $\triangle CDB$ ,
- (2)  $\triangle ABD \cong \triangle CDB$
- (3)  $x = AD = CB = 10$

### ? EXAMPLE C

For the two triangles in the diagram

- (1) list two sides and an included angle of each triangle that are respectively equal, using the information given in the diagram,
- (2) write the congruence statement,
- and (3) find x and y by identifying a pair of corresponding sides of the congruent triangles.



### SOLUTION

(1)  $AC = CE$  and  $BC = CD$  because they are marked the same way. We also know that  $\angle ACB = \angle ECD = 50^\circ$  because vertical angles are equal.

Therefore "C" in  $\triangle ABC$  corresponds to "C" in  $\triangle CDE$ . Since  $AC = CE$ , we must have that "A" in  $\triangle ABC$  corresponds to "E" in  $\triangle CDE$ . Thus, if the triangles are congruent, the correspondence must be

## Congruent Triangles

$$\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$$

We summarize,

$$\underline{\triangle ABC} \quad \underline{\triangle EDC}$$

Side	$AC = EC$	(marked = in diagram)
Included angle	$\angle ACB = \angle ECD$	(vertical angles are =)
Side	$BC = DC$	(marked = in diagram)

- (2)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$  because of the **SAS Theorem** (SAS = SAS).  
 (3)  $\angle A = \angle E$  and  $\angle B = \angle D$  because they are corresponding angles of the congruent triangles.  $\angle D = 85^\circ$  because the sum of the angles of  $\triangle EDC$  must be  $180^\circ$ .  
 ( $\angle D = 180^\circ - (50^\circ + 45^\circ) = 180^\circ - 95^\circ = 85^\circ$ ). We obtain a system of two equations in the two unknowns  $x$  and  $y$  :

$$\begin{array}{rcl} \angle A = \angle E & \longrightarrow & 2x + y = 45 \xrightarrow{-5} -10x - 5y = -225 \\ \angle B = \angle D & \longrightarrow & 3x + 5y = 85 \xrightarrow{\quad} 3x + 5y = 85 \\ & & \hline & & -7x = -140 \\ & & \quad \quad \quad x = 20 \end{array}$$

Substituting for  $x$  in the first original equation,

$$\begin{aligned} 2x + y &= 45 \\ 2(20) + y &= 45 \\ 40 + y &= 45 \\ y &= 45 - 40 \\ y &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

### CHECK

$$\begin{array}{l|l} \angle A = \angle E & \\ 2x + y & 45^\circ \\ 2(20) + 5 & \\ 40 + 5 & \\ 45^\circ & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{l|l} \angle B = \angle D & \\ 3x + 5y & 85^\circ \\ 3(20) + 5(5) & \\ 60 + 25 & \\ 85^\circ & \end{array}$$

### ANSWER :

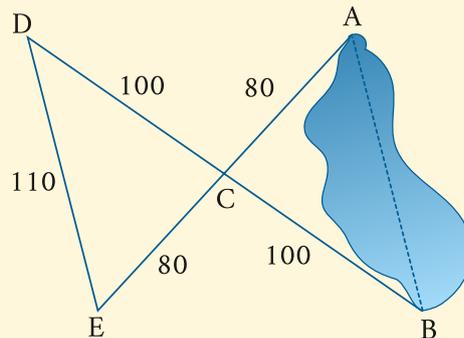
- (1)  $AC, \angle ACB, BC$  of  $\triangle ABC = EC, \angle ECD, DC$  of  $\triangle EDC$ ,  
 (2)  $\triangle ACB \cong \triangle EDC$   
 (3)  $x = 20, y = 5$ .

## Congruent Triangles

### ? EXAMPLE D

The following procedure was used to measure the distance AB across a pond: From a point C, AC and BC were measured and found to be 80 and 100 feet respectively. Then AC was extended to E so that AC = CE and BC was extended to D so that BC = CD. Finally, DE was found to be 110 feet.

- (1) Write the congruence statement.
- (2) Give a reason for (1).
- (3) Find AB.



### SOLUTION

- (1)  $\angle ACB = \angle ECD$  because vertical angles are equal. Therefore the "C's" correspond.  $AC = EC$  so A must correspond to E. We have

$$\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$$

- (2) SAS = SAS. Sides AC, BC, and included angle C of  $\triangle ABC$  are equal respectively to sides EC, DC, and included angle C of  $\triangle EDC$ .  
 (3)  $AB = ED$  because they are corresponding sides of congruent triangles.  
 Since  $ED = 110$ ,  $AB = 110$ .

### ANSWER :

- (1)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$  .
- (2) SAS = SAS:  $AC, \angle C, BC$  of  $\triangle ABC = EC, \angle C, DC$  of  $\triangle EDC$ .
- (3)  $AB = 110$  feet.



#### HISTORICAL NOTE

The SAS Theorem is Proposition 4 in Euclid's *Elements*. Both our discussion and Euclid's proof of the SAS Theorem implicitly use the following principle: If a geometric construction is repeated in a different location (or what amounts to the same thing is "moved" to a different location) then the size and shape of the figure remain the same. There is evidence that Euclid used this principle reluctantly, and many mathematicians have since questioned its use in formal proofs. They feel that it makes too strong an assumption about the nature of physical space and is an inferior form of geometric reasoning. Bertrand Russell (1872 - 1970), for example, has suggested that we would be better off assuming the SAS Theorem as a postulate. This is in fact done in a system of axioms for Euclidean geometry devised by David Hilbert (1862 - 1943), a system that has gained much favor with modern mathematicians. Hilbert was the leading exponent of the "formalist school," which sought to discover exactly what assumptions underlie each branch of mathematics and to remove all logical ambiguities. Hilbert's system, however, is too formal for an introductory course in geometry.

## Congruent Triangles



### PROBLEMS

1 - 4. For each of the following (1) draw the triangle with the two sides and the included angle and (2) measure the remaining side and angles:

1.  $AB = 2$  inches,  $AC = 1$  inch,  $\angle A = 60^\circ$ .
2.  $DE = 2$  inches,  $DF = 1$  inch,  $\angle D = 60^\circ$ .
3.  $AB = 2$  inches,  $AC = 3$  inches,  $\angle A = 40^\circ$ .
4.  $DE = 2$  inches,  $DF = 3$  inches,  $\angle D = 40^\circ$ .

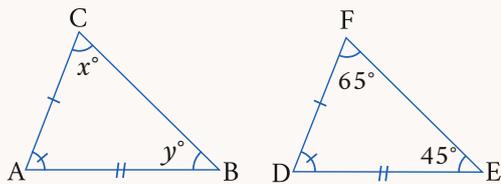
5 - 8. Name the angle included between sides

5.  $AB$  and  $BC$  in  $\triangle ABC$ .
6.  $XY$  and  $YZ$  in  $\triangle XYZ$ .
7.  $DE$  and  $DF$  in  $\triangle DEF$ .
8.  $RS$  and  $TS$  in  $\triangle RST$ .

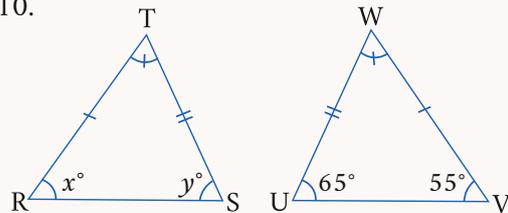
9 - 22. For each of the following,

- (1) list two sides and an included angle of each triangle that are respectively equal, using the information given in the diagram,
  - (2) write the congruence statement,
  - and (3) find  $x$ , or  $x$  and  $y$ ,
- Assume that angles or sides marked in the same way are equal.

9.

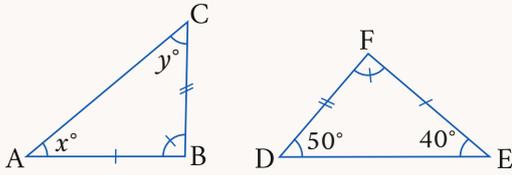


10.

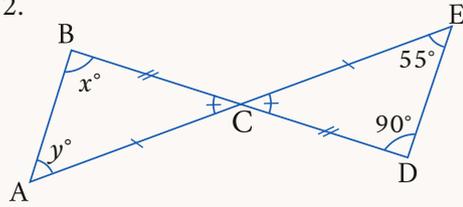


### Congruent Triangles

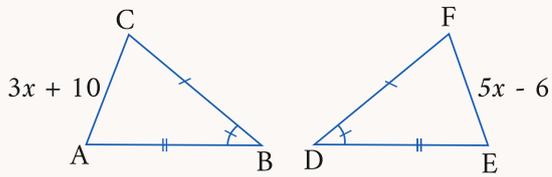
11.



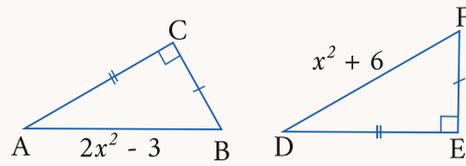
12.



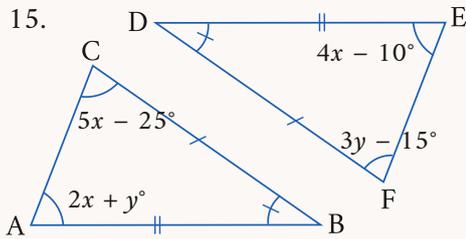
13.



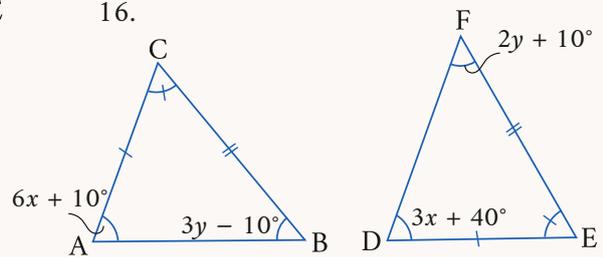
14.



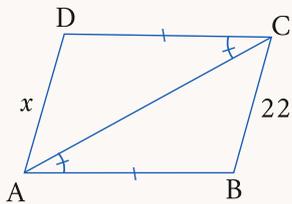
15.



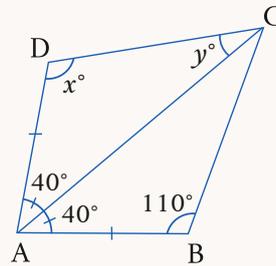
16.



17.

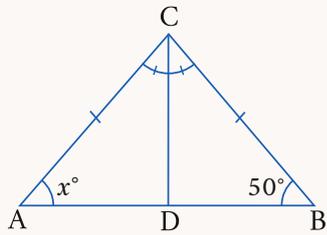


18.

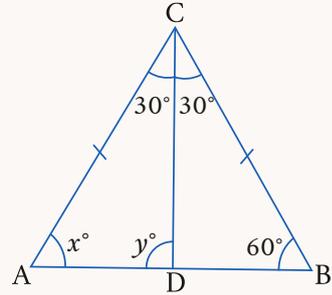


### Congruent Triangles

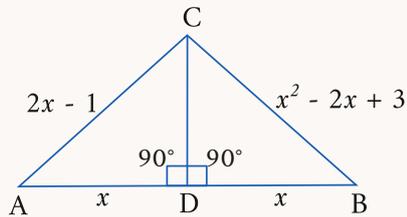
19.



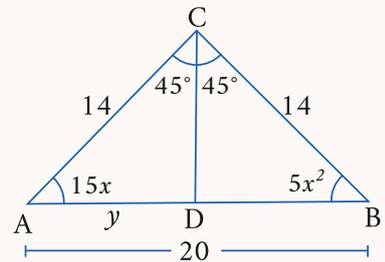
20.



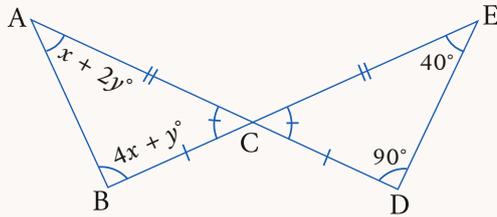
21.



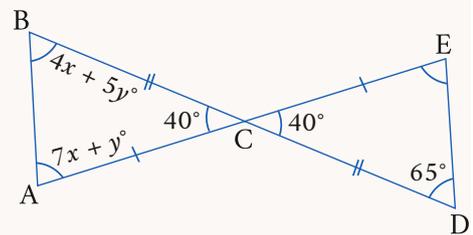
22.



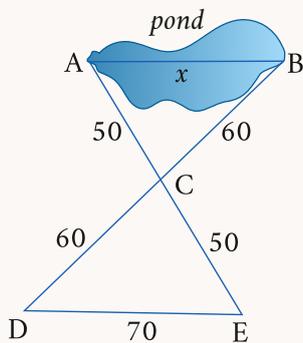
23.



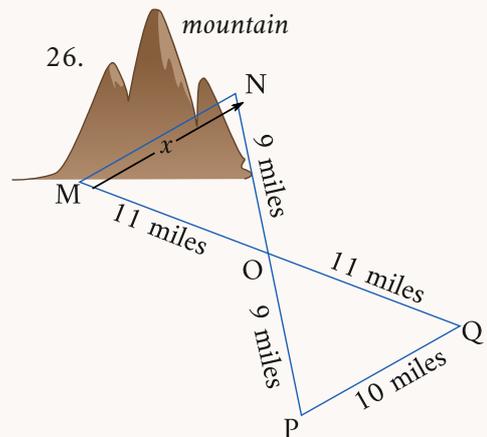
24.



25.



26.



2.3 THE ASA and AAS THEOREMS

In this section we will consider two more cases where it is possible to conclude that triangles are congruent with only partial information about their sides and angles.

Suppose we are told that  $\triangle ABC$  has  $\angle A = 30^\circ$ ,  $\angle B = 40^\circ$ , and  $AB = 2$  inches. Let us attempt to sketch  $\triangle ABC$ . We first draw a line segment of 2 inches and label it  $AB$ . With a protractor we draw an angle of  $30^\circ$  at  $A$  and an angle of  $40^\circ$  at  $B$  (Figure 1). We extend the lines forming  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  until they meet at  $C$ . We could now measure  $AC$ ,  $BC$ , and  $\angle C$  to find the remaining parts of the triangle.

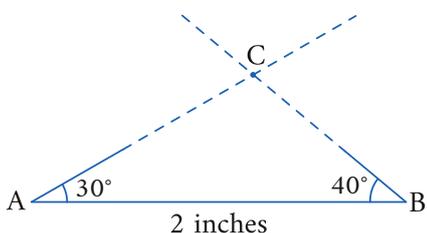


Figure 1. Sketching  $\triangle ABC$ .

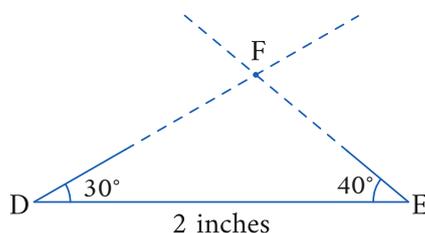


Figure 2. Sketching  $\triangle DEF$ .

Let  $\triangle DEF$  be another triangle, with  $\angle D = 30^\circ$ ,  $\angle E = 40^\circ$ , and  $DE = 2$  inches. We could sketch  $\triangle DEF$  just as we did  $\triangle ABC$ , and then measure  $DF$ ,  $EF$ , and  $\angle F$  (Figure 2). It is clear that we must have  $AC = DF$ ,  $BC = EF$ , and  $\angle C = \angle F$ , because both triangles were drawn in exactly the same way. Therefore  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ .

In  $\triangle ABC$  we say that  $AB$  is the side **included** between  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$ . In  $\triangle DEF$  we would say that  $DE$  is the side included between  $\angle D$  and  $\angle E$ . Our discussion suggests the following theorem:

**THEOREM 1 (ASA OR ANGLE - SIDE - ANGLE THEOREM)**

Two triangles are congruent if two angles and an included side of one are equal respectively to two angles and an included side of the other.

In Figure 1 and 2,  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$  because  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ , and  $AB$  are equal respectively to  $\angle D$ ,  $\angle E$ , and  $DE$ .

We sometimes abbreviate **Theorem 1** by simply writing  $ASA = ASA$ .

**? EXAMPLE A**

In  $\triangle PQR$ , name the side included between  
 (1)  $\angle P$  and  $\angle Q$ ,  
 (2)  $\angle P$  and  $\angle R$ ,  
 (3)  $\angle Q$  and  $\angle R$ .

## Congruent Triangles

### SOLUTION

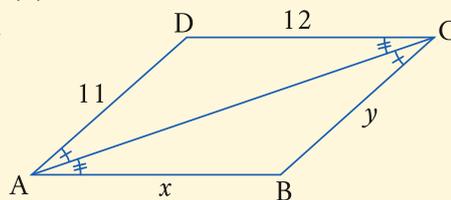
Note that the included side is named by the two letters representing each of the angles. Therefore, for (1), the side included between  $\angle P$  and  $\angle Q$  is named by the letters P and Q -- that is, side PQ. Similarly for (2) and (3).

**ANSWER :** (1)PQ, (2)PR , (3)QR.

### **?** EXAMPLE B

For the two triangles in the diagram

- (1) write the congruence statement,
- (2) give a reason for (1),
- and (3) find x and y.



### SOLUTION

(1) From the diagram  $\angle A$  in  $\triangle ABC$  is equal to  $\angle C$  in  $\triangle ADC$ . Therefore, "A" corresponds to "C". Also  $\angle C$  in  $\triangle ABC$  is equal to  $\angle A$  in  $\triangle ADC$ . So "C" corresponds to "A". We have

$$\triangle ABC \cong \triangle CDA$$

(2)  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle C$ , and included side AC of  $\triangle ABC$  are equal respectively to  $\angle C$ ,  $\angle A$ , and included side CA of  $\triangle CDA$ . (AC = CA because they are just different names for the identical line segment. We sometimes say AC=CA because of **identity**.)

Therefore  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle CDA$  because of the **ASA Theorem** (ASA = ASA).

	<u><math>\triangle ABC</math></u>	<u><math>\triangle CDA</math></u>	
Angle	$\angle BAC$	$=$	$\angle DCA$ (marked = in diagram)
Included angle	$AC$	$=$	$CA$ (identity)
Side	$\angle BCA$	$=$	$\angle DAC$ (marked = in diagram)

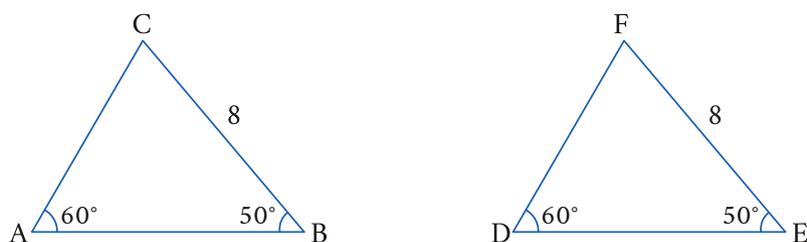
(3)  $AB = CD$  and  $BC = DA$  because they are corresponding sides of the congruent triangles. Therefore  $x = AB = CD = 12$  and  $y = BC = DA = 11$ .

## Congruent Triangles

### ANSWER :

- (1)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle CDA$
- (2) ASA = ASA:  $\angle A, AC, \angle C$  of  $\triangle ABC = \angle C, CA, \angle A$  of  $\triangle CDA$ .
- (3)  $x = 12, y = 11$ .

Let us now consider  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DEF$  in Figure 3.



**Figure 3.** Two angles and an unincluded side of  $\triangle ABC$  are equal respectively to two angles and an unincluded side of  $\triangle DEF$ .

$\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  of  $\triangle ABC$  are equal respectively to  $\angle D$  and  $\angle E$  of  $\triangle DEF$ , yet we have no information about the sides included between these angles,  $AB$  and  $DE$ . Instead we know that the unincluded side  $BC$  is equal to the corresponding unincluded side  $EF$ . Therefore, as things stand, we cannot use ASA = ASA to conclude that the triangles are congruent. However we may show  $\angle C$  equals  $\angle F$  as in **Theorem 3**, section 1.5 ( $\angle C = 180^\circ - (60^\circ + 50^\circ) = 180^\circ - 110^\circ = 70^\circ$  and  $\angle F = 180^\circ - (60^\circ + 50^\circ) = 180^\circ - 110^\circ = 70^\circ$ ).

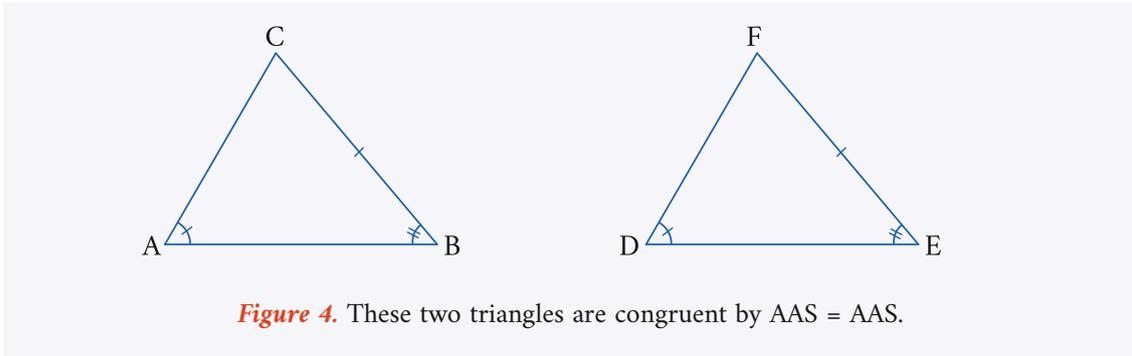
Then we can apply the ASA Theorem to angles  $B$  and  $C$  and their included side  $BC$  and the corresponding angles  $E$  and  $F$  with included side  $EF$ . These remarks lead us to the following theorem:

### THEOREM 2 (AAS OR ANGLE - ANGLE - SIDE THEOREM)

Two triangles are congruent if two angles and an unincluded side of one triangle are equal respectively to two angles and the corresponding unincluded side of the other triangle (AAS = AAS).

In Figure 4, if  $\angle A = \angle D$ ,  $\angle B = \angle E$  and  $BC = EF$  then  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ .

## Congruent Triangles



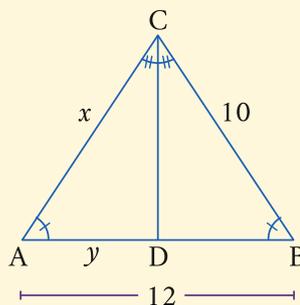
### **Proof of Theorem 2 :**

$\angle C = 180^\circ - (\angle A + \angle B) = 180^\circ - (\angle D + \angle E) = \angle F$ . The triangles are then congruent by ASA = ASA applied to  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and BC of  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\angle E$ ,  $\angle F$  and EF of  $\triangle DEF$ .

### **? EXAMPLE C**

For the two triangles in the diagram

- (1) write the congruence statement,
- (2) give a reason for (1),
- and (3) find  $x$  and  $y$ .



### **SOLUTION**

- (1)  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$
- (2) AAS = AAS since  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle C$  and unincluded side CD of  $\triangle ACD$  are equal respectively to  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and unincluded side CD of  $\triangle BCD$ .

$$\underline{\triangle ACD} \quad \underline{\triangle BCD}$$

Angle	$\angle A = \angle B$	(marked = in diagram)
Angle	$\angle ACD = \angle BCD$	(marked = in diagram)
Unincluded side	$CD = CD$	(identity)

## Congruent Triangles

- (3)  $AC = BC$  and  $AD = BD$  since they are corresponding sides of the congruent triangles.  
 Therefore  $x = AC = BC = 10$  and  $y = AD = BD$ .  
 Since  $AB = AD + BD = y + y = 2y = 12$ , we must have  $y = 6$ .

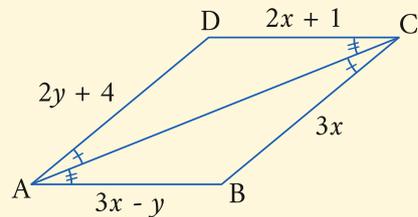
### ANSWER :

- (1)  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$ .  
 (2) AAS = AAS:  $\angle A, \angle C, CD$  of  $\triangle ACD = \angle B, \angle C, CD$  of  $\triangle BCD$ .  
 (3)  $x = 10, y = 6$ .

### ? EXAMPLE D

For the two triangles in the diagram

- (1) write the congruence statement,  
 (2) give a reason for (1),  
 and (3) find  $x$  and  $y$ .



### SOLUTION

Part(1) and part(2) are identical to **Example B**.

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 (3) \quad AB = CD & \text{and} & BC = DA \\
 3x - y = 2x + 1 & & 3x = 2y + 4 \\
 3x - 2x - y = 1 & & 3x - 2y = 4 \\
 x - y = 1 & & 
 \end{array}$$

We solve these equations simultaneously for  $x$  and  $y$ :

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 x - y = 1 & \xrightarrow{-2} & -2x + 2y = -2 \\
 3x - 2y = 4 & \xrightarrow{+} & \underline{+ 3x - 2y = 4} \\
 & & x = 2
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 x - y = 1 \\
 2 - y = 1 \\
 -y = 1 - 2 \\
 -y = -1 \\
 y = 1
 \end{array}$$

### CHECK

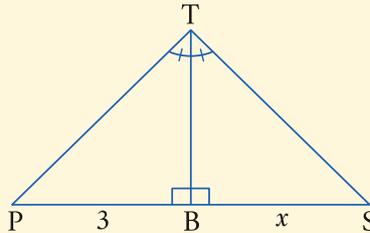
$$\begin{array}{r|l}
 AB = CD & BC = DA \\
 3x - y & 2x + 1 \\
 3(2) - 1 & 2(2) + 1 \\
 6 - 1 & 4 + 1 \\
 5 & 5
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{r|l}
 3x & 2y + 4 \\
 3(2) & 2(1) + 4 \\
 6 & 2 + 4 \\
 & 6
 \end{array}$$

**ANSWER :** (1) and (2) same as Example B. (3)  $x = 2, y = 1$ .

## Congruent Triangles

### ? EXAMPLE E

From the top of a tower T on the shore, a ship S is sighted at sea. A point P along the coast is also sighted from T so that  $\angle PTB = \angle STB$ . If the distance from P to the base of the tower B is 3 miles, how far is the ship from point B on the shore?.



### SOLUTION

$\triangle PTB \cong \triangle STB$  by ASA = ASA. Therefore  $x = SB = PB = 3$ .

**ANSWER:** 3 miles.

### HISTORICAL NOTE

The method of finding the distance of ships at sea described in Example E has been attributed to the Greek philosopher Thales (c. 600 B.C.). We know from various authors that the ASA Theorem has been used to measure distances since ancient times. There is a story that one of Napoleon's officers used the ASA Theorem to measure the width of a river his army had to cross, (see Problem 25 below.)



### PROBLEMS

1-4. For each of the following (1) draw the triangle with the two angles and the included side and (2) measure the remaining sides and angle:

1.  $\triangle ABC$  with  $\angle A = 40^\circ$ ,  $\angle B = 50^\circ$  and  $AB = 3$  inches,
2.  $\triangle DEF$  with  $\angle D = 40^\circ$ ,  $\angle E = 50^\circ$  and  $DE = 3$  inches,
3.  $\triangle ABC$  with  $\angle A = 50^\circ$ ,  $\angle B = 40^\circ$  and  $AB = 3$  inches,
4.  $\triangle DEF$  with  $\angle D = 50^\circ$ ,  $\angle E = 40^\circ$  and  $DE = 3$  inches.

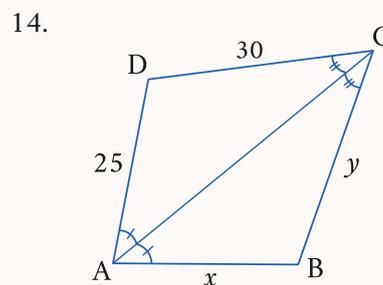
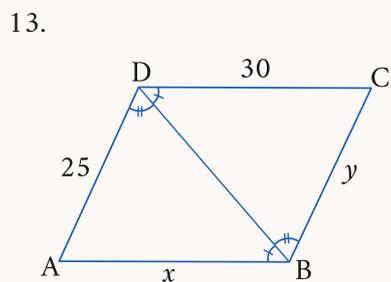
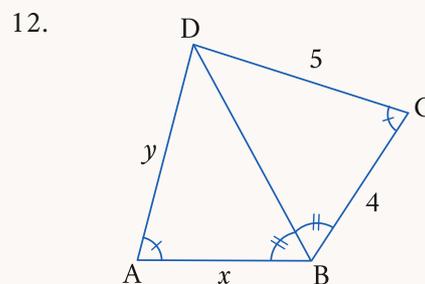
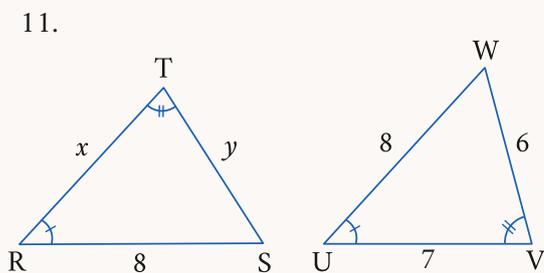
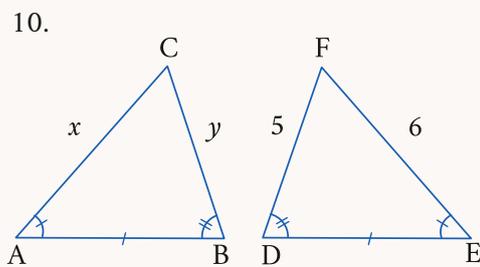
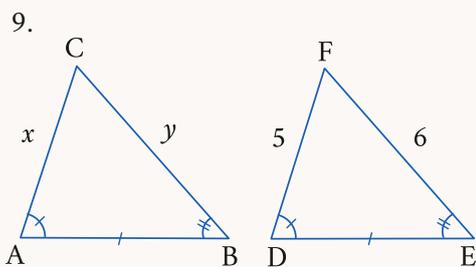
## Congruent Triangles

5-8. Name the side included between the angles:

5.  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  in  $\triangle ABC$ .
6.  $\angle X$  and  $\angle Y$  in  $\triangle XYZ$ .
7.  $\angle D$  and  $\angle F$  in  $\triangle DEF$ .
8.  $\angle S$  and  $\angle T$  in  $\triangle RST$ .

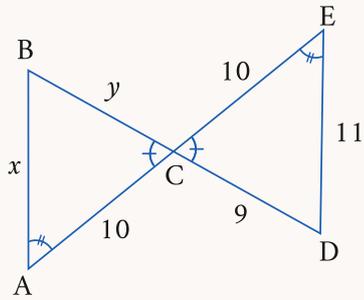
9-22. For each of the following

- (1) write the congruence statement for the two triangles,
- (2) give a reason for (1) (SAS, ASA, or AAS Theorems),
- and (3) find  $x$ , or  $x$  and  $y$ .

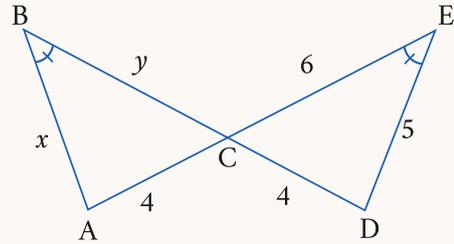


Congruent Triangles

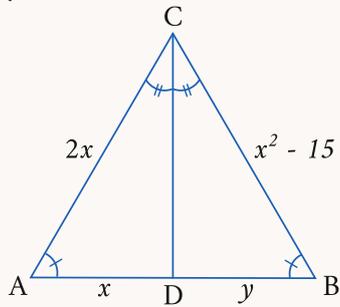
15.



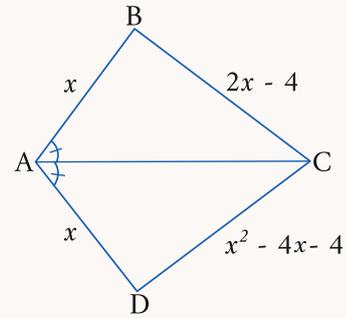
16.



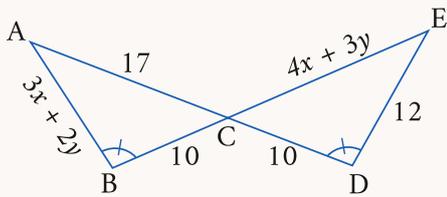
17.



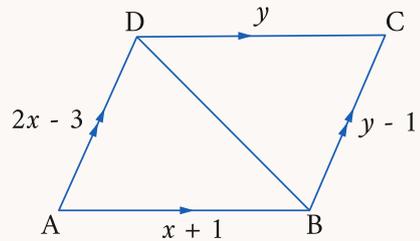
18.



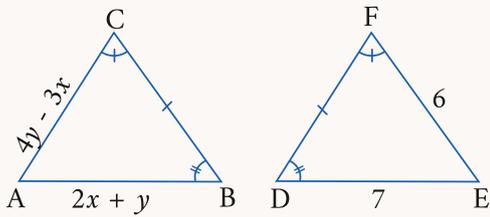
19.



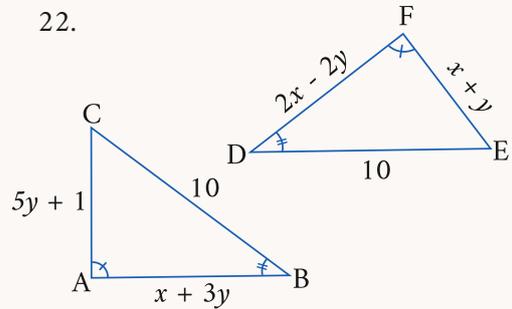
20.



21.



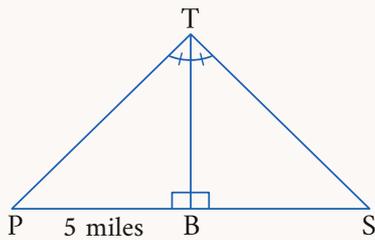
22.



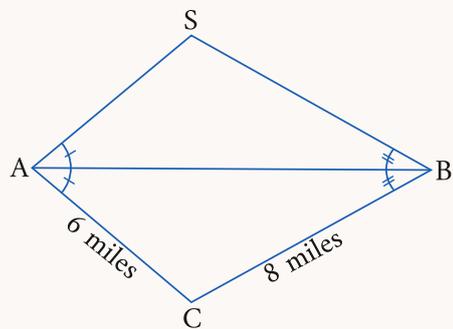
Congruent Triangles

23-26. For each of the following, include the congruence statement and the reason as part of your answer:

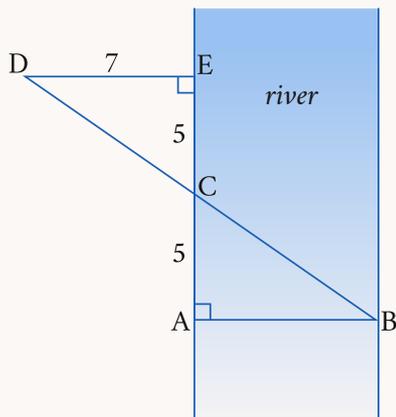
23. In the diagram how far is the ship S from the point P on the coast?



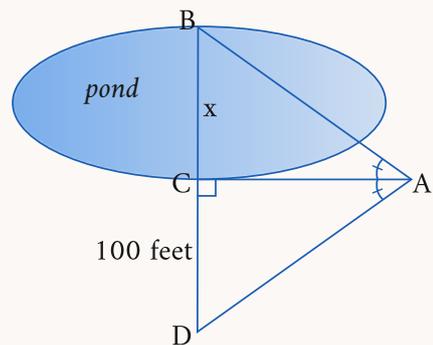
24. Ship S is observed from points A and B along the coast. Triangle ABC is then constructed and measured as in the diagram. How far is the ship from point A?



25. Find the distance AB across a river if  $AC = CD = 5$  and  $DE = 7$  as in the diagram?



26. What is the distance across the pond?

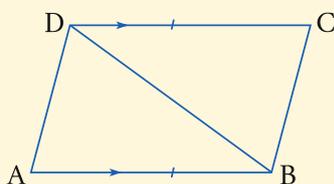


2.4 PROVING LINES and ANGLES EQUAL

We can prove lines and angles equal if we can show they are corresponding parts of congruent triangles. We find it convenient to present these proofs in **double-column form** with statements in the left column and the reason for each statement in the right.

? EXAMPLE A

Given  $AB \parallel CD$  and  $AB = CD$  prove  $AD = BC$ .



SOLUTION

Statements		Reasons	
1	$AB = CD$	1	Given.
2	$\angle ADB = \angle CDB$	2	Alternate interior angles of parallel lines ( $AB \parallel CD$ ) are equal.
3	$BD = DB$	3	Identity.
4	$\triangle ABD \cong \triangle CDB$	4	SAS = SAS: $AB, \angle B, BD$ of $\triangle ABD = CD, \angle D, DB$ of $\triangle CDB$ .
5	$AD = BC$	5	Corresponding sides of congruent triangles are equal.

**Explanation:** Each of the first three statements says that a side or angle of  $\triangle ABD$  is equal to the corresponding side or angle of  $\triangle CDB$ . To arrive at these statements, we should first write the congruence statement using the methods of the previous sections. We then select three pairs of corresponding sides or angles which are equal because of one of the following reasons:

## Congruent Triangles

### Reasons lines are equal

- (1) *Given*. This means we are asked to assume the lines are equal at the beginning of the exercise. For example, the problem will state "given  $AB = CD$ " or  $AB$  and  $CD$  will be marked the same way in the diagram.
- (2) *Identity*. This means the identical line segment appears in both triangles. For example,  $BD$  and  $DB$  represent the same line segment, Of course the length of a line segment is equal to itself.

### Reasons angles are equal

- (1) *Given*.
- (2) *Identity*.
- (3) *Alternate interior angles of parallel lines are equal*. To apply this reason we must be given that the lines are parallel.
- (4) *Corresponding angles of parallel lines equal*.
- (5) *Vertical angles are equal*.

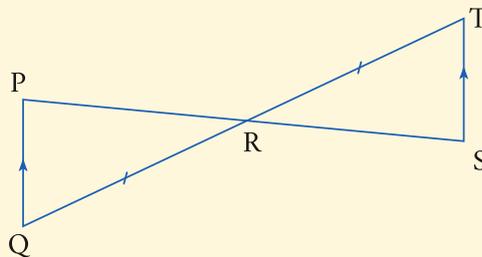
These are not the only possible reasons but they are all that we will use at first. We should also select the three pairs of equal sides or angles so that one of the reasons  $SAS = SAS$ ,  $ASA = ASA$ , or  $AAS = AAS$  can be used to justify the congruence statement in statement 4. In sections 2.6 and 2.7, we will give some additional reasons for two triangles to be congruent.

Statement 5 is the one we wish to prove. The reason is that corresponding sides (or angles) of congruent triangles are equal. We can use this reason here because the triangles have already been proven congruent in **statement 4**.

One final comment. Notice how the solution of Example A conforms with our original definition of **proof**. Each new statement is shown to be true by using previous statements and reasons which have already been established. Let us give another example:

### ? EXAMPLE B

Given  $QP \parallel ST$  and  $QR = TR$  prove  $PR = SR$ .



## Congruent Triangles

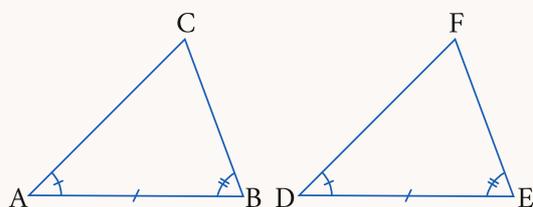
### SOLUTION

<i>Statements</i>	<i>Reasons</i>
1. $QR = TR$ .	1. Given.
2. $\angle Q = \angle T$	2. Alternate interior angles of parallel lines ( $QP \parallel ST$ ) are equal.
3. $\angle PRQ = \angle SRT$	3. Vertical angles are equal.
4. $\triangle PQR \cong \triangle STR$	4. ASA = ASA: $\angle Q, QR, \angle R$ of $\triangle PQR = \angle T, TR, \angle R$ of $\triangle STR$ .
5. $PR = SR$	5. Corresponding sides of congruent triangles are equal.

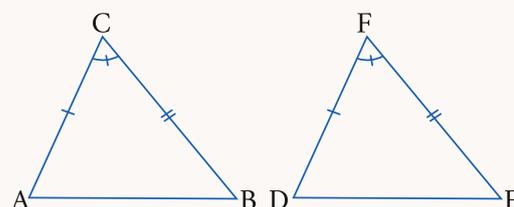


### PROBLEMS

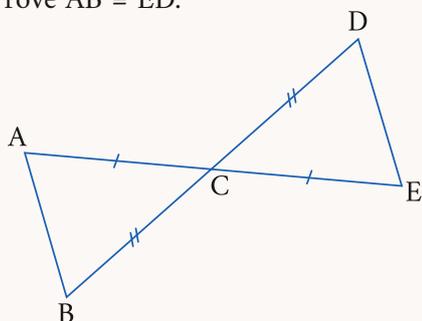
1. Given  $\angle A = \angle D, \angle B = \angle E, AB = DE$ .  
Prove  $AC = DF$ .



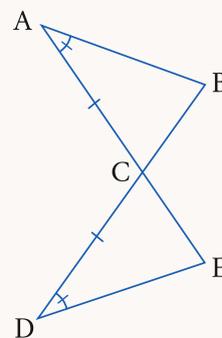
2. Given  $AC = DF, BC = EF, \angle C = \angle F$ .  
Prove  $AB = DE$ .



3. Given  $AC = EC$  and  $BC = DC$ .  
Prove  $AB = ED$ .

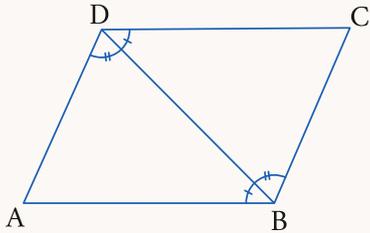


4. Given  $AC = DC, \angle A = \angle D$ .  
Prove  $BC = EC$ .

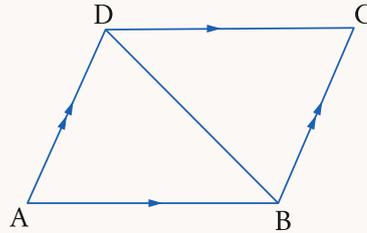


### Congruent Triangles

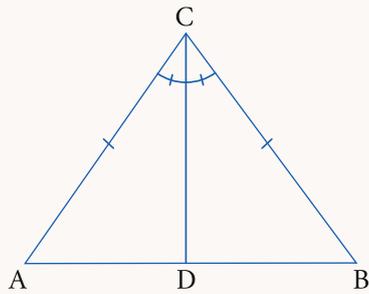
5. Given  $\angle ABD = \angle CDB$  and  $\angle ADB = \angle CBD$ . Prove  $AB = CD$ .



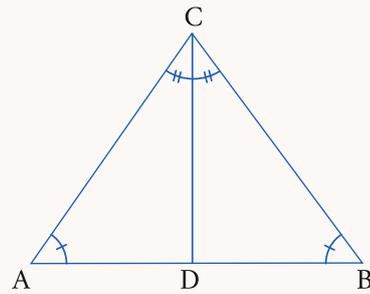
6. Given  $AB \parallel CD$  and  $AD \parallel CB$ . Prove  $AB = CD$ .



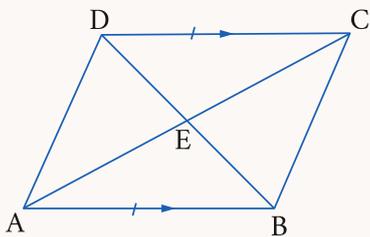
7. Given  $AC = BC$  and  $\angle ACD = \angle BCD$ . Prove  $\angle A = \angle B$ .



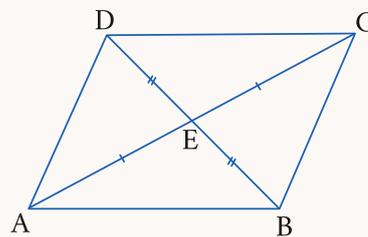
8. Given  $\angle A = \angle B$ ,  $\angle ACD = \angle BCD$ . Prove  $AC = BC$ .



9. Given  $AB \parallel CD$  and  $AB = CD$ . Prove  $AE = CE$ .  
(Hint: Show  $\triangle ABE \cong \triangle CDE$ )

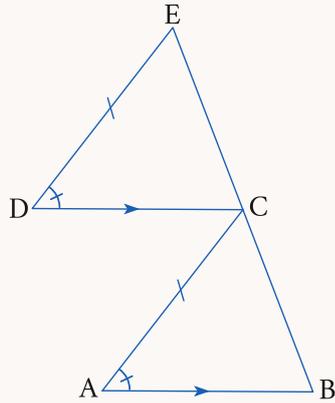


10. Given  $AE = CE$  and  $BE = DE$ . Prove  $\angle BAC = \angle CDB$

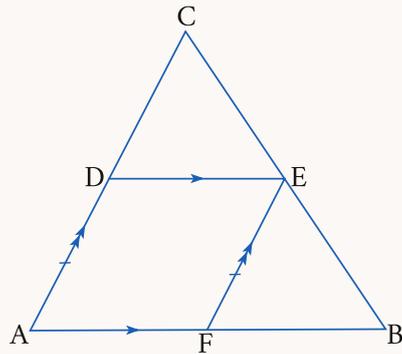


### Congruent Triangles

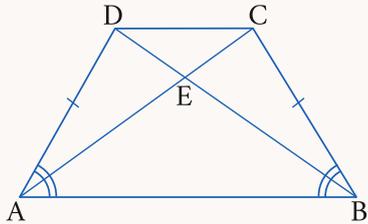
11. Given  $\angle A = \angle D$ ,  $AC = DE$ ,  $AB \parallel DC$ .  
Prove  $BC = CE$ .



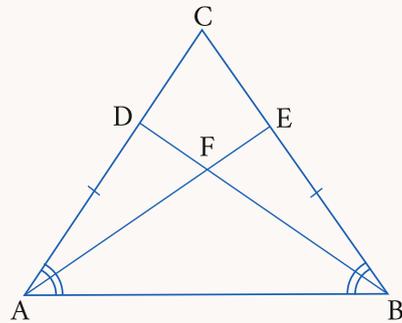
12. Given  $AB \parallel DE$ ,  $AC \parallel FE$  and  $DC = FE$ .  
Prove  $BE = EC$ .



13. Given  $AD = BC$  and  $\angle BAD = \angle ABC$ .  
Prove  $AC = BD$ .  
(Hint: Show  $\triangle ABD \cong \triangle BAC$ ).

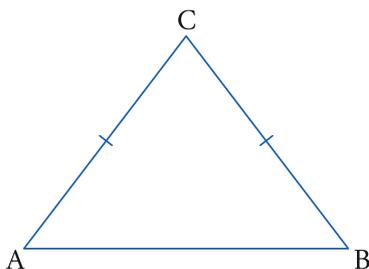


14. Given  $AD = BE$ ,  $\angle BAC = \angle ABC$ .  
Prove  $AE = BD$ .



## 2.5 ISOSCELES TRIANGLES

In section 1.6, we defined a triangle to be **isosceles** if two of its sides are equal. Figure 1 shows an isosceles triangle  $\triangle ABC$  with  $AC = BC$ . In  $\triangle ABC$  we say that  $\angle A$  is **opposite** side  $BC$  and  $\angle B$  is opposite side  $AC$ .



*Figure 1.*  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles with  $AC = BC$ .

The most important fact about isosceles triangles is the following:

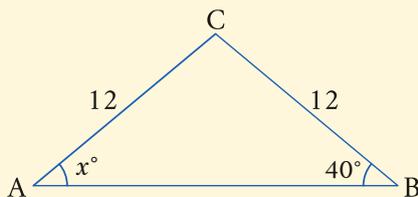
### ▶ THEOREM 1

If two sides of a triangle are equal the angles opposite these sides are equal.

**Theorem 1** means that if  $AC = BC$  in  $\triangle ABC$  then  $\angle A = \angle B$ .

### ? EXAMPLE A

Find  $x$ :



### SOLUTION

$AC = BC$  so  $\angle A = \angle B$ . Therefore,  $x = 40$ .

**ANSWER :**  $x = 40$ .

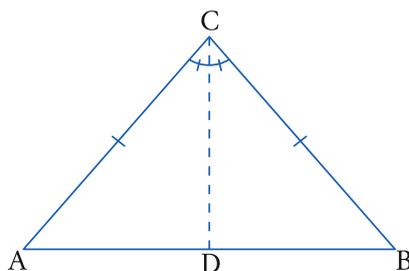
In  $\triangle ABC$  if  $AC = BC$  then side  $AB$  is called the **base** of the triangle and  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  are called the **base angles**. Therefore **Theorem 1** is sometimes stated in the following way: "The base angles of an isosceles triangle are equal."

## Congruent Triangles

### **Proof of Theorem 1:**

Draw  $CD$ , the angle bisector of  $\angle ACB$  (Figure 2). The rest of the proof will be presented in double-column form. We have given that  $AC = BC$  and  $\angle ACD = \angle BCD$ .

We must prove  $\angle A = \angle B$ .

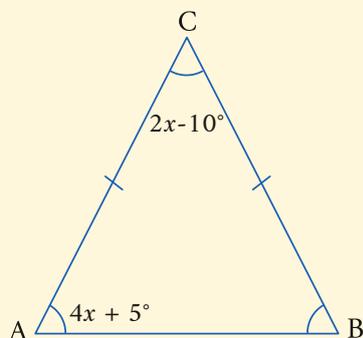


**Figure 2.** Draw  $CD$ , the angle bisector of  $\angle ACB$ .

Statements		Reasons	
1	$AC = BC$	1	Given, $\triangle ABC$ is isosceles.
2	$\angle ACD = \angle BCD$	2	Given, $CD$ is the bisector of $\angle ACB$ .
3	$CD = CD$	3	Identity.
4	$\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$	4	SAS = SAS: $AC, \angle C, CD$ of $\triangle ACD = BC, \angle C, CD$ of $\triangle BCD$ .
5	$\angle A = \angle B$ .	5	Corresponding angles of congruent triangles are equal.

### **? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$  and  $\angle C$ :



## Congruent Triangles

### SOLUTION

$\angle B = \angle A = 4x + 5^\circ$  by **Theorem 1**. We have

$$\begin{aligned}\angle A + \angle B + \angle C &= 180^\circ \\ 4x + 5 + 4x + 5 + 2x - 10 &= 180 \\ 10x &= 180 \\ x &= 18\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\angle A = \angle B &= 4x + 5^\circ = 4(18) + 5^\circ = 72^\circ + 5^\circ = 77^\circ \\ \angle C &= 2x - 10^\circ = 2(18) - 10^\circ = 36 - 10^\circ = 26^\circ\end{aligned}$$

### CHECK

$$\begin{array}{r|l}\angle A + \angle B + \angle C &= 180^\circ \\ 4x + 5 + 4x + 5 + 2x - 10 & \\ 4(18) + 5 + 4(18) + 5 + 2(18) - 10 & \\ 77^\circ + 77^\circ + 26^\circ & \\ 180^\circ &\end{array}$$

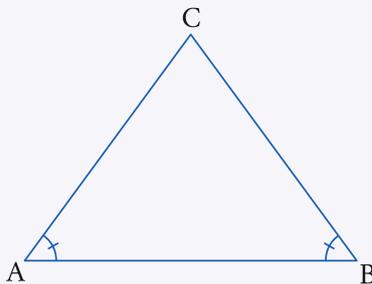
**ANSWER :**  $x = 18$ ,  $\angle A = 77^\circ$ ,  $\angle B = 77^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 26^\circ$

In Theorem 1 we assumed  $AC = BC$  and proved  $\angle A = \angle B$ . We will now assume  $\angle A = \angle B$  and prove  $AC = BC$ . When the assumption and conclusion of a statement are interchanged the result is called the **converse** of the original statement.

### THEOREM 2 (THE CONVERSE OF THEOREM 1)

If two angles of a triangle are equal the sides opposite these angles are equal.

In Figure 3, if  $\angle A = \angle B$  then  $AC = BC$ .

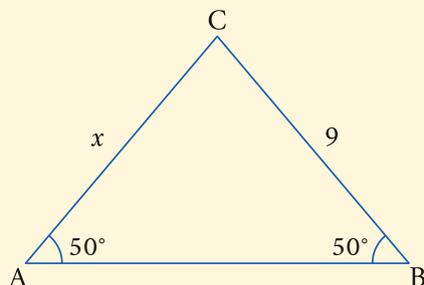


**Figure 3.**  $\angle A = \angle B$

## Congruent Triangles

### ? EXAMPLE C

Find  $x$ :



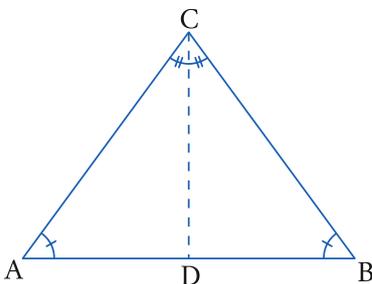
#### SOLUTION

$\angle A = \angle B$  so  $x = AC = BC = 9$  by **Theorem 2**.

**ANSWER :**  $x = 9$

#### *Proof of Theorem 2 :*

Draw  $\overrightarrow{CD}$  the angle bisector of  $\angle ACB$  (Figure 4). We have  $\angle ACD = \angle BCD$  and  $\angle A = \angle B$ . We must prove  $AC = BC$ .



**Figure 4.** Draw  $\overrightarrow{CD}$ , the angle bisector of  $\angle ACB$ .

#### **Statements**

1.  $\angle A = \angle B$ .
2.  $\angle ACD = \angle BCD$
3.  $CD = CD$ .
4.  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$
5.  $AC = BC$ .

#### **Reasons**

1. Given.
2. Given.
3. Identity.
4. AAS = AAS:  $\angle A, \angle C, CD$  of  $\triangle ACD = \angle B, \angle C, CD$  of  $\triangle BCD$ .
5. Corresponding sides of congruent triangles are equal.

The following two theorems are **corollaries** (immediate consequences) of the two preceding theorems:

THEOREM 3

An equilateral triangle is equiangular.

In Figure 5, if  $AB = AC = BC$  then  $\angle A = \angle B = \angle C$ .

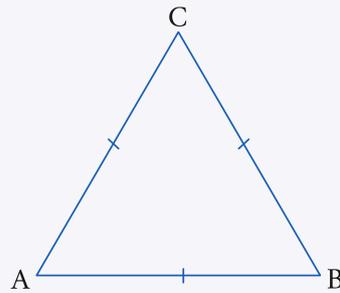


Figure 5.  $\triangle ABC$  is equilateral.

**Proof:**

$AC = BC$  so by **Theorem 1**  $\angle A = \angle B$ .  $AB = AC$  so by **Theorem 1**  $\angle B = \angle C$ . Therefore  $\angle A = \angle B = \angle C$ .

Since the sum of the angle is  $180^\circ$  we must have in fact that  $\angle A = \angle B = \angle C = 60^\circ$ .

THEOREM 4 (THE CONVERSE OF THEOREM 3)

An equiangular triangle is equilateral.

In Figure 6, if  $\angle A = \angle B = \angle C$  then  $AB = AC = BC$ .

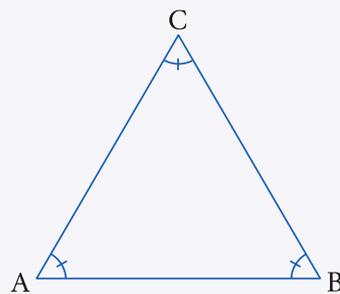


Figure 6.  $\triangle ABC$  is equiangular.

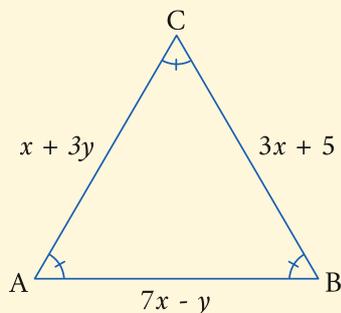
**Proof:**

$\angle A = \angle B$  so by **Theorem 2**,  $AC = BC$ .  $\angle B = \angle C$  so by **Theorem 2**,  $AB = AC$ . Therefore  $AB = AC = BC$ .

## Congruent Triangles

### EXAMPLE D

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $AC$ :



### SOLUTION

$\triangle ABC$  is equiangular and so by **Theorem 4** is equilateral. Therefore:

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 AC = AB & & AB = BC \\
 x + 3y = 7x - y & \text{and} & 7x - y = 3x + 5 \\
 x - 7x + 3y + y = 0 & & 7x - 3x - y = 5 \\
 -6x + 4y = 0 & & 4x - y = 5
 \end{array}$$

We have a system of two equations in two unknowns to solve:

$$\begin{array}{rcl}
 -6x + 4y = 0 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & -6x + 4y = 0 \\
 4x - y = 5 & \xrightarrow{\quad 4} & + \quad 16x - 4y = 20 \\
 \hline
 & & 10x = 20 \\
 & & x = 2
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{r}
 4x - y = 5 \\
 4(2) - y = 5 \\
 8 - y = 5 \\
 -y = 5 - 8 \\
 -y = -3 \\
 y = 3
 \end{array}$$

### CHECK

$$\begin{array}{r|l}
 AC = AB & \\
 x + 3y & 7x - y \\
 2 + 3(3) & 7(2) - 3 \\
 2 + 9 & 14 - 3 \\
 11 & 11
 \end{array}
 \qquad
 \begin{array}{r|l}
 AB = BC & \\
 7x - y & 3x + 5 \\
 7(2) - 3 & 3(2) + 5 \\
 14 - 3 & 6 + 5 \\
 11 & 11
 \end{array}$$

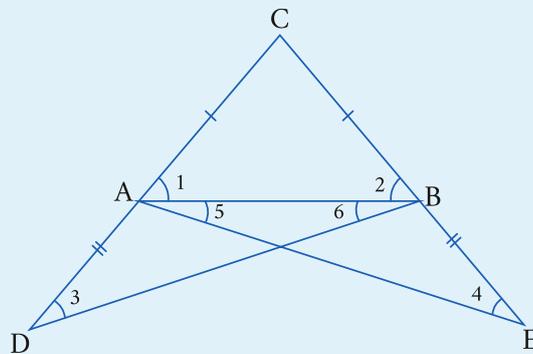
**ANSWER:**  $x = 2$ ,  $y = 3$ ,  $AC = 11$ .



**HISTORICAL NOTE**

Theorem 1, the isosceles triangle theorem, is believed to have first been proven by Thales (c. 600 B.C.) - it is Proposition 5 in Euclid's Elements. Euclid's proof is more complicated than ours because he did not want to assume the existence of an angle bisector. Euclid's proof goes as follows:

Given  $\triangle ABC$  with  $AC = BC$  (as in Figure 1 at the beginning of this section) extend  $CA$  to  $D$  and  $CB$  to  $E$  so that  $AD = BE$  (Figure 7). Then  $\triangle DCB \cong \triangle ECA$  by SAS = SAS. The corresponding sides and angles of the congruent triangles are equal, so  $DB = EA$ ,  $\angle 3 = \angle 4$  and  $\angle 1 + \angle 5 = \angle 2 + \angle 6$ . Now  $\triangle ADB \cong \triangle BEA$  by SAS = SAS. This gives  $\angle 5 = \angle 6$  and finally  $\angle 1 = \angle 2$ .



**Figure 7.** The "Bridge of Fools".

This complicated proof discouraged many students from further study in geometry during the long period when the Elements was the standard text. Figure 7 resembles a bridge which in the Middle Ages became known as the "bridge of fools". This was supposedly because a fool could not hope to cross this bridge and would abandon geometry at this point.

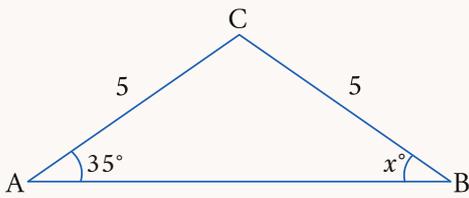
Congruent Triangles



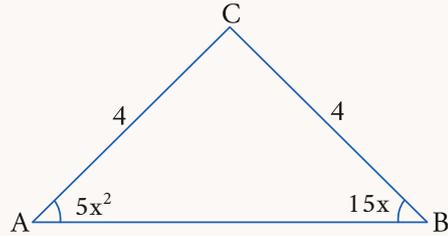
PROBLEMS

1. For each of the following state the theorem(s) used in obtaining your answer:

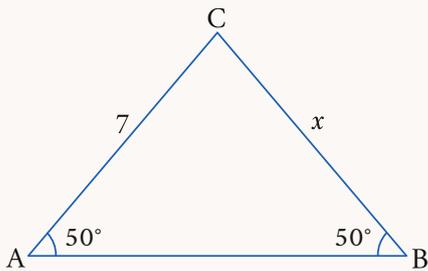
1. Find  $x$ :



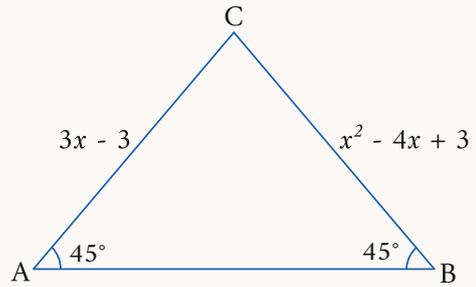
2. Find  $x$ ,  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$ :



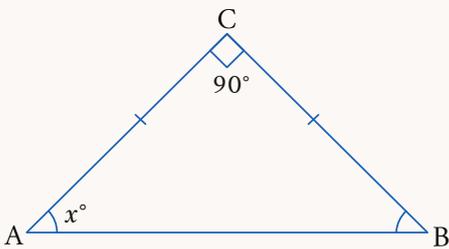
3. Find  $x$ :



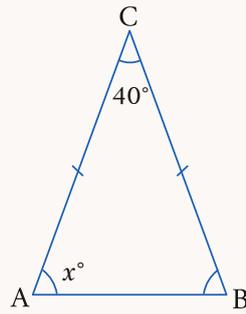
4. Find  $x$ ,  $AC$  and  $BC$ :



5. Find  $x$ :

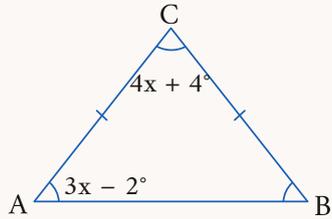


6. Find  $x$ :

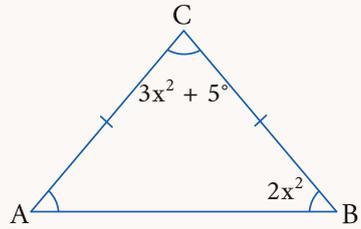


Congruent Triangles

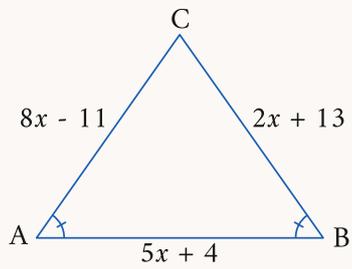
7. Find  $x$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$  and  $\angle C$ :



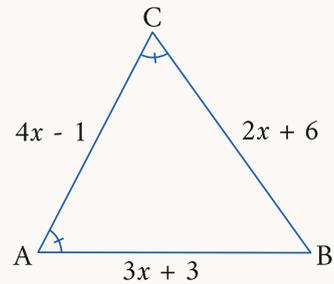
8. Find  $x$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$  and  $\angle C$ :



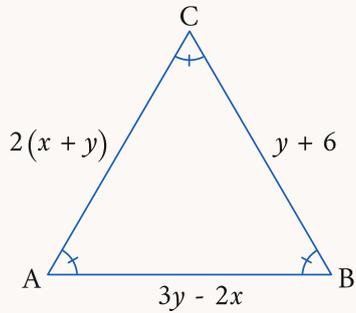
9. Find  $x$ , AB, AC and BC:



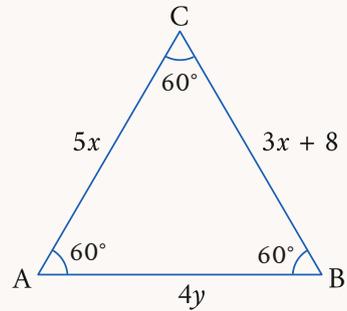
10. Find  $x$ , AB, AC and BC:



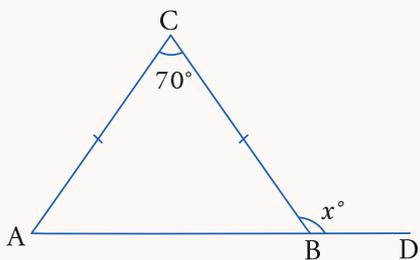
11. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and AC:



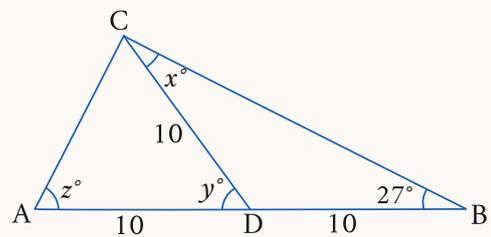
12. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and AC:



13. Find  $x$ :



14. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



**2.6 THE SSS THEOREM**

We now consider the case where the side of two triangles are known to be of the same length.

**THEOREM 1 (SSS OR SIDE - SIDE - SIDE THEOREM)**

Two triangles are congruent if three sides of one are equal respectively to three sides of the other (SSS = SSS).

In Figure 1, if  $a = d$ ,  $b = e$  and  $c = f$  then  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ .

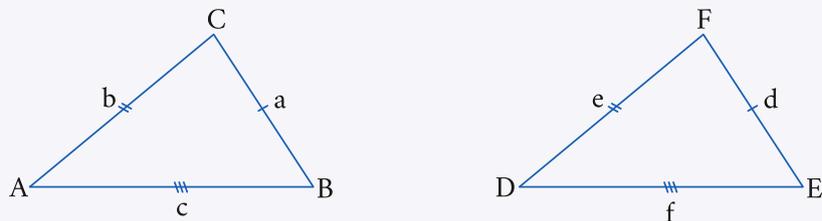
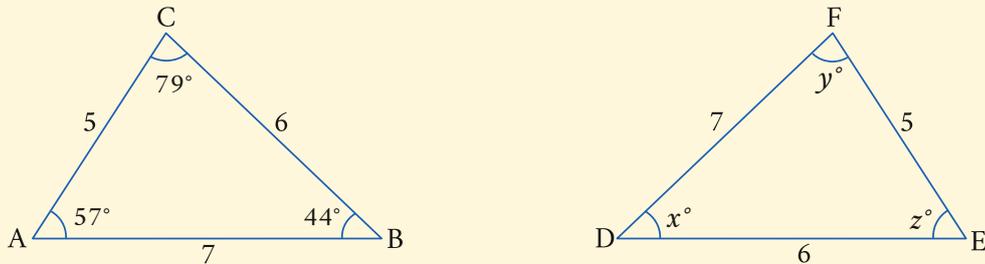


Figure 1.  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$  because SSS = SSS.

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



**SOLUTION**

$AB = 7 = DF$ . Therefore  $\angle C$ , the angle opposite  $AB$  must correspond to  $\angle E$ , the angle opposite  $DF$ . In the same way  $\angle A$  corresponds to  $\angle F$  and  $\angle B$  corresponds to  $\angle D$ . We have  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle FDE$  by SSS=SSS. So

$$x^\circ = \angle D = \angle B = 44^\circ$$

$$y^\circ = \angle F = \angle A = 57^\circ$$

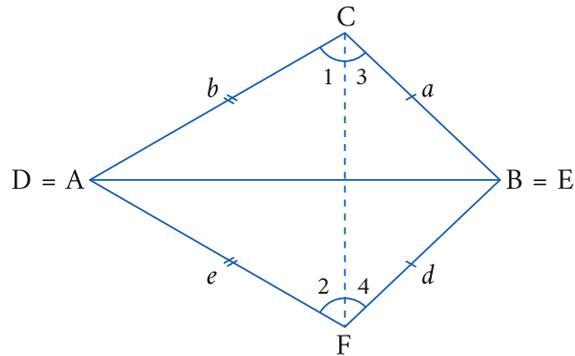
$$z^\circ = \angle E = \angle C = 79^\circ$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 44$ ,  $y = 57$ ,  $z = 79$ .

## Congruent Triangles

### *Proof of Theorem 1:*

In Figure 1, place  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DEF$  so that their longest sides coincide, in this case  $AB$  and  $DE$ . This can be done because  $AB = c = f = DE$ . Now draw  $CF$ , forming angles 1, 2, 3, and 4 (Figure 2). The rest of the proof will be presented in double-column form:

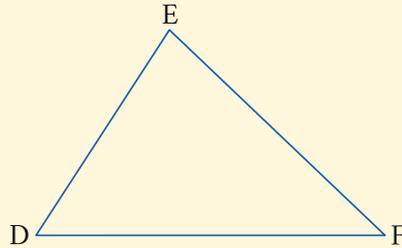
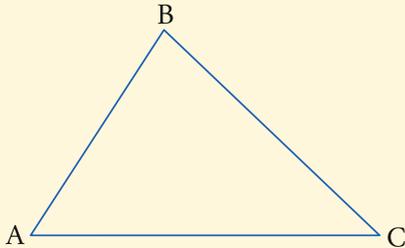


**Figure 2.** Place  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DEF$  so that  $AB$  and  $DE$  coincide and draw  $CF$ .

Statements		Reasons	
1	$\angle 1 = \angle 2$	1	The base angles of isosceles triangle $CAF$ are equal (Theorem 1, section 2.5).
2	$\angle 3 = \angle 4$	2	The base angles of isosceles triangle $CBF$ are equal.
3	$\angle C = \angle F$	3	$\angle C = \angle 1 + \angle 3 = \angle 2 + \angle 4 = \angle F$ .
4	$AC = DF$	4	Given, $AC = b = e = DF$ .
5	$BC = EF$	5	Given, $BC = a = d = EF$ .
6	$\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$	6	SAS = SAS: $AC, \angle C, BC$ of $\triangle ABC = DF, \angle F, EF$ of $\triangle DEF$ .

**? EXAMPLE B**

Given  $AB = DE$ ,  $BC = EF$  and  $AC = DF$ . Prove  $\angle C = \angle F$ :

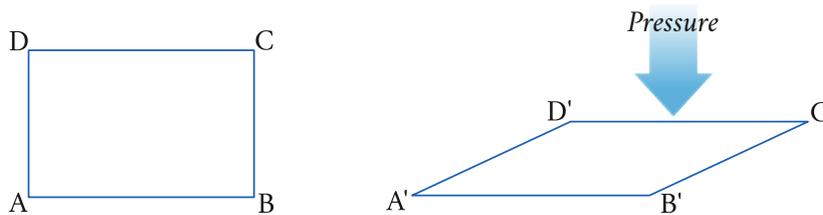


**SOLUTION**

<i>Statements</i>	<i>Reasons</i>
1. $AB = DE$	1. Given.
2. $BC = EF$	2. Given.
3. $AC = DF$ .	3. Given.
4. $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$	4. SSS = SSS: $AB, BC, AC$ of $\triangle ABC = DE, EF, DF$ of $\triangle DEF$ .
5. $\angle C = \angle F$ .	5. Corresponding angles of congruent triangles are equal.

**Application:**

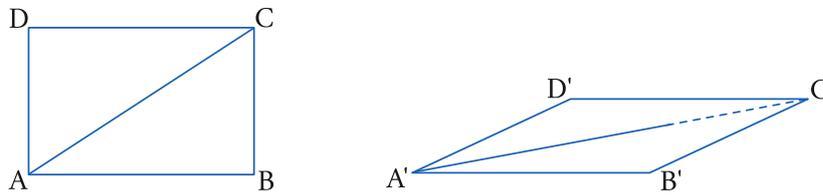
The SSS Theorem is the basis of an important principle of construction and engineering called **triangular bracing**. Imagine the line segments in Figure 3 to be beans of wood or steel joined at the endpoints by nails or screws. If pressure is applied to one of the sides, ABCD will collapse and look like A' B' C' D'.



**Figure 3.** ABCD collapses into A'B'C'D' when pressure is applied.

Now suppose points A and C are joined by a new beam, called a brace (Figure 4). The structure will not collapse as long as the beans remain unbroken and joined together. It is impossible to deform ABCD into any other shape A'B'C'D' because if  $AB = A'B'$ ,  $BC = B'C'$  and  $AC = A'C'$  then  $\triangle ABC$  would be congruent to  $\triangle A'B'C'$  by SSS = SSS.

## Congruent Triangles



**Figure 4.** ABCD cannot collapse into A'B'C'D' as long as the beams remain unbroken and joined together.

We sometimes say that a triangle is a **rigid** figure. Once the sides of a triangle are fixed the angles cannot be changed. Thus in Figure 4, the shape of  $\triangle ABC$  cannot be changed as long as the lengths of its sides remain the same.

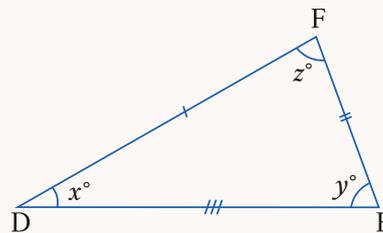
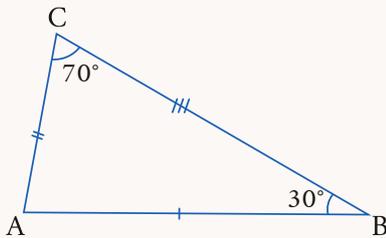


### PROBLEMS

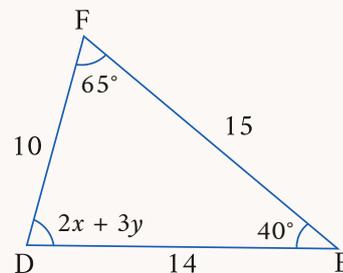
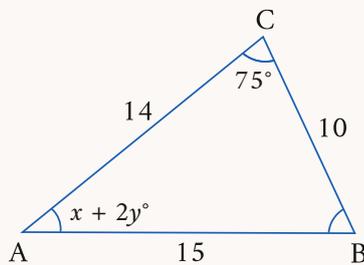
1-8. For each of the following

- (1) write the congruence statement,
- (2) given the reason for (1) (SAS, ASA, AAS or SSS Theorems),
- and (3) find  $x$  or  $x$  and  $y$  or  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ .

1.

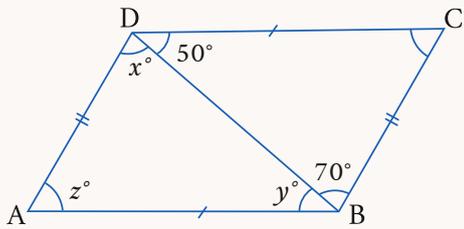


2.

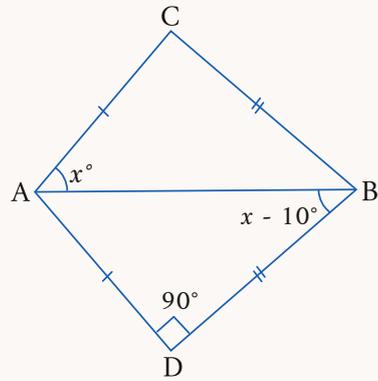


### Congruent Triangles

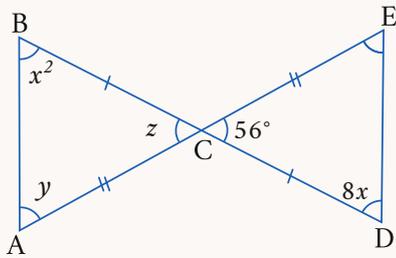
3.



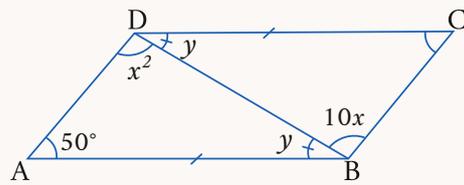
4.



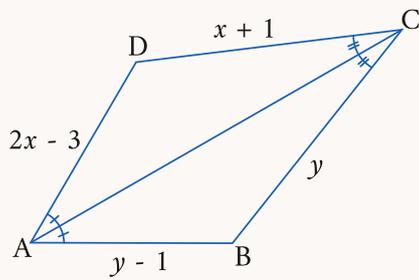
5.



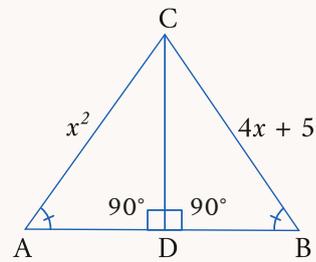
6.



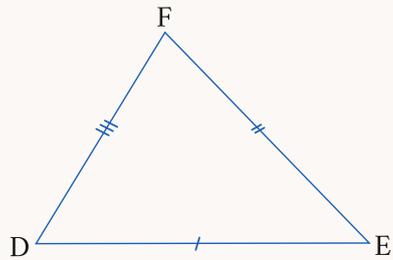
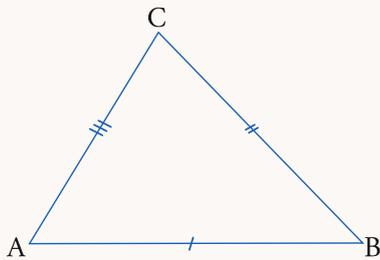
7.



8.

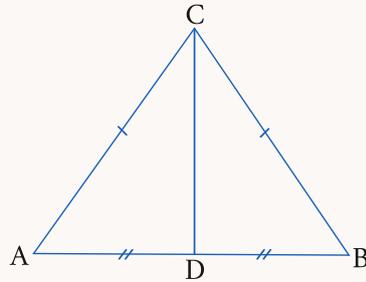


9. Given  $AB = DE$ ,  $BC = EF$  and  $AC = DF$ . Prove  $\angle A = \angle D$ .

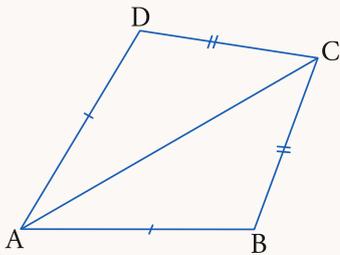


### Congruent Triangles

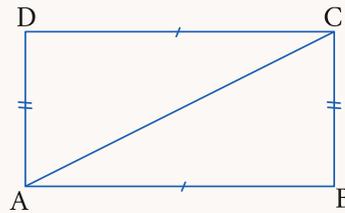
10. Given  $AC = BC$ ,  $AD = BD$ . Prove  $\angle ADC = \angle BDC$ .



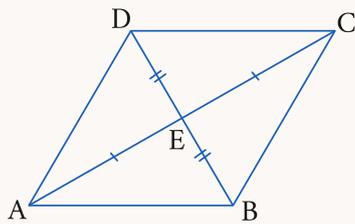
11. Given  $AB = AD$ ,  $BC = DC$ .  
Prove  $\angle BAC = \angle CAD$ .



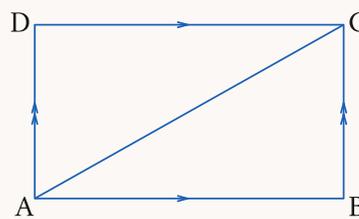
12. Given  $AB = CD$ ,  $BC = DA$ .  
Prove  $\angle BAC = \angle DCA$ .



13. Given  $AE = CE$ ,  $BE = ED$ .  
Prove  $AB = CD$ .



14. Given  $AB \parallel CD$ ,  $AD \parallel BC$ .  
Prove  $AB = CD$ .



2.7 THE HYP - LEG THEOREM and OTHER CASES

We give one more reason for two triangles to be congruent. Note that the following reason applies to **right triangles** only:

THEOREM 1 (HYPOTENUSE - LEG THEOREM)

Two right triangles are congruent if the hypotenuse and a leg of one triangle are respectively equal to the hypotenuse and a leg of the other triangle (Hyp - Leg = Hyp - Leg).

In Figure 1, if  $AB = DE$  and  $BC = BF$  then  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ .

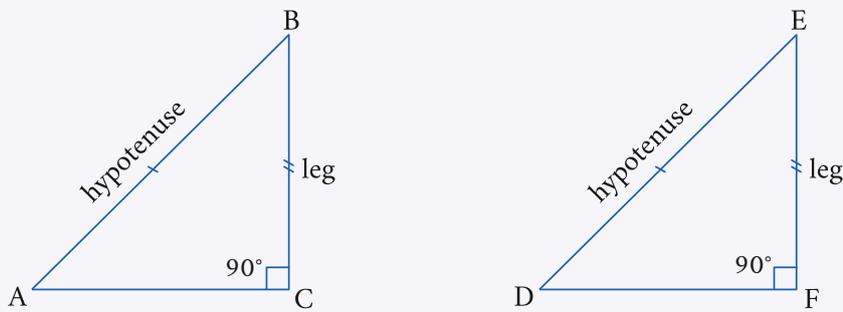
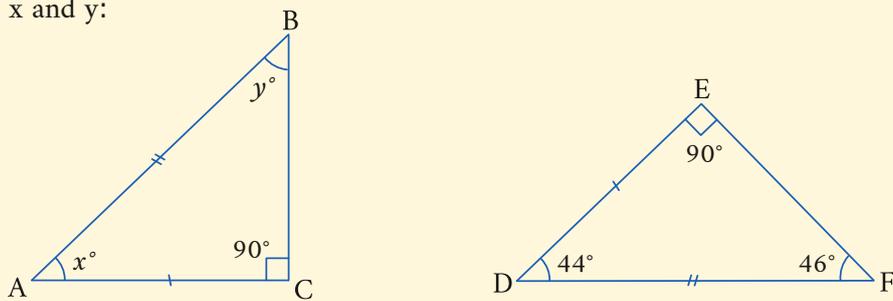


Figure 1.  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$  because Hyp - Leg = Hyp - Leg.

? EXAMPLE A

Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



SOLUTION

The hypotenuse of  $\triangle ABC = AB =$  hypotenuse of  $\triangle DEF = DF$ .  
 A leg of  $\triangle ABC = AC =$  A leg of  $\triangle DEF = DE$ . Therefore  
 $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$  by Hyp - Leg = Hyp - Leg. So  
 $x^\circ = \angle A = \angle D = 44^\circ, y^\circ = \angle B = \angle F = 46^\circ$ .

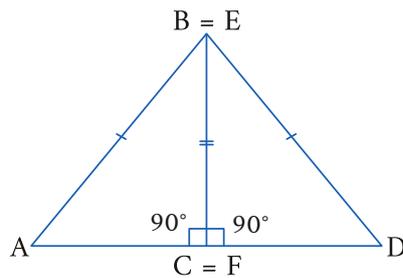
ANSWER :  $x = 44, y = 46$

## Congruent Triangles

### **Proof of Theorem 1:**

In Figure 1, place  $\triangle DEF$  so that  $BC$  and  $EF$  coincide (see Figure 2). Then  $\angle ACD = 180^\circ$  so  $AD$  is a straight line segment.  $\triangle ABD$  is isosceles with  $AB = DE$ . Therefore  $\angle A = \angle D$  because they are the base angles of isosceles triangle  $ABD$  (Theorem 1, section 2.5).

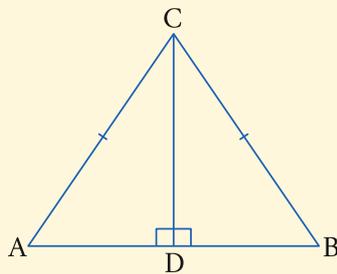
Then  $\angle ABC \cong \angle DEF$  by  $AAS = AAS$ .



**Figure 2.** Place  $\triangle DEF$  so that  $BC$  and  $EF$  coincide.

### **? EXAMPLE B**

Given  $AC = BC$ ,  $CD \perp AB$ . Prove  $AD = BD$ .



### **SOLUTION**

#### **Statements**

1.  $AC = BC$
2.  $CD = CD$
3.  $\angle ADC = \angle BDC = 90^\circ$
4.  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$
5.  $AD = BD$ .

#### **Reasons**

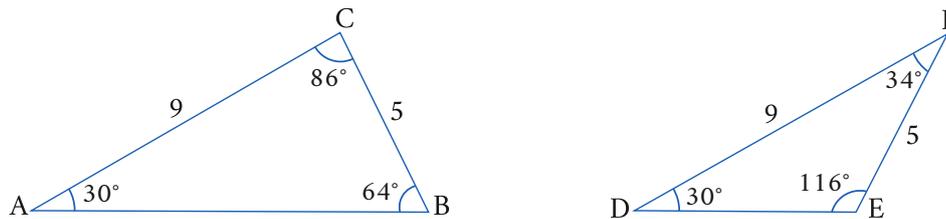
1. Given.
2. Identity
3. Given  $CD \perp AB$ .
4. Hyp-Leg = Hyp-Leg: Hyp  $AC$ , Leg  $CD$  of  $\triangle ACD =$  Hyp  $BC$ , Leg  $CD$  of  $\triangle BCD$ .
5. Corresponding sides of congruent triangles are equal.

## Congruent Triangles

At this point the student might be ready to conclude that two triangles are congruent whenever any three corresponding sides or angles are equal. However this is not true in the following two cases:

1. There may be two triangles that are not congruent but have two equal sides and an equal unincluded angle (SSA = SSA).

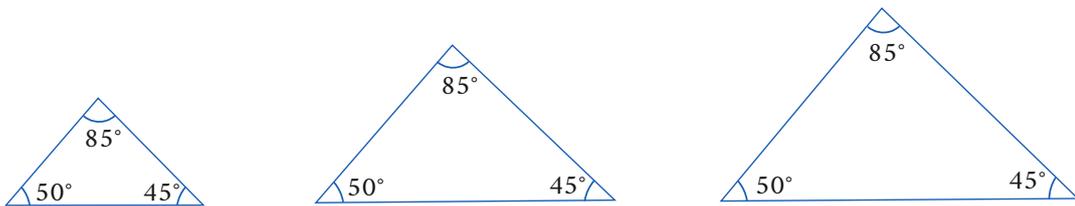
In Figure 3,  $AC = DF$ ,  $BC = BF$  and  $\angle A = \angle D$  but none of the other angles or sides are equal.



**Figure 3.** These two triangles satisfy SSA = SSA but are not congruent.

2. There are many triangles that are not congruent but have the same three angles. (AAA = AAA)

In Figure 4, the corresponding angles are equal but the corresponding sides are not.

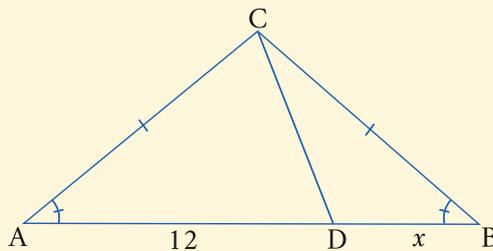


**Figure 4.** These triangles satisfy AAA = AAA but are not congruent.

If AAA = AAA the triangles are said to be **similar**. Similar triangles are discussed in **Chapter 4**.

### ? EXAMPLE C

Determine if the triangles are congruent. If so write the congruence statement and find  $x$ .



## Congruent Triangles

### **SOLUTION**

From the diagram  $AC = BC$ ,  $CD = CD$ , and  $\angle A = \angle B$ . These are the only pairs of sides and angles which can be proven equal.  $\angle A$  is not included between sides  $AC$  and  $CD$  and  $\angle B$  is not included between sides  $BC$  and  $CD$ . Therefore we have only  $SSA = SSA$ . We cannot conclude the triangles are congruent and we cannot find  $x$ .

**ANSWER:** The triangles cannot be proven congruent.

### **SUMMARY**

#### *Valid reasons for congruence*

SAS = SAS

ASA = ASA

AAS = AAS

SSS = SSS

Hyp - Leg = Hyp - Leg (right triangles only).

#### *Invalid reasons for congruence*

SSA = SSA

AAA = AAA

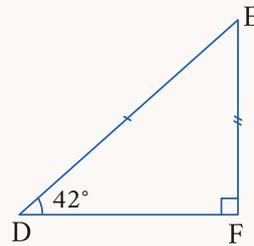
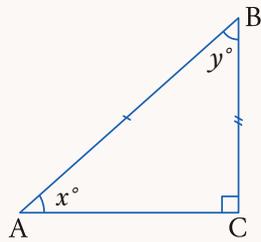
## Congruent Triangles



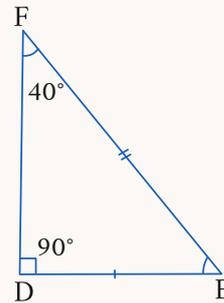
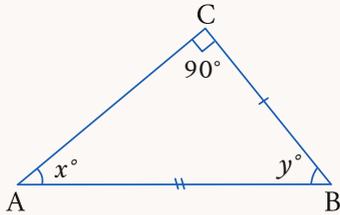
### PROBLEMS

- 1 - 16. For each of the following, determine if the triangles are congruent. If so  
 (1) write the congruence statement,  
 (2) give the reason for (1),  
 and (3) find  $x$  or  $x$  and  $y$  or  $x, y$  and  $z$ .  
 Otherwise write "the triangles cannot be proven congruent".

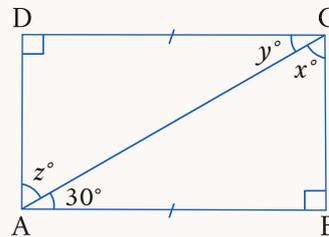
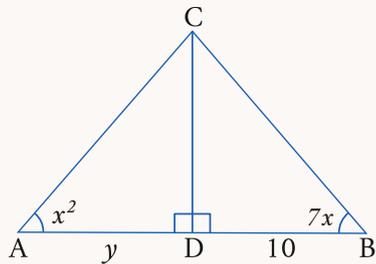
1.



2.

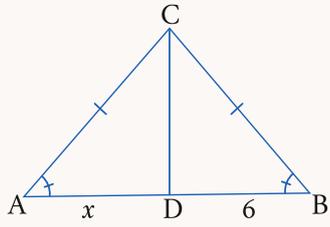


3.

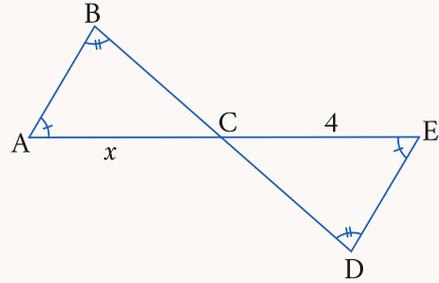


### Congruent Triangles

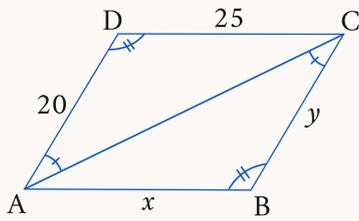
5.



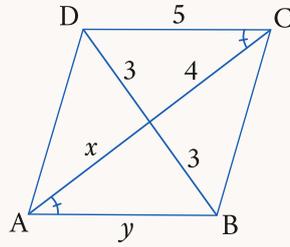
6.



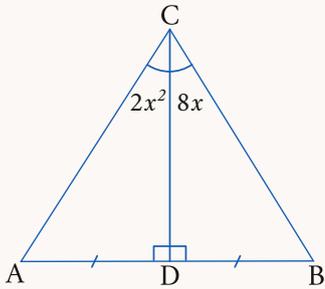
7.



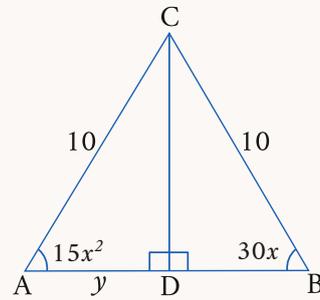
8.



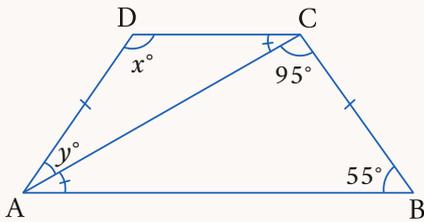
9.



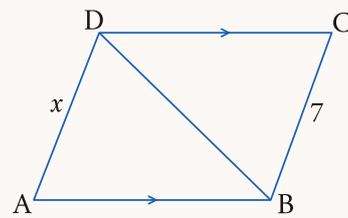
10.



11.

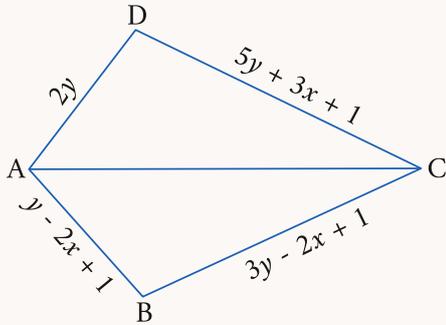


12.

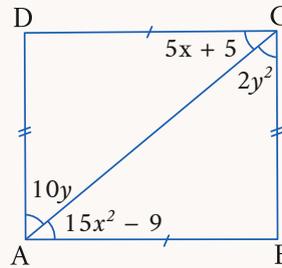


Congruent Triangles

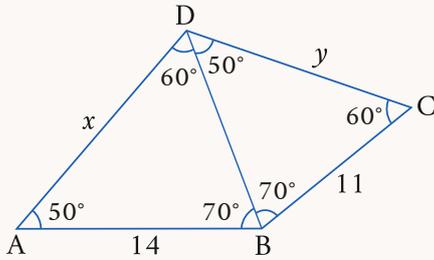
13.



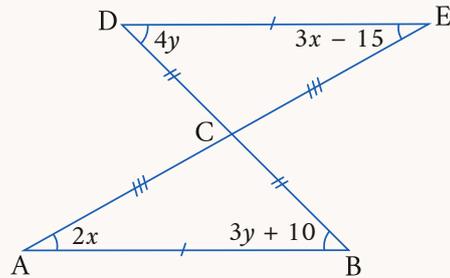
14.



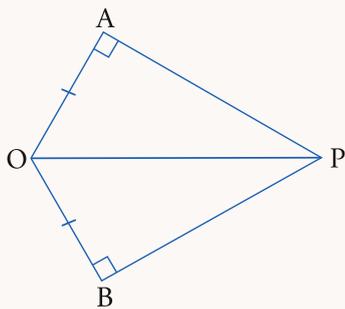
15.



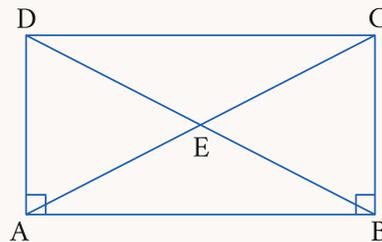
16.



17. Given  $OA = OB$  and  $\angle A = \angle B = 90^\circ$ .  
Prove  $AP = BP$ .

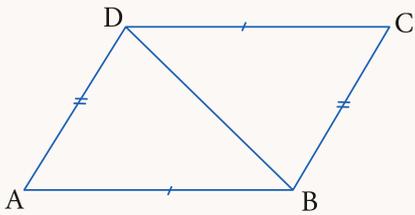


18. Given  $AC = BD$  and  $\angle A = \angle B = 90^\circ$ .  
Prove  $AD = BC$ .  
(Hint: Show  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle BAD$ )

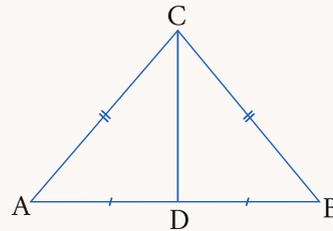


Congruent Triangles

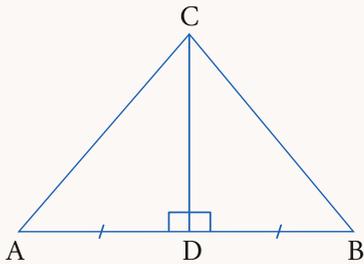
19. Given  $AB = CD$  and  $AD = CB$ .  
Prove  $\angle A = \angle C$ .



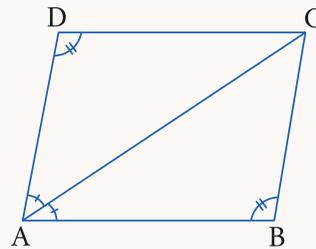
20. Given  $AC = BC$  and  $AD = BD$ .  
Prove  $\angle A = \angle B$ .



21. Given  $AD = BD$  and  $AB \perp CD$ .  
Prove  $\angle A = \angle B$ .



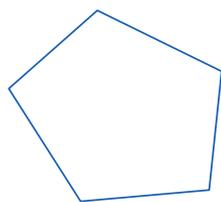
22. Given  $\angle BAC = \angle DAC$  and  $\angle B = \angle D$ .  
Prove  $AB = AD$ .



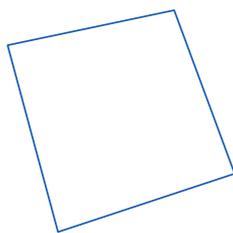
## QUADRILATERALS

## 3.1 PARALLELOGRAMS

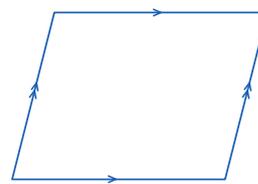
A **polygon** is a figure formed by line segments which bound a portion of the plane (Figure 1). The bounding line segments are called the **sides** of the polygon. The angles formed by the sides are the **angles** of the polygon and the vertices of these angles are the **vertices** of the polygon. The simplest polygon is the triangle, which has 3 sides. In this chapter we will study the **quadrilateral**, the polygon with 4 sides (Figure 2). Other polygons are the **pentagon** (5 sides), the **hexagon**(6 sides), the **octagon**(8 sides) and the **decagon** (10 sides).



**Figure 1**  
A polygon

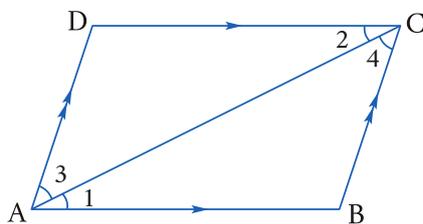


**Figure 2**  
A quadrilateral



**Figure 3**  
A parallelogram

A **parallelogram** is a quadrilateral in which the opposite sides are parallel (Figure 3). To discover its properties, we will draw a **diagonal**, a line connecting the opposite vertices of the parallelogram. In Figure 4, AC is a diagonal of parallelogram ABCD. We will now prove  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle CDA$ :



**Figure 4.** Diagonal AC divides parallelogram ABCD into two congruent triangles.

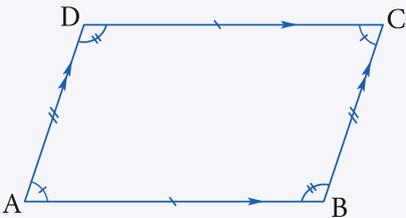
## Quadrilaterals

Statements		Reasons	
1	$\angle 1 = \angle 2$	1	The alternate interior angles of parallel lines AB and CD are equal.
2	$\angle 3 = \angle 4$	2	The alternate interior angles of parallel lines BC and AD are equal.
3	$AC = AC$	3	Identity.
4	$\triangle ABC \cong \triangle CDA$	4	ASA = ASA.
5	$AB = CD, BC = DA$	5	The corresponding sides of congruent triangles are equal.
6	$\angle B = \angle D$	6	The corresponding angles of congruent triangles are equal.
7	$\angle A = \angle C$	7	$\angle A = \angle 1 + \angle 3 = \angle 2 + \angle 4 = \angle C$ . (Add statements 1 and 2).

We have proved the following theorem:

**THEOREM 1**

The opposite sides and opposite angles of a parallelogram are equal.  
 In parallelogram ABCD of Figure 5,  $AB = CD$ ,  $AD = BC$ ,  $\angle A = \angle C$ , and  $\angle B = \angle D$ .

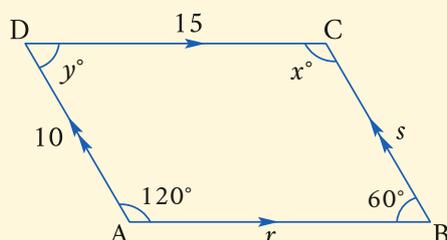


*Figure 5.* The opposite sides and opposite angles of a parallelogram are equal.

## Quadrilaterals

### ? EXAMPLE A

Find  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $r$  and  $s$ :



### SOLUTION

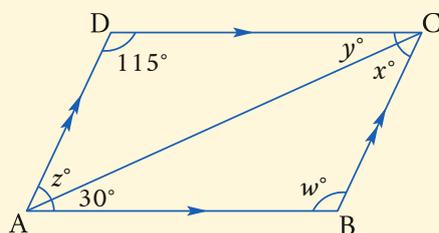
By **Theorem 1**, the opposite sides and opposite angles are equal.

Hence  $x^\circ = 120^\circ$ ,  $y^\circ = 60^\circ$ ,  $r = 15$  and  $s = 10$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x = 120$ ,  $y = 60$ ,  $r = 15$ ,  $s = 10$ .

### ? EXAMPLE B

Find  $w$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



### SOLUTION

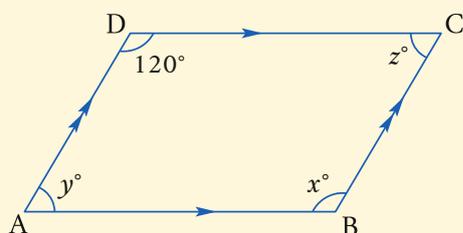
$w^\circ = 115^\circ$  since the opposite angles of a parallelogram are equal.

$x^\circ = 180^\circ - (w^\circ + 30^\circ) = 180^\circ - (115^\circ + 30^\circ) = 180^\circ - 145^\circ = 35^\circ$ , because the sum of the angles of  $\triangle ABC$  is  $180^\circ$ ,  $y^\circ = 30^\circ$  and  $z^\circ = x^\circ = 35^\circ$  because they are alternate interior angles of parallel lines.

**ANSWER:**  $w = 115$ ,  $x = z = 35$ ,  $y = 30$ .

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



**SOLUTION**

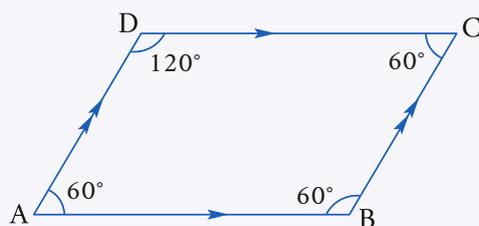
$x = 120$  and  $y = z$  because the opposite angles are equal.  $\angle A$  and  $\angle D$  are supplementary because they are interior angles on the same side of the transversal of parallel lines. (They form the letter "C". **Theorem 3**, Section 1.4)

**ANSWER:**  $x = 120$ ,  $y = z = 60$ .

In Example C,  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle B$  and  $\angle C$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$  and  $\angle D$  and  $\angle A$  are called the **successive** angles of parallelogram ABCD. Example C suggests the following theorem:

**THEOREM 2**

The successive angles of a parallelogram are supplementary.  
 In Figure 6,  $\angle A + \angle B = \angle B + \angle C = \angle C + \angle D = \angle D + \angle A = 180^\circ$ .

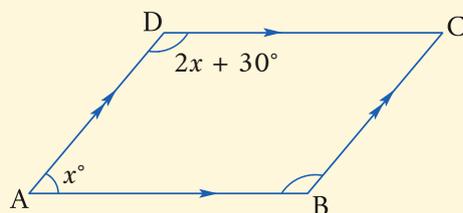


**Figure 6.** The successive angles of parallelogram ABCD are supplementary.

## Quadrilaterals

### ? EXAMPLE D

Find  $x$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$ :



#### SOLUTION

$\angle A$  and  $\angle D$  are supplementary by **Theorem 2**:

$$\begin{aligned} \angle A + \angle D &= 180^\circ \\ x + 2x + 30 &= 180 \\ 3x + 30 &= 180 \\ 3x &= 180 - 30 \\ 3x &= 150 \\ x &= 50 \end{aligned}$$

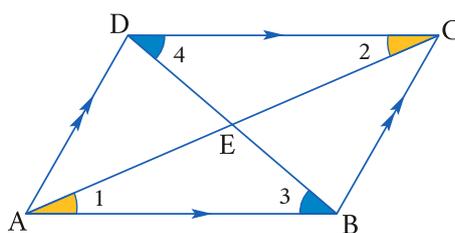
$$\begin{aligned} \angle A = x^\circ &= 50^\circ, \angle C = \angle A = 50^\circ. \\ \angle D = 2x + 30^\circ &= 2(50) + 30^\circ = 100 + 30^\circ = 130^\circ. \\ \angle B = \angle D &= 130^\circ. \end{aligned}$$

#### CHECK

$$\begin{array}{r|l} \angle A + \angle D = 180^\circ & \\ x + 2x + 30 & \\ 50 + 2(50) + 30 & \\ 50 + 130 & \\ \hline 180 & \end{array}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 50$ ,  $\angle A = 50^\circ$ ,  $\angle B = 130^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 50^\circ$ ,  $\angle D = 130^\circ$

Suppose now that both diagonals of parallelogram are drawn Figure 7:

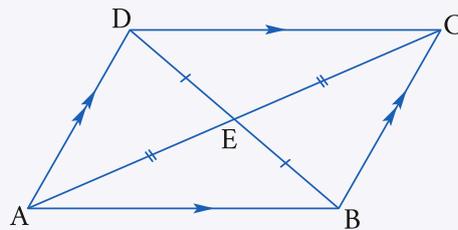


**Figure 7.** Parallelogram ABCD with diagonals AC and BD.

We have  $\angle 1 = \angle 2$  and  $\angle 3 = \angle 4$  (both pairs of angles are alternate interior angles of parallel lines AB and CD). Also  $AB = CD$  from **Theorem 1**. Therefore  $\triangle ABE \cong \triangle CDE$  by ASA = ASA. Since corresponding sides of congruent triangles are equal,  $AE = CE$  and  $DE = BE$ . We have proven:

**THEOREM 3**

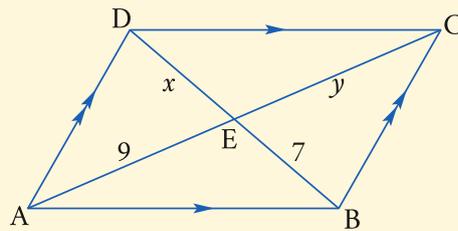
The diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other (cut each other in half).  
 In parallelogram ABCD of Figure 8,  $AE = CE$  and  $BE = DE$ .



**Figure 8.** The diagonals of parallelogram ABCD bisect each other.

**EXAMPLE E**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$ , AC and BD:



**SOLUTION**

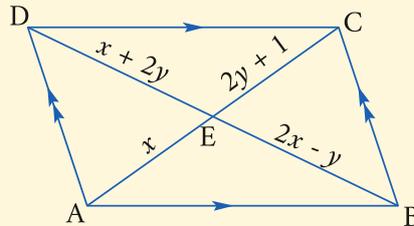
By **Theorem 3** the diagonals bisect each other,

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 7 \\ y &= 9 \\ AC &= 9 + 9 = 18 \\ BD &= 7 + 7 = 14 \end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 7$ ,  $y = 9$ ,  $AC = 18$ ,  $BD = 14$

**EXAMPLE F**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$ , AC and BD:



## Quadrilaterals

### SOLUTION

By **Theorem 3** the diagonals bisect each other.

$$\begin{array}{rcl} AE = CE & & BE = DE \\ x = 2y + 1 & & 2x - y = x + 2y \\ x - 2y = 1 & & 2x - y - x - 2y = 0 \\ & & x - 3y = 0 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{rcl} x - 2y = 1 & \xrightarrow{\quad} & x - 2y = 1 \\ x - 3y = 0 & \xrightarrow{-1} & -x + 3y = 0 \\ & & y = 1 \end{array}$$

$$x = 2y + 1 = 2(1) + 1 = 3$$

$$AC = AE + CE = 3 + 3 = 6 \qquad BD = BE + DE = 5 + 5 = 10$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 3, y = 1, AC = 6, BD = 10$ .

### CHECK

$$AE = CE$$

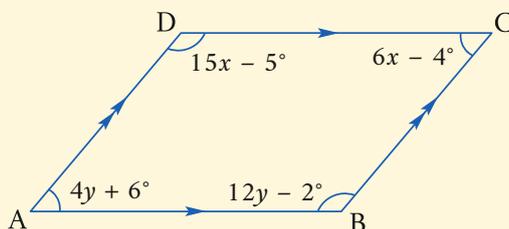
$$\begin{array}{r|l} x & 2y + 1 \\ 3 & 2(1) + 1 \\ & 3 \end{array}$$

$$BE = DE$$

$$\begin{array}{r|l} 2x - y & x + 2y \\ 2(3) - 1 & 3 + 2(1) \\ 5 & 5 \end{array}$$

### **?** EXAMPLE G

Find  $x, y, \angle A, \angle B, \angle C$  and  $\angle D$ :



### SOLUTION

By **Theorem 2**,

$$\angle A + \angle B = 180^\circ$$

$$4y + 6 + 12y - 2 = 180$$

$$16y + 4 = 180$$

$$16y = 180 - 4$$

$$16y = 176$$

$$y = 11$$

and

$$\angle C + \angle D = 180^\circ$$

$$6x - 4 + 15x - 5 = 180$$

$$21x - 9 = 180$$

$$21x = 180 + 9$$

$$21x = 189$$

$$x = 9$$

Quadrilaterals

**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{l} \angle A + \angle B = 180^\circ \\ 4y + 6 + 12y - 2 \\ 4(11) + 6 + 12(11) - 2 \\ 50^\circ + 130^\circ \\ 180^\circ \end{array} \quad \left| \right.$$

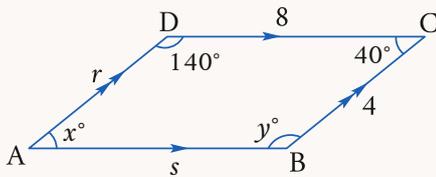
$$\begin{array}{l} \angle C + \angle D = 180^\circ \\ 6x - 4 + 15x - 5 \\ 6(9) - 4 + 15(9) - 5 \\ 50^\circ + 130^\circ \\ 180^\circ \end{array} \quad \left| \right.$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 9, y = 11, \angle A = \angle C = 50^\circ, \angle B = \angle D = 130^\circ$

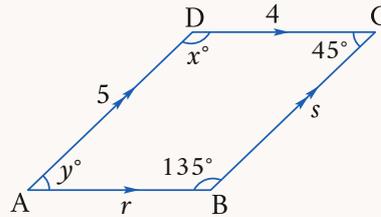
**PROBLEMS**

For each of the following state any theorem used in obtaining your answer(s):

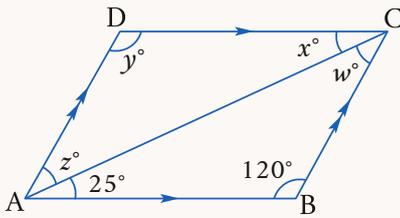
1. Find  $x, y, r$  and  $s$ :



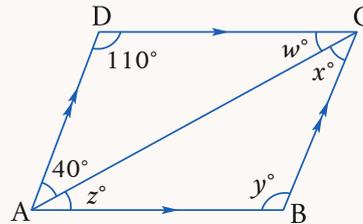
2. Find  $x, y, r$  and  $s$ :



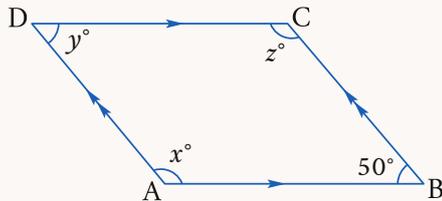
3. Find  $w, x, y$  and  $z$ :



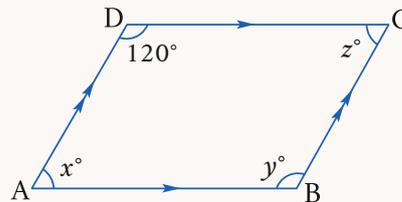
4. Find  $w, x, y$  and  $z$ :



5. Find  $x, y$  and  $z$ :

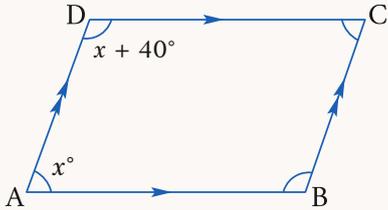


6. Find  $x, y$  and  $z$ :

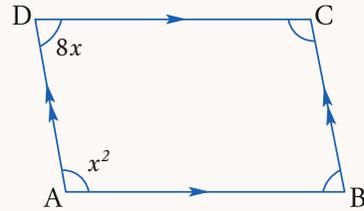


Quadrilaterals

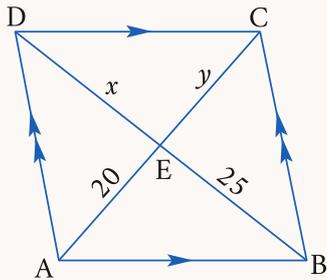
7. Find  $x$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$ :



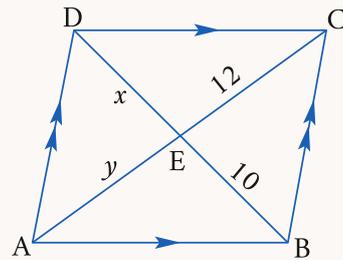
8. Find  $x$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$ :



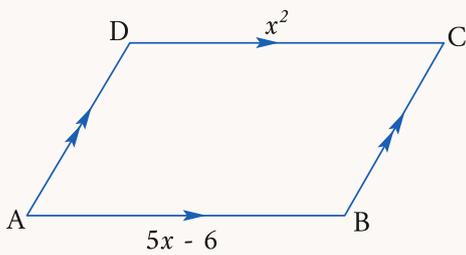
9. Find  $x$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$ :



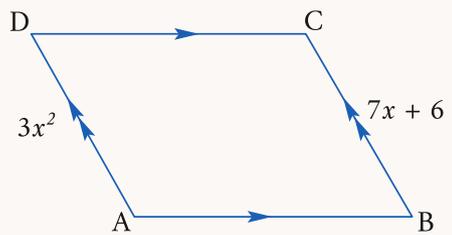
10. Find  $x$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$ :



11. Find  $x$ , AB and CD:

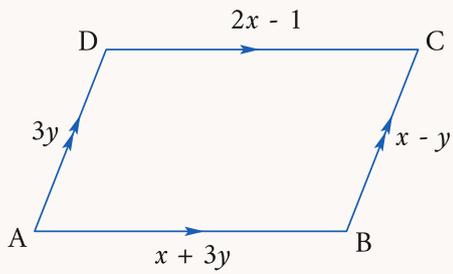


12. Find  $x$ , AD and BC:

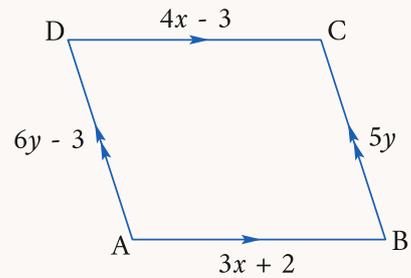


Quadrilaterals

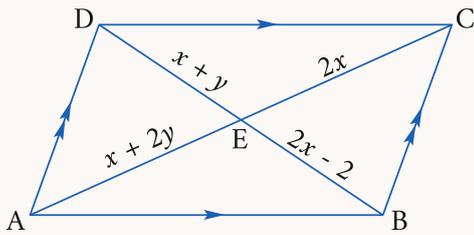
13. Find  $x$ ,  $y$ , AB, BC, CD and AD:



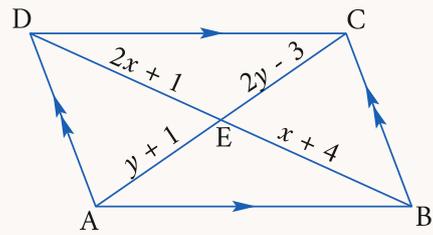
14. Find  $x$ ,  $y$ , AB, BC, CD and AD:



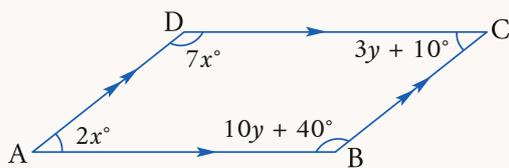
15. Find  $x$ ,  $y$ , AC and BD:



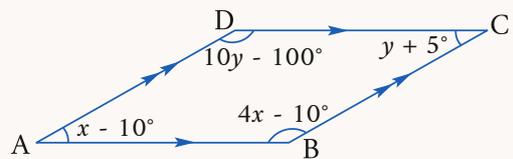
16. Find  $x$ ,  $y$ , AC and BD:



17. Find  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$ :



18. Find  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$ :



3.2 OTHER QUADRILATERALS

In this section we will consider other quadrilaterals with special properties: the rhombus, the rectangle, the square and the trapezoid.

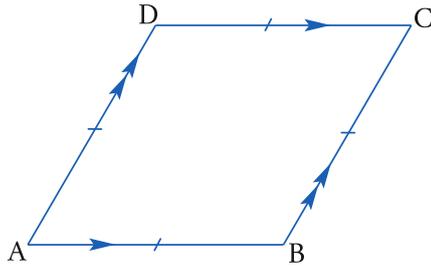


Figure 1. A rhombus.

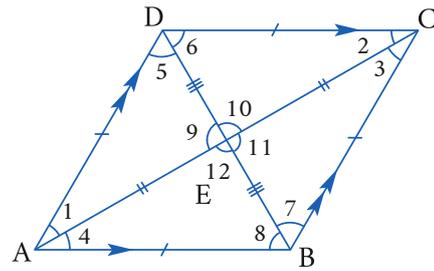


Figure 2. A rhombus with diagonals.

A **rhombus** is a parallelogram in which all sides are equal (Figure 1). It has all the properties of a parallelogram plus some additional ones as well. Let us draw the diagonals AC and BD (Figure 2). By Theorem 3 of section 3.1 the diagonals bisect each other. Hence  $\triangle ADE \cong \triangle CDE \cong \triangle CBE \cong \triangle ABE$  by SSS = SSS. The corresponding angles of the congruent triangles are equal:  $\angle 1 = \angle 2 = \angle 3 = \angle 4$ ,  $\angle 5 = \angle 6 = \angle 7 = \angle 8$  and  $\angle 9 = \angle 10 = \angle 11 = \angle 12$ .  $\angle 9$  and  $\angle 10$  are supplementary in addition to being equal, hence  $\angle 9 = \angle 10 = \angle 11 = \angle 12 = 90^\circ$ . We have proven the following theorem:

THEOREM 1

The diagonals of a rhombus are perpendicular and bisect the angles. See Figure 3.

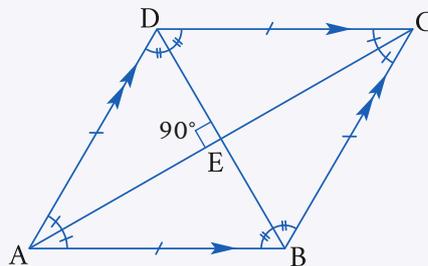
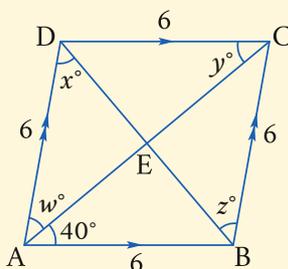


Figure 3. The diagonals of a rhombus are perpendicular and bisect the angles.

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find  $w$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



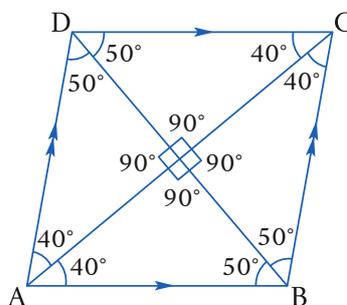
**SOLUTION**

ABCD is a rhombus since it is a parallelogram all of whose sides equal 6. According to **Theorem 1**, the diagonals are perpendicular and bisect the angles. Therefore  $w^\circ = 40^\circ$  since AC bisects  $\angle BAD$ .  $\angle AED = 90^\circ$  so  $x^\circ = 180^\circ - (90^\circ + 40^\circ) = 180^\circ - 130^\circ = 50^\circ$  (the sum of the angles of  $\triangle AED$  is  $180^\circ$ ).

Finally  $y^\circ = w^\circ = 40^\circ$  (compare with Figure 3) and  $z^\circ = x^\circ = 50^\circ$ .

**ANSWER:**  $w = 40$ ,  $x = 50$ ,  $y = 40$ ,  $z = 50$

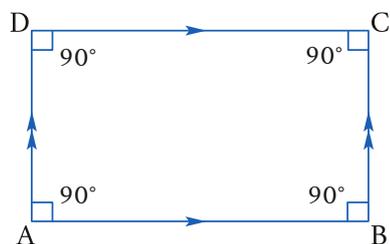
Figure 4 shows rhombus ABCD of Example A with all its angles identified.



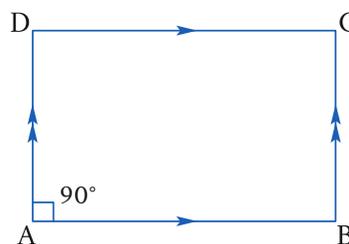
**Figure 4.** The rhombus of Example A with all angles identified.

A **rectangle** is a parallelogram in which all the angles are right angles (Figure 5). It has all the properties of a parallelogram plus some additional ones as well. It is not actually necessary to be told that all the angles are right angles:

## Quadrilaterals



**Figure 5.** A rectangle.



**Figure 6.** A parallelogram with just one right angle must also be a rectangle.

### THEOREM 2

A parallelogram with just one right angle must be a rectangle.

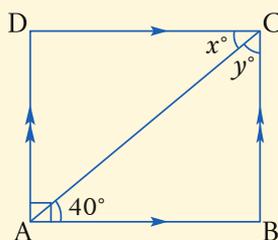
In Figure 6, if  $\angle A$  is a right angle then all the other angles must be right angles too.

#### **Proof:**

In Figure 6,  $\angle C = \angle A = 90^\circ$  because the opposite angles of a parallelogram are equal (**Theorem 1, Section 3.1**).  $\angle B = 90^\circ$  and  $\angle D = 90^\circ$  because the successive angles of a parallelogram are supplementary (**Theorem 2, Section 3.1**).

### ? EXAMPLE B

Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



### SOLUTION

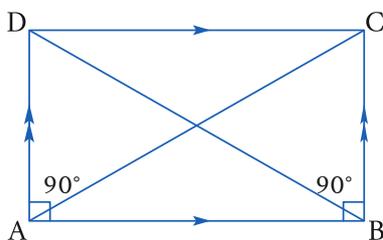
By **Theorem 2**,  $ABCD$  is a rectangle.  $x^\circ = 40^\circ$  because alternate interior angles of parallel lines  $AB$  and  $CD$  must be equal.

Since the figure is a rectangle,  $\angle BCD = 90^\circ$  and  $y^\circ = 90^\circ - x^\circ = 90^\circ - 40^\circ = 50^\circ$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x = 40$ ,  $y = 50$

## Quadrilaterals

Let us draw the diagonals of rectangle ABCD (Figure 7).



**Figure 7.** Rectangle with diagonals drawn.

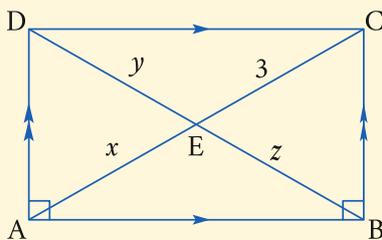
We will show  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle BAD$ .  $AB = BA$  because of identity.  $\angle A = \angle B = 90^\circ$ .  $BC = AD$  because the opposite sides of a parallelogram are equal. Then  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle BAD$  by SAS = SAS. Therefore diagonal  $AC =$  diagonal  $BD$  because they are corresponding sides of congruent triangles. We have proven:

### THEOREM 3

The diagonals of a rectangle are equal. In Figure 7,  $AC = BD$ .

### ? EXAMPLE C

Find  $w$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $z$ ,  $AC$  and  $BD$ :



### SOLUTION

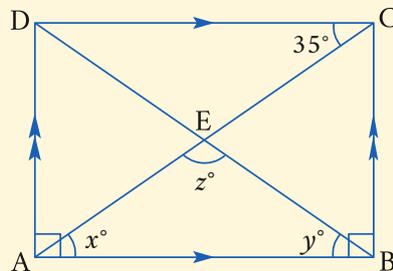
$x = 3$  because the diagonals of a parallelogram bisect each other.  
So  $AC = 3 + 3 = 6$ .  $BD = AC = 6$  since the diagonals of a rectangle are equal (Theorem 3).  
Therefore  $y = z = 3$  since diagonal  $BD$  is bisected by diagonal  $AC$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x = y = z = 3$  and  $AC = BD = 6$ .

## Quadrilaterals

### ? EXAMPLE D

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



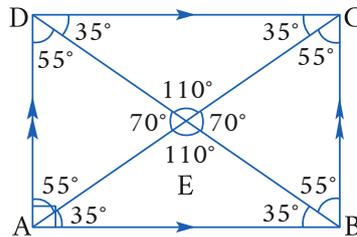
### SOLUTION

$x^\circ = 35^\circ$ , because alternate interior angles of parallel lines are equal.  $y^\circ = x^\circ = 35^\circ$  because they are base angles of isosceles triangle ABE ( $AE = BE$  because the diagonals of a rectangle are equal and bisect each other).

$$z^\circ = 180^\circ - (x^\circ + y^\circ) = 180^\circ - (35^\circ + 35^\circ) = 180^\circ - 70^\circ = 110^\circ.$$

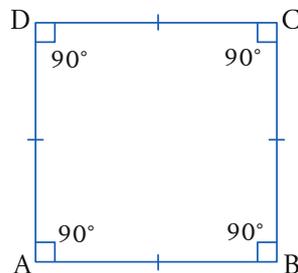
Figure 8 shows rectangle ABCD with all the angles identified.

**ANSWER:**  $x = y = 35$ ,  $z = 110$ .



**Figure 8.** The rectangle of Example D with all the angles identified.

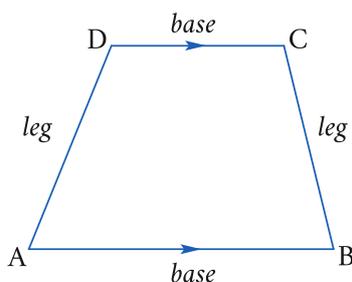
A **square** is a rectangle with all its sides equal. It is therefore also a rhombus. So it has all the properties of the rectangle and all the properties of the rhombus.



**Figure 9.** A square.

## Quadrilaterals

A **trapezoid** is a quadrilateral with two and only two sides parallel. The parallel sides are called **bases** and the other two sides are called **legs**. In Figure 10, AB and CD are the bases and AD and BC are the legs.  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  are a pair of **base angles**.  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$  are another pair of base angles.



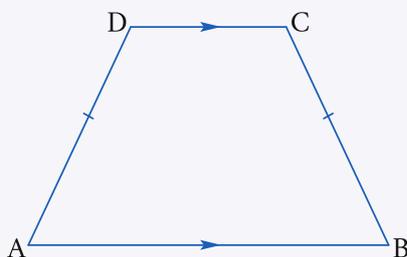
**Figure 10.** A trapezoid.

An **isosceles trapezoid** is a trapezoid in which the legs are equal. In Figure 11, ABCD is an isosceles trapezoid with  $AD = BC$ . An isosceles trapezoid has the following property:

### THEOREM 4

The base angles of an isosceles trapezoid are equal.

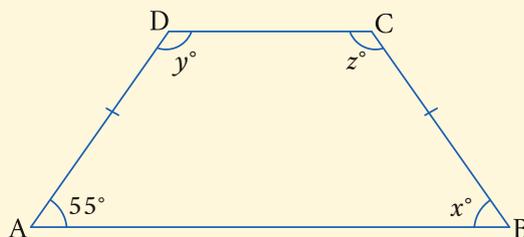
In Figure 11,  $\angle A = \angle B$  and  $\angle C = \angle D$ .



**Figure 11.** An isosceles trapezoid.

### ? EXAMPLE E

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



**SOLUTION**

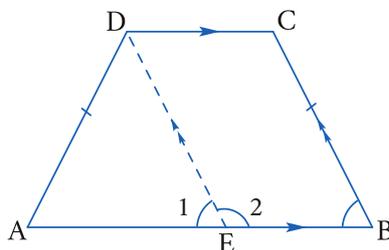
$x^\circ = 55^\circ$  because  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$ , the base angles of isosceles trapezoid ABCD, are equal. Now the interior angles of parallel lines on the same side of the transversal are supplementary (**Theorem 3, section 1.4**).

Therefore  $y^\circ = 180^\circ - x^\circ = 180^\circ - 55^\circ = 125^\circ$  and  $z^\circ = 180^\circ - 55^\circ = 125^\circ$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x = 55, y = z = 125$

**Proof of Theorem 4:**

Draw DE parallel to CB as in Figure 12.  $\angle 1 = \angle B$  because corresponding angles of parallel lines are equal.  $DE = BC$  because they are the opposite sides of parallelogram BCDE. Therefore  $AD = DE$ . So  $\triangle ADE$  is isosceles and its base angles,  $\angle A$  and  $\angle 1$  are equal.



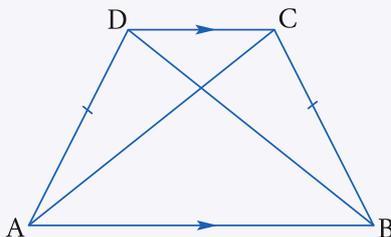
**Figure 12.** Draw DE parallel to CB.

We have proven  $A = \angle 1 = \angle B$ . To prove  $\angle C = \angle D$ , observe that they are both supplements of  $\angle A = \angle B$  (**Theorem 3, Section 1.4**).

The isosceles trapezoid has one additional property:

▶ **THEOREM 5**

The diagonals of an isosceles trapezoid are equal.  
In Figure 13,  $AC = BD$ .



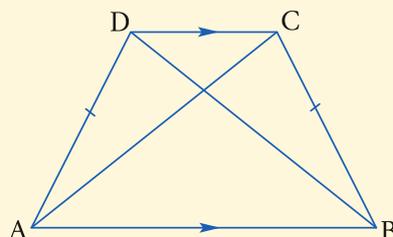
**Figure 13.** The diagonals AC and BD are equal.

**Proof:**  $BC = AD$ , given.  $\angle ABC = \angle BAD$  because they are the base angles of isosceles trapezoid ABCD (**Theorem 4**).  $AB = BA$ , identity. Therefore  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle BAD$  by SAS = SAS. So  $AC = BD$  because they are corresponding sides of the congruent triangles.

## Quadrilaterals

### ? EXAMPLE F

Find  $x$  if  $AC = \frac{2}{x}$  and  $BD = 3 - x$ :



#### SOLUTION

By **Theorem 5**,

$$\begin{aligned} AC &= BD \\ \frac{2}{x} &= 3 - x \\ (x) \frac{2}{x} &= (3 - x)(x) \\ 2 &= 3x - x^2 \\ x^2 - 3x + 2 &= 0 \\ (x - 1)(x - 2) &= 0 \\ x - 1 = 0 & \quad x - 2 = 0 \\ x = 1 & \quad \quad x = 2 \end{aligned}$$

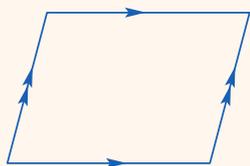
#### CHECK

	$x = 1:$	$x = 2:$
$AC = BD$	$AC = BD$	$AC = BD$
$\frac{2}{x}$	$\frac{2}{x}$	$\frac{2}{x}$
$3 - x$	$3 - x$	$3 - x$
$\frac{2}{1}$	$\frac{2}{1}$	$\frac{2}{2}$
$2$	$2$	$1$
$2$	$2$	$1$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 1$  or  $x = 2$ .

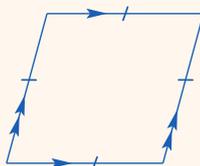


### SUMMARY



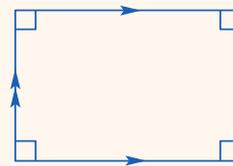
#### **The Parallelogram**

A quadrilateral in which the opposite sides are parallel.



#### **The Rhombus**

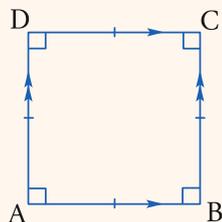
A parallelogram in which all of the sides are equal.



#### **The Rectangle**

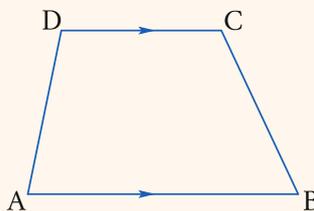
A parallelogram in which all of the angles are equal to  $90^\circ$ .

## Quadrilaterals



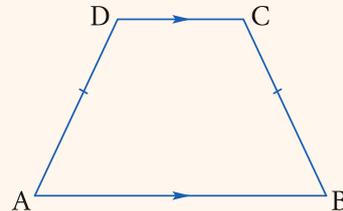
**The Square**

A parallelogram which is both a rhombus and a rectangle.



**The Trapezoid**

A quadrilateral with just one pair of parallel sides.



**The Isosceles Trapezoid**

A trapezoid in which the non-parallel sides are equal.

### PROPERTIES OF QUADRILATERALS

	Opposite sides are parallel	Opposite sides are equal	Opposite angles are equal	Diagonals bisect each other	Diagonals are equal	Diagonals are perpendicular	Diagonals bisect the angles	All sides are equal	All angles are equal
<b>Parallelogram</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Rhombus</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	Yes	Yes	Yes	-
<b>Rectangle</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	-	-	-	Yes
<b>Square</b>	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
<b>Trapezoid</b>	*	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
<b>Isosceles Trapezoid</b>	*	*	-	-	Yes	-	-	-	-

\*One pair only.

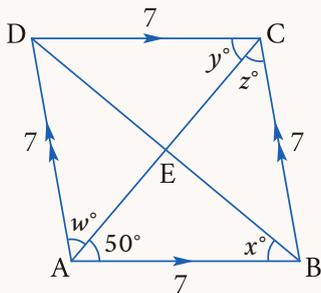
Congruent Triangles



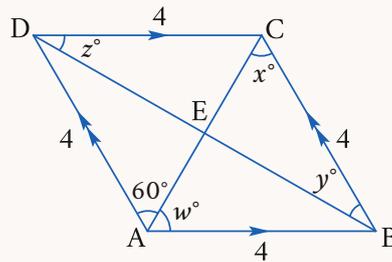
PROBLEMS

For each of the following state any theorems used in obtaining your answer.

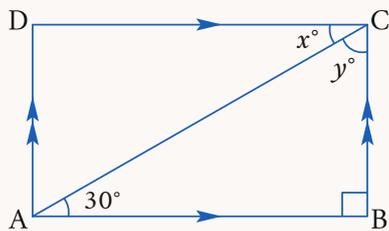
1. Find  $w$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



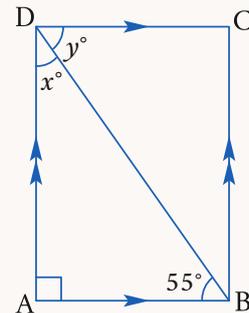
2. Find  $w$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



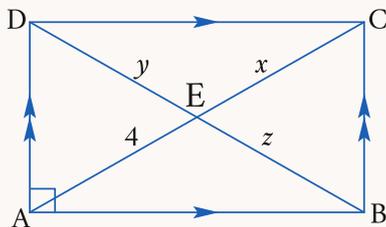
3. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



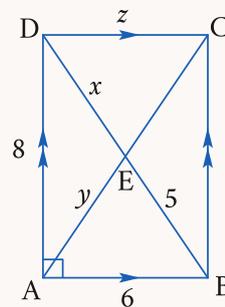
4. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



5. Find  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $z$ ,  $AC$  and  $BD$ :

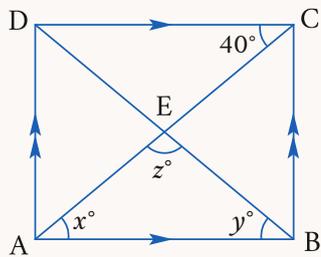


6. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :

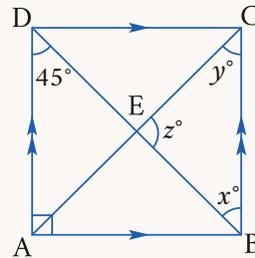


Quadrilaterals

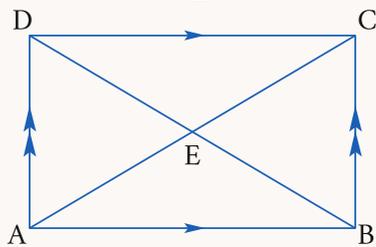
7. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



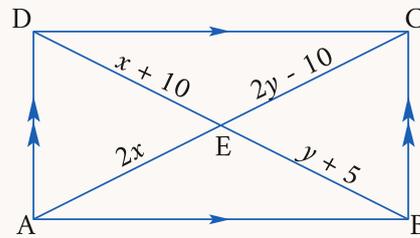
8. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



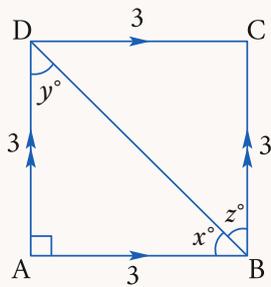
9. Find  $x$  if  $AC = \frac{3}{x}$  and  $BD = 4x - 1$ :



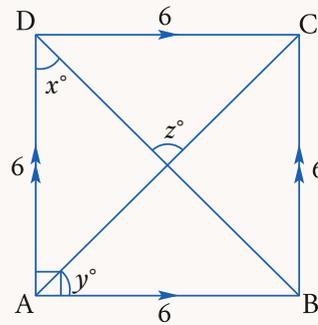
10. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



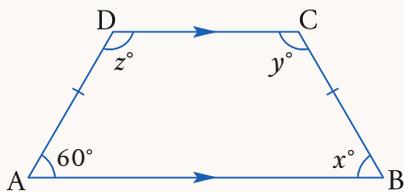
11. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



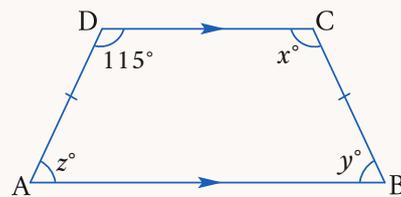
12. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



13. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :

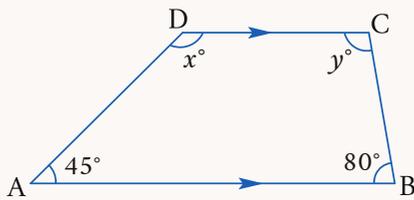


14. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :

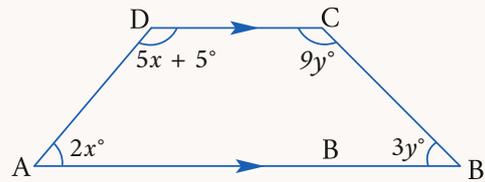


Quadrilaterals

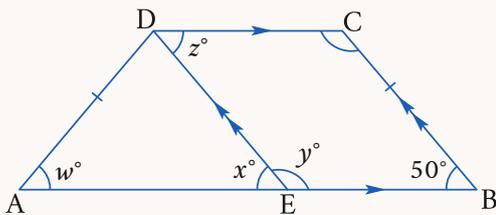
15. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



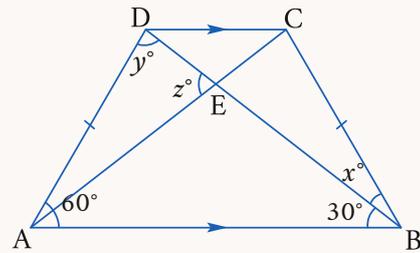
16. Find  $x$ ,  $y$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $\angle C$  and  $\angle D$ :



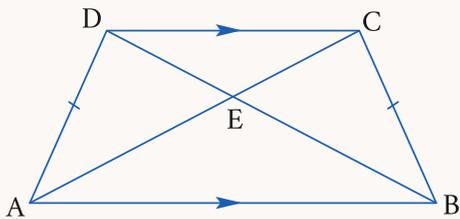
17. Find  $w$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



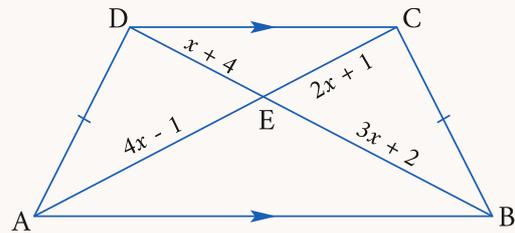
18. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



19. Find  $x$  if  $AC = x^2 - 13$  and  $BD = 2x + 2$ .



20. Find  $x$ ,  $AC$  and  $BD$ .



## SIMILAR TRIANGLES

## 4.1 PROPORTIONS

In our discussion of similar triangles the idea of a proportion will play an important role. In this section we will review the important properties of proportions.

A **proportion** is an equation which states that two fractions are equal. For example  $\frac{2}{6} = \frac{4}{12}$  is a proportion. We sometimes say "2 is to 6 as 4 is to 12."

This is also written  $2 : 6 = 4 : 12$ . The **extremes** of this proportion are the numbers 2 and 12 and the **means** are the numbers 6 and 4. Notice that the product of the means  $6 \times 4 = 24$  is the same as the product of the extremes  $2 \times 12 = 24$ .

## THEOREM 1

If  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$  then  $ad = bc$ . Conversely, if  $ad = bc$  then  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ .

(The product of the means is equal to the product of the extremes).

**Examples**

$\frac{2}{6} = \frac{4}{12}$  and  $2 \times 12 = 6 \times 4$  are both true.

$\frac{2}{3} = \frac{6}{9}$  and  $2 \times 9 = 3 \times 6$  are both true.

$\frac{1}{4} = \frac{4}{12}$  and  $1 \times 12 = 4 \times 4$  are both false.

**Proof of Theorem 1 :**

If  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ , multiply both sides of the equation by  $bd$ :

$$\frac{a}{\cancel{b}} (\cancel{b}d) = \frac{c}{\cancel{d}} (b\cancel{d})$$

## Similar Triangles

We obtain  $ad = bc$ .

Conversely, if  $ad = bc$ , divide both sides of the equation by  $bd$ :

$$\frac{ad}{bd} = \frac{bc}{bd}$$

The result is  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$ .

The following theorem shows that we can interchange the means or the extremes or both of them simultaneously and still have a valid proportion:

### THEOREM 2

If one of the following is true then they are all true:

(1)  $\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$

(2)  $\frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{d}$

(3)  $\frac{d}{b} = \frac{c}{a}$

(4)  $\frac{d}{c} = \frac{b}{a}$

#### **Proof :**

If any of these proportions is true then  $ad = bc$  by **Theorem 1**. The remaining proportions can be obtained from  $ad = bc$  by division, as in **Theorem 1**.

Example :

$$\frac{2}{6} = \frac{4}{12}, \frac{2}{4} = \frac{6}{12}, \frac{12}{6} = \frac{4}{2}, \frac{12}{4} = \frac{6}{2} \text{ are all true because } 2 \times 12 = 6 \times 4.$$

## Similar Triangles

The process of converting a proportion  $\frac{2}{6} = \frac{4}{12}$  to the equivalent equation  $2 \times 12 = 6 \times 4$  is sometimes called **cross multiplication**.

The idea is conveyed by the following notation:

$$\frac{2}{6} \begin{array}{c} \nearrow \\ \searrow \end{array} \frac{4}{12}$$

### ? EXAMPLE A

Find x:

$$\frac{3}{x} = \frac{4}{20}$$

#### SOLUTION

By "cross multiplication"

$$3(20) = 4x$$

$$60 = 4x$$

$$15 = x$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 15$ .

#### CHECK

$$\frac{3}{x} = \frac{3}{15} = \frac{1}{5}$$

$$\frac{4}{20} = \frac{1}{5}$$

### ? EXAMPLE B

Find x:

$$\frac{x-1}{x-3} = \frac{2x+2}{x+1}$$

#### SOLUTION

$$(x-1)(x+1) = (x-3)(2x+2)$$

$$x^2 - 1 = 2x^2 - 4x - 6$$

$$0 = x^2 - 4x - 5$$

$$0 = (x-5)(x+1)$$

$$0 = x - 5 \quad 0 = x + 1$$

$$5 = x \quad -1 = x$$

Since  $\frac{0}{0}$  is undefined, we reject the answer  $x = -1$ .

#### CHECK

$x = 5$ :

$$\frac{x-1}{x-3} = \frac{5-1}{5-3} = \frac{4}{2} = 2$$

$$\frac{2x+2}{x+1} = \frac{2(5)+2}{5+1} = \frac{12}{6} = 2$$

$x = -1$ :

$$\frac{x-1}{x-3} = \frac{-1-1}{-1-3} = \frac{-2}{-4} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\frac{2x+2}{x+1} = \frac{2(-1)+2}{-1+1} = \frac{0}{0}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 5$ .

## Similar Triangles



### PROBLEMS

1 - 12. Find x:

1.  $\frac{6}{x} = \frac{18}{3}$

2.  $\frac{4}{x} = \frac{2}{6}$

3.  $\frac{x}{4} = \frac{9}{3}$

4.  $\frac{x}{8} = \frac{9}{6}$

5.  $\frac{7}{1} = \frac{x}{3}$

6.  $\frac{10}{2} = \frac{25}{x}$

7.  $\frac{x+5}{x} = \frac{5}{4}$

8.  $\frac{x-6}{4} = \frac{5}{10}$

9.  $\frac{3+x}{x} = \frac{3}{2}$

10.  $\frac{x}{x+3} = \frac{4}{x}$

11.  $\frac{3x-3}{2x+6} = \frac{x-1}{x}$

12.  $\frac{3x-6}{x-2} = \frac{2x+2}{x-1}$

4.2 SIMILAR TRIANGLES

Two triangles are said to be **similar** if they have equal sets of angles. In Figure 1,  $\triangle ABC$  is similar to  $\triangle DEF$ . The angles which are equal are called **corresponding angles**. In Figure 1,  $\angle A$  corresponds to  $\angle D$ ,  $\angle B$  corresponds to  $\angle E$  and  $\angle C$  corresponds to  $\angle F$ . The sides joining corresponding vertices are called **corresponding sides**. In Figure 1,  $AB$  corresponds to  $DE$ ,  $BC$  corresponds to  $EF$ , and  $AC$  corresponds to  $DF$ . The symbol for similar is  $\sim$ . The **similarity statement**  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$  will always be written so that corresponding vertices appear in the same order.

For the triangles in Figure 1, we could also write  $\triangle BAC \sim \triangle EDF$  or  $\triangle ACB \sim \triangle DFE$  but **never**  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle EDF$  nor  $\triangle ACB \sim \triangle DEF$ .

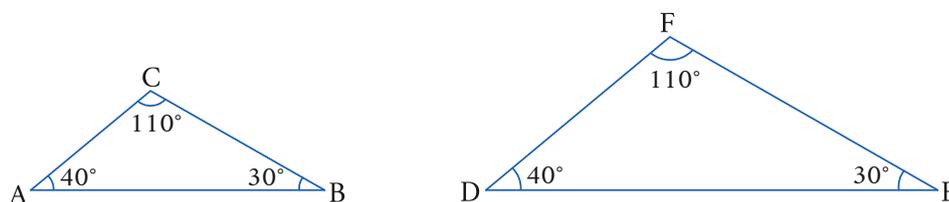
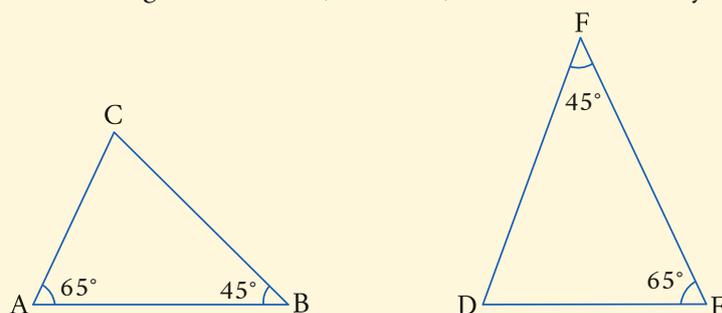


Figure 1.  $\triangle ABC$  is similar to  $\triangle DEF$ .

We can tell which sides correspond from the similarity statement. For example, if  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$ , then side  $AB$  corresponds to side  $DE$  because both are the first two letters.  $BC$  corresponds to  $EF$  because both are the last two letters,  $AC$  corresponds to  $DF$  because both consist of the first and last letters.

? EXAMPLE A

Determine if the triangles are similar, and if so, write the similarity statement:



**SOLUTION**

$$\angle C = 180^\circ - (65^\circ + 45^\circ) = 180^\circ - 110^\circ = 70^\circ.$$

$$\angle D = 180^\circ - (65^\circ + 45^\circ) = 180^\circ - 110^\circ = 70^\circ.$$

Therefore both triangles have the same angles and  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle EFD$ .

**ANSWER:**  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle EFD$

## Similar Triangles

Example A suggests that to prove similarity it is only necessary to know that **two** of the corresponding angles are equal:

### THEOREM 1

Two triangles are similar if two angles of one equal two angles of the other (AA = AA). In Figure 2,  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$  because  $\angle A = \angle D$  and  $\angle B = \angle E$ .

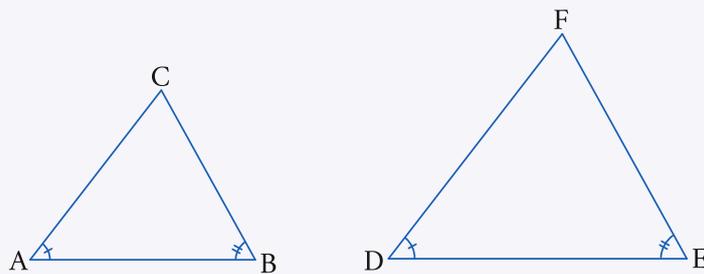


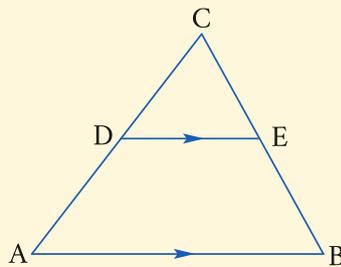
Figure 2.  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$  because AA = AA.

**Proof:**

$$\angle C = 180^\circ - (\angle A + \angle B) = 180^\circ - (\angle D + \angle E) = \angle F.$$

### ? EXAMPLE B

Determine which triangles are similar and write a similarity statement:



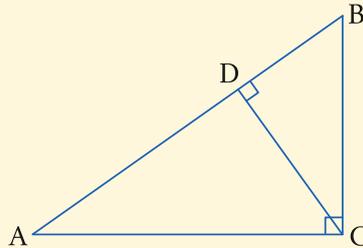
### SOLUTION

$\angle A = \angle CDE$  because they are corresponding angles of parallel lines.  $\angle C = \angle C$  because of identity. Therefore  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEC$  by AA = AA.

**ANSWER :**  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEC$ .

**? EXAMPLE C**

Determine which triangles are similar and write a similarity statement:



**SOLUTION**

$\angle A = \angle A$  identity.  $\angle ACB = \angle ADC = 90^\circ$ . Therefore

$$\triangle ABC \sim \triangle ACD$$

$\underbrace{\hspace{10em}}_{90^\circ}$

Also  $\angle B = \angle B$  identity.  $\angle BDC = \angle BCA = 90^\circ$ . Therefore

$$\triangle ABC \sim \triangle CBD$$

$\underbrace{\hspace{10em}}_{90^\circ}$

**ANSWER:**  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle ACD \sim \triangle CBD$

Similar triangles are important because of the following theorem:

**THEOREM 2**

The corresponding sides of similar triangles are proportional.  
This means that if  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$  then

$$\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{AC}{DF}$$

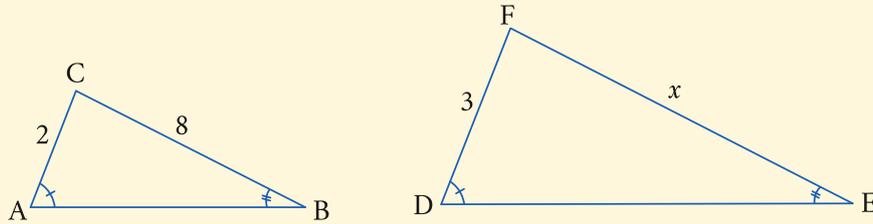
That is, the first two letters of  $\triangle ABC$  are to the first two letters of  $\triangle DEF$  as the last two letters of  $\triangle ABC$  are to the last two letters of  $\triangle DEF$  as the first and last letters of  $\triangle ABC$  are to the first and last letters of  $\triangle DEF$ .

Before attempting to prove **Theorem 2**, we will give several examples of how it is used:

Similar Triangles

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find  $x$ :



**SOLUTION**

$\angle A = \angle D$  and  $\angle B = \angle E$  so  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$ . By **Theorem 2**

$$\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{AC}{DF}$$

We will ignore  $\frac{AB}{DE}$  here since we do not know and do not have to find either  $AB$  or  $DE$ .

$$\frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{AC}{DF}$$

$$\frac{8}{x} = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$24 = 2x$$

$$12 = x$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 12$

**CHECK**

$$\frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{AC}{DF}$$

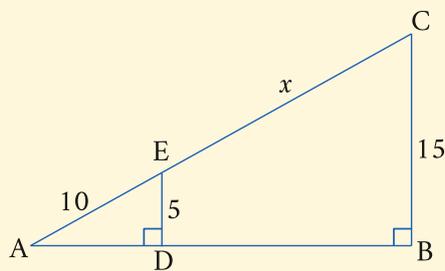
$$\frac{8}{x} = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$\frac{8}{12} = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$\frac{2}{3} = \frac{2}{3}$$

**? EXAMPLE E**

Find  $x$ :



## Similar Triangles

### SOLUTION

$\angle A = \angle A$  and  $\angle ADE = \angle ABC$ , so  $\triangle ADE \sim \triangle ABC$  by AA = AA.

$$\frac{AD}{AB} = \frac{DE}{BC} = \frac{AE}{AC}$$

We ignore  $\frac{AD}{AB}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{DE}{BC} &= \frac{AE}{AC} \\ \frac{5}{15} &= \frac{10}{10 + x} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} 5(10 + x) &= 15(10) \\ 50 + 5x &= 150 \\ 5x &= 150 - 50 \\ 5x &= 100 \\ x &= 20 \end{aligned}$$

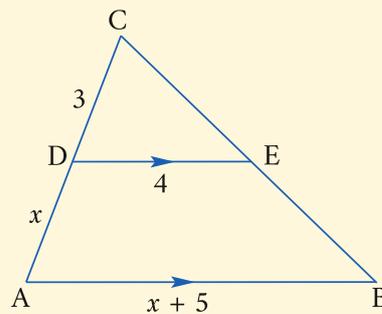
**ANSWER:**  $x = 20$

### CHECK

$$\begin{array}{r|l} \frac{DE}{BC} = \frac{AE}{AC} & \\ \frac{5}{15} & \frac{10}{10 + x} \\ \frac{1}{3} & \frac{10}{10 + 20} \\ & \frac{10}{30} \\ & \frac{1}{3} \end{array}$$

### **?** EXAMPLE F

Find  $x$ :



### SOLUTION

$\angle A = \angle CDE$  because they are corresponding angles of parallel lines.  $\angle C = \angle C$  because of identity. Therefore  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEC$  by AA = AA.

$$\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{BC}{EC} = \frac{AC}{DC}$$

## Similar Triangles

We ignore  $\frac{BC}{EC}$  :

$$\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AC}{DC}$$

$$\frac{x + 5}{4} = \frac{x + 3}{3}$$

$$(x + 5)(3) = 4(x + 3)$$

$$3x + 15 = 4x + 12$$

$$15 - 12 = 4x - 3x$$

$$3 = x$$

### CHECK

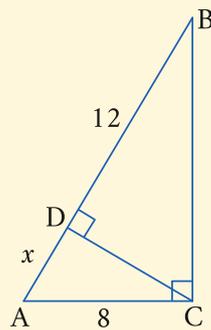
$$\frac{AB}{DE} = \frac{AC}{DC}$$

$\frac{x + 5}{4}$	$\frac{x + 3}{3}$
$\frac{3 + 5}{4}$	$\frac{3 + 3}{3}$
$\frac{8}{4}$	$\frac{6}{3}$
2	2

**ANSWER:**  $x = 3$

### ? EXAMPLE G

Find  $x$  :



### SOLUTION

$\angle A = \angle A$ ,  $\angle ACB = \angle ADC = 90^\circ$ ,  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle ACD$ .

$$\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AC}{AD}$$

$$\frac{x + 12}{8} = \frac{8}{x}$$

$$(x + 12)(x) = (8)(8)$$

$$x^2 + 12x = 64$$

$$x^2 + 12x - 64 = 0$$

$$(x - 4)(x + 16) = 0$$

$x = 4$ ,  $x = -16$  We reject the answer  $x = -16$   
because  $AD = x$  cannot be negative.

**ANSWER:**  $x = 4$

### CHECK

$$x = 4$$

$$\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AC}{AD}$$

$$\frac{x + 12}{8} = \frac{8}{x}$$

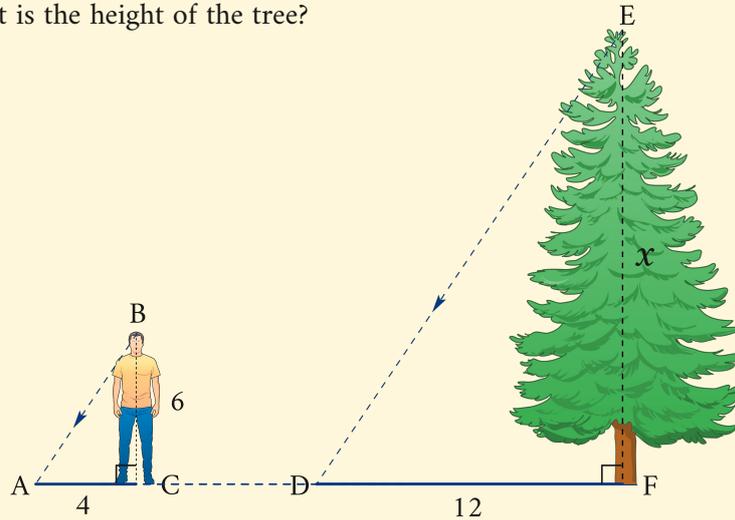
$$\frac{4 + 12}{8} = \frac{8}{4}$$

$$\frac{16}{8} = 2$$

$$2 = 2$$

**? EXAMPLE H**

A tree casts a shadow 12 feet long at the same time a 6 foot man casts a shadow 4 feet long. What is the height of the tree?



**SOLUTION**

In the diagram  $AB$  and  $DE$  are parallel rays of the sun. Therefore  $\angle A = \angle D$  because they are corresponding angles of parallel lines with respect to the transversal  $AF$ .

Since also  $\angle C = \angle F = 90^\circ$ , we have  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$  by  $AA = AA$ .

$$\frac{AC}{DF} = \frac{BC}{EF}$$

$$\frac{4}{12} = \frac{6}{x}$$

$$4x = 72$$

$$x = 18$$

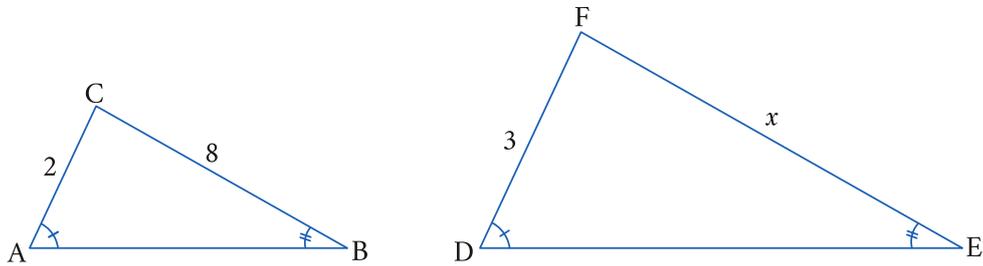
**ANSWER:**  $x = 18$  feet

**Proof of Theorem 2 (The corresponding sides of similar triangles are proportional):**

We illustrate the proof using the triangles of Example D (Figure 3). The proof for other similar triangles follows the same pattern.

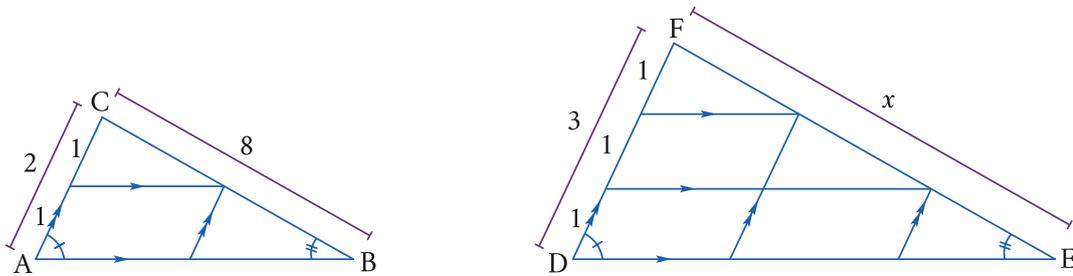
Here we will prove that  $x = 12$  so that  $\frac{2}{3} = \frac{8}{x}$ .

Similar Triangles



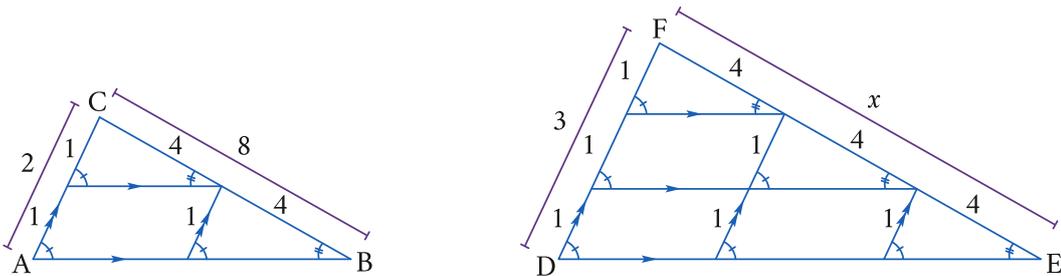
**Figure 3.** The triangles of Example D.

First draw lines parallel to the sides of  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DEF$  as shown in Figure 4. The corresponding angles of these parallel lines are equal and each of the parallelograms with a side equal to 1 has its opposite side equal to 1 as well. Therefore all of the small triangles with a side equal to 1 are congruent by  $AAS = AAS$ .

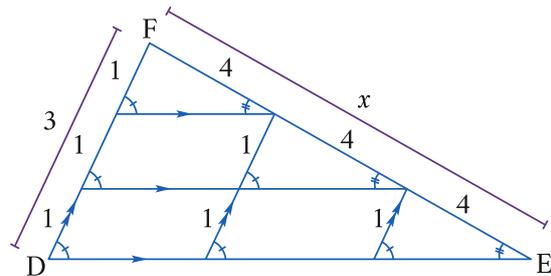


**Figure 4.** Draw lines parallel to the sides of  $\triangle ABC$  and  $\triangle DEF$ .

The corresponding sides of these triangles form side  $BC = 8$  of  $\triangle ABC$  (see Figure 5). Therefore each of these sides must equal 4 and  $x = EF = 4 + 4 + 4 = 12$  (Figure 6).



**Figure 5.** The small triangles are congruent hence the corresponding sides lying on  $BC$  must each be equal to 4.



**Figure 6.** The small triangles of  $\triangle DEF$  are congruent to the small triangles of  $\triangle ABC$  hence  $x = EF = 4 + 4 + 4 = 12$ .

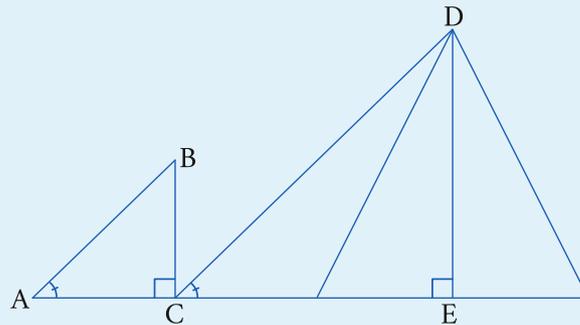
**Note to instructor:**

*This proof can be carried out whenever the lengths of the sides of the triangles are rational numbers. However, since irrational numbers can be approximated as closely as necessary by rationals, the proof extends to that case as well.*



**HISTORICAL NOTE**

Thales (c. 600 B.C.) used the proportionality of sides of similar triangles to measure the heights of the pyramids in Egypt. His method was much like the one we used in Example H to measure the height of trees.



**Figure 7.** Using similar triangles to measure the height of a pyramid.

In Figure 7, DE represent the height of the pyramid and CE is the length of its shadow. BC represents a vertical stick and AC is the length of its shadow. We have  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle CDE$ . Thales was able to measure directly the lengths AC, BC and CE. Substituting these values in the proportion  $\frac{BC}{DE} = \frac{AC}{CE}$ , he was able to find the height DE.

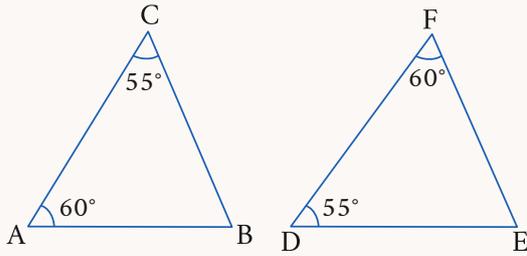
Similar Triangles



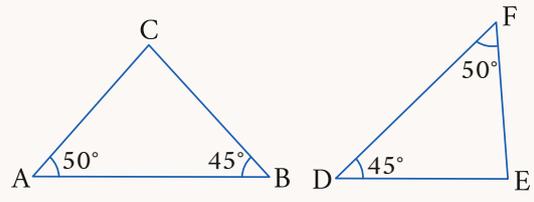
PROBLEMS

1 - 6. Determine which triangles are similar and write the similarity statement:

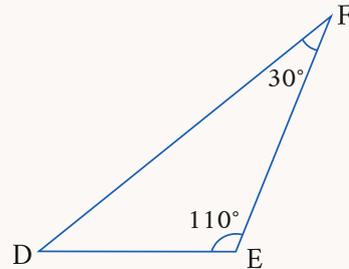
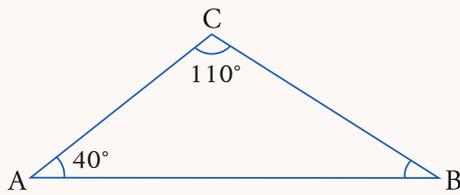
1.



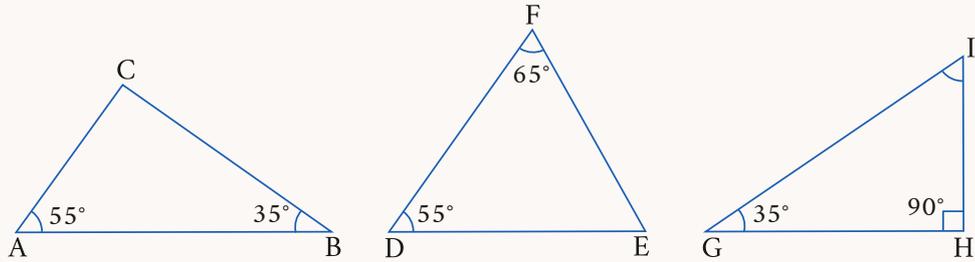
2.



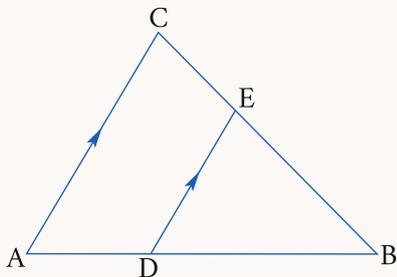
3.



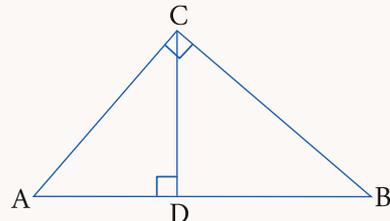
4.



5.



6.

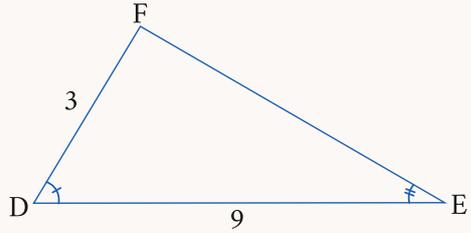
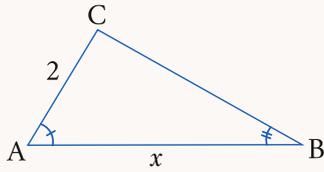


### Similar Triangles

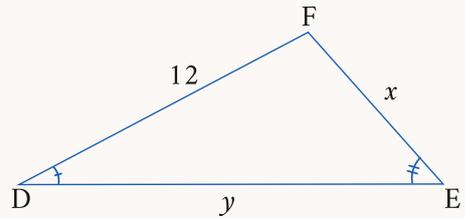
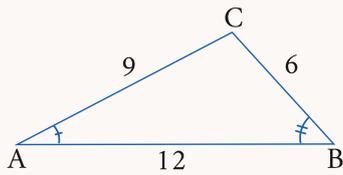
7 - 22. For each of the following

1. write the similarity statement
2. write the proportion between the corresponding sides,
3. solve for  $x$  or  $x$  and  $y$ .

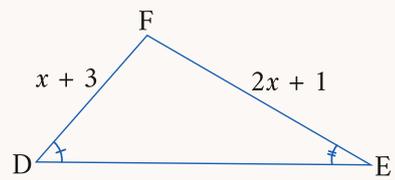
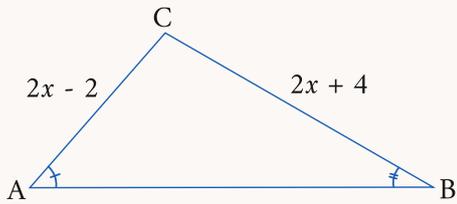
7.



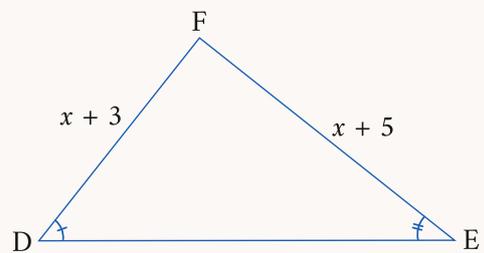
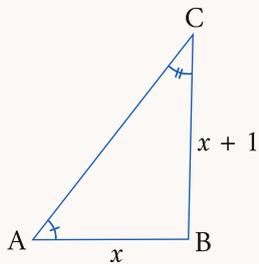
8.



9.

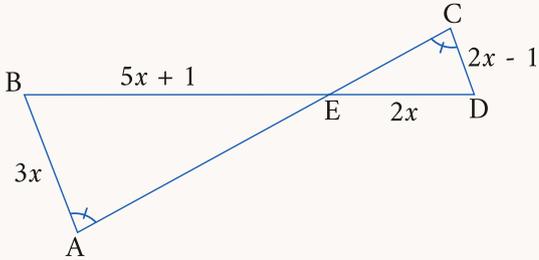


10.

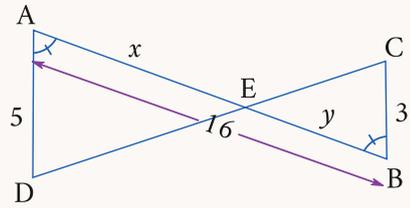


Similar Triangles

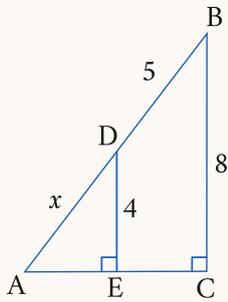
11.



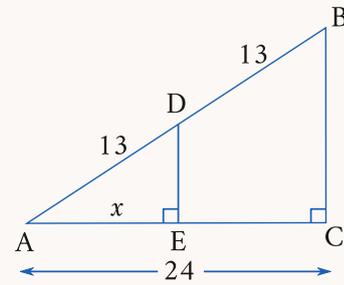
12.



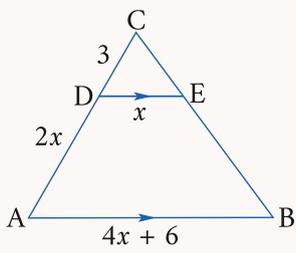
13.



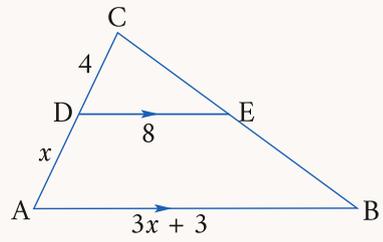
14.



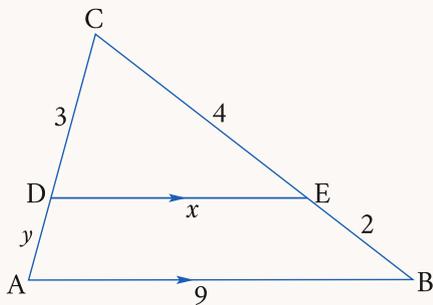
15.



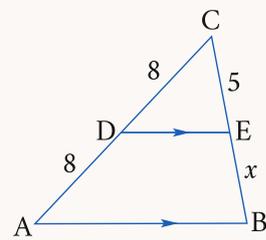
16.



17.

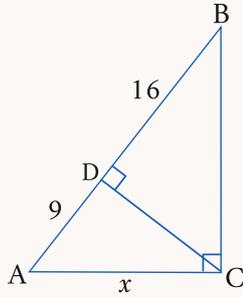


18.

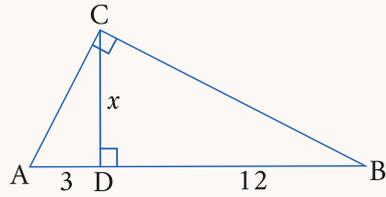


Similar Triangles

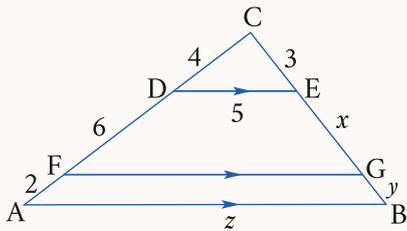
19.



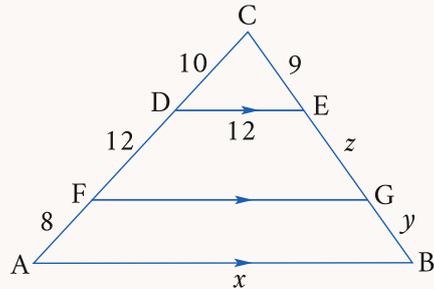
20.



21.

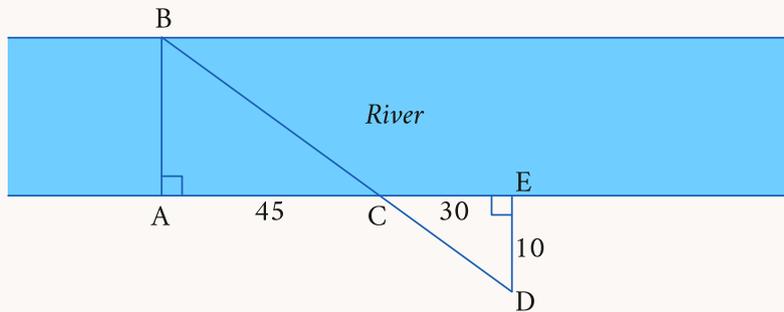


22.



23. A flagpole casts a shadow 80 feet long at the same time a 5 foot boy casts a shadow 4 feet long. How tall is the flagpole?

24. Find the width  $AB$  of the river:



4.3 TRANSVERSALS TO THREE PARALLEL LINES

In Chapter 1 we defined a transversal to be a line which intersects two other lines. We will now extend the definition to a line which intersects **three** other lines. In Figure 1, AB is a transversal to three lines.

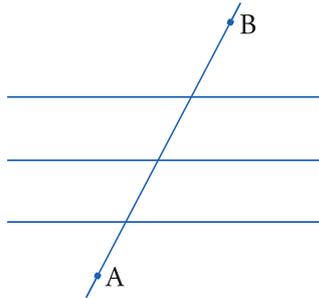


Figure 1. AB is a transversal to three lines.

If the three lines are parallel and we have two such transversals we may state the following theorem:

THEOREM 1

The line segments formed by two transversals crossing three parallel lines are proportional. In Figure 2,

$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$$

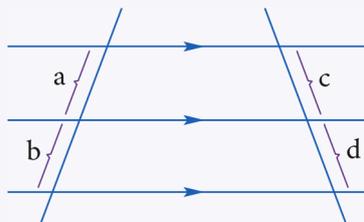
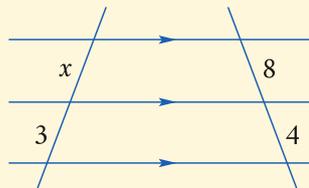


Figure 2. The line segments formed by the transversals are proportional.

EXAMPLE A

Find x :



Similar Triangles

**SOLUTION**

$$\frac{x}{3} = \frac{8}{4}$$

$$4x = 24$$

$$x = 6$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 6$

**CHECK**

$$\frac{x}{3} = \frac{8}{4}$$

$$\frac{6}{3} \quad | \quad 2$$

$$2 \quad |$$

**Proof of Theorem 1:**

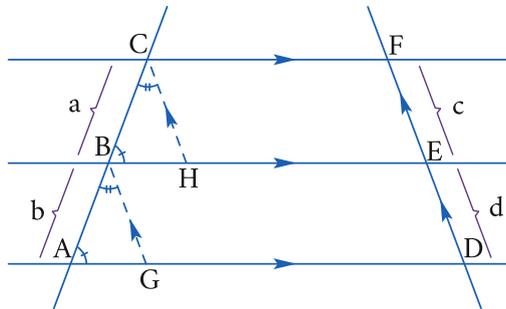
Draw GB and HC parallel to DF (Figure 3). The corresponding angles of the parallel lines are equal and so  $\triangle BCH \sim \triangle ABG$ .

Therefore:

$$\frac{BC}{AB} = \frac{CH}{BG}$$

Now  $CH = FE = c$  and  $BG = ED = d$  because they are the opposite sides of a parallelogram. Substituting, we obtain

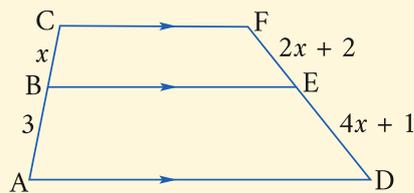
$$\frac{a}{b} = \frac{c}{d}$$



**Figure 3.** Draw GB and HC parallel to DF.

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$  :



## Similar Triangles

### SOLUTION

$$\frac{x}{3} = \frac{2x + 2}{4x + 1}$$

$$x(4x + 1) = (3)(2x + 2)$$

$$4x^2 + x = 6x + 6$$

$$4x^2 - 5x - 6 = 0$$

$$(x - 2)(4x + 3) = 0$$

$$x - 2 = 0 \text{ or } 4x + 3 = 0$$

$$x = 2 \qquad 4x = -3$$

$$x = -\frac{3}{4}$$

We reject  $x = -\frac{3}{4}$  because  $BC = x$  cannot be negative.

**ANSWER:**  $x = 2$

### CHECK

$$\frac{x}{3} = \frac{2x + 2}{4x + 1}$$

$$\frac{2}{3} \quad \left| \quad \frac{2(2) + 2}{4(2) + 1}$$

$$\frac{4 + 2}{8 + 1}$$

$$\frac{6}{9}$$

$$\frac{2}{3}$$

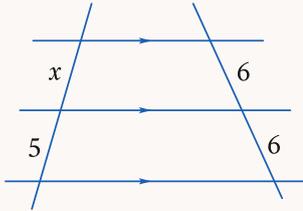
Similar Triangles



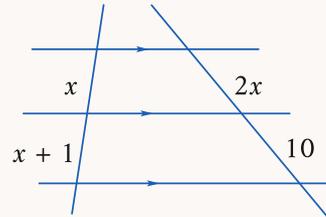
PROBLEMS

1 - 6. Find  $x$ :

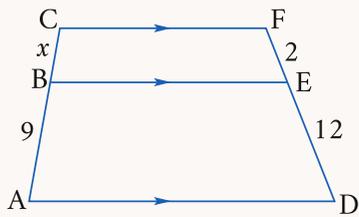
1.



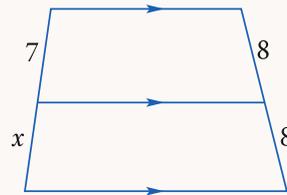
2.



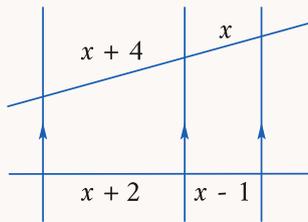
3.



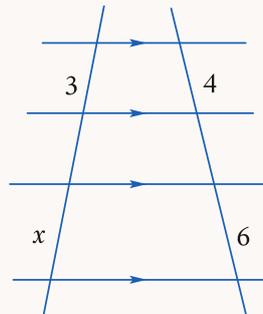
4.



5.



6.



4.4 PYTHAGOREAN THEOREM

In a right triangle, the sides of the right angle are called the **legs** of the triangle and the remaining side is called the **hypotenuse**.

In Figure 1, side AC and BC are the legs and side AB is the hypotenuse.

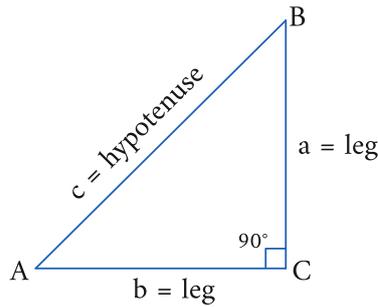


Figure 1. A right triangle.

The following is one of the most famous theorems in mathematics:

THEOREM 1 (PYTHAGOREAN THEOREM)

In a right triangle, the square of the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares of the legs. That is,

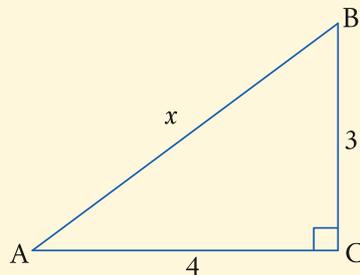
$$\text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 = \text{hypotenuse}^2$$

In Figure 1,  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ .

Before we prove **Theorem 1**, we will give several examples.

? EXAMPLE A

Find  $x$  :



Similar Triangles

**SOLUTION**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 3^2 + 4^2 &= x^2 \\ 9 + 16 &= x^2 \\ 25 &= x^2 \\ 5 &= x \end{aligned}$$

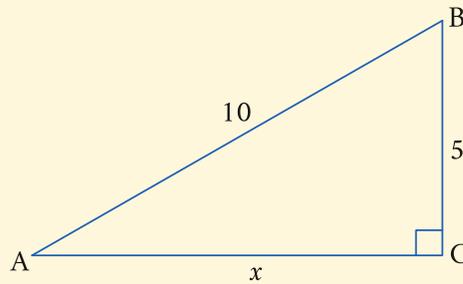
**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 3^2 + 4^2 &| x^2 \\ 9 + 16 &| 5^2 \\ 25 &| 25 \end{array}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 5$

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$  :



**SOLUTION**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 5^2 + x^2 &= 10^2 \\ 25 + x^2 &= 100 \\ x^2 &= 75 \\ x &= \sqrt{75} = \sqrt{25 \cdot 3} = 5\sqrt{3} \end{aligned}$$

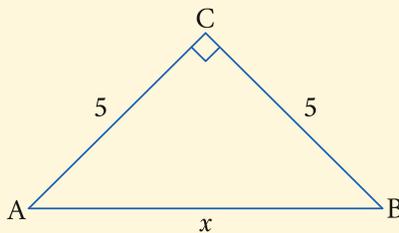
**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 5^2 + x^2 &| 10^2 \\ 25 + (5\sqrt{3})^2 &| 100 \\ 25 + 25\sqrt{9} & \\ 25 + 25(3) & \\ 25 + 75 & \\ 100 & \end{array}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 5\sqrt{3}$ .

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find  $x$  :



Similar Triangles

**SOLUTION**

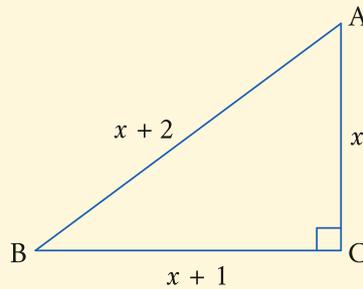
$$\begin{aligned} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 5^2 + 5^2 &= x^2 \\ 25 + 25 &= x^2 \\ 50 &= x^2 \\ x &= \sqrt{50} = \sqrt{25 \cdot 2} = 5\sqrt{2} \end{aligned}$$

**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{l|l} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 5^2 + 5^2 &| \quad x^2 \\ 25 + 25 &| \quad (5\sqrt{2})^2 \\ 50 &| \quad 25\sqrt{4} \\ &| \quad 25(2) \\ &| \quad 50 \end{array}$$

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find x :



**SOLUTION**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ x^2 + (x + 1)^2 &= (x + 2)^2 \\ x^2 + x^2 + 2x + 1 &= x^2 + 4x + 4 \\ x^2 + x^2 + 2x + 1 - x^2 - 4x - 4 &= 0 \\ x^2 - 2x - 3 &= 0 \\ (x - 3)(x + 1) &= 0 \\ x - 3 = 0 & \quad x + 1 = 0 \\ x = 3 & \quad x = -1 \end{aligned}$$

**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{l|l} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ x^2 + (x + 1)^2 &| \quad (x + 2)^2 \\ 3^2 + (3 + 1)^2 &| \quad (3 + 2)^2 \\ 9 + (4)^2 &| \quad 5^2 \\ 9 + 16 &| \quad 25 \\ 25 &| \quad 25 \end{array}$$

We reject  $x = -1$  because  $AC = x$  cannot be negative.

**ANSWER:**  $x = 3$

We will now restate and prove **Theorem 1**:

**THEOREM 1 (PYTHAGOREAN THEOREM)**

In a right triangle, the square of the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares of the legs. That is,

$$\text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 = \text{hypotenuse}^2$$

In Figure 1,  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ .

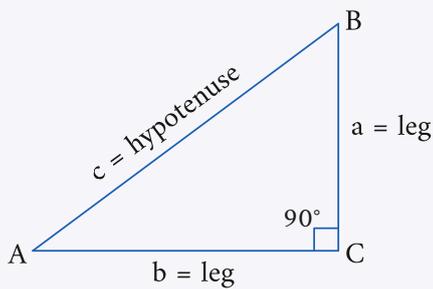


Figure 1. A right triangle

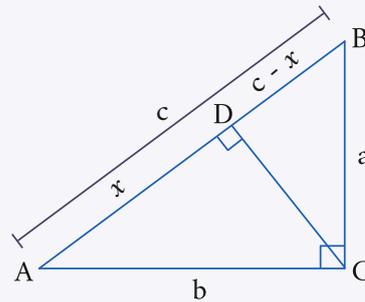


Figure 2. Draw CD perpendicular to AB

**Proof:**

In Figure 1, draw CD perpendicular to AB. Let  $x = AD$ . Then  $BD = c - x$  (Figure 2). As in Example C, section 4.2,  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle ACD$  and  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle CBD$ . From these two similarities we obtain two proportions:

$$\triangle ABC \sim \triangle ACD$$

$$\frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{AC}{AD}$$

$$\frac{c}{b} = \frac{b}{x}$$

$$cx = b^2$$

$$\triangle ABC \sim \triangle CBD$$

$$\frac{AB}{CB} = \frac{BC}{BD}$$

$$\frac{c}{a} = \frac{a}{c - x}$$

$$c(c - x) = a^2$$

$$c^2 - cx = a^2$$

$$c^2 - b^2 = a^2$$

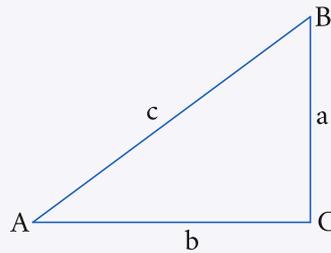
$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2$$

The converse of the Pythagorean Theorem also holds:

**THEOREM 2 (CONVERSE OF THE PYTHAGOREAN THEOREM)**

In a triangle, if the square of one side is equal to the sum of the squares of the other two sides then the triangle is a right triangle.

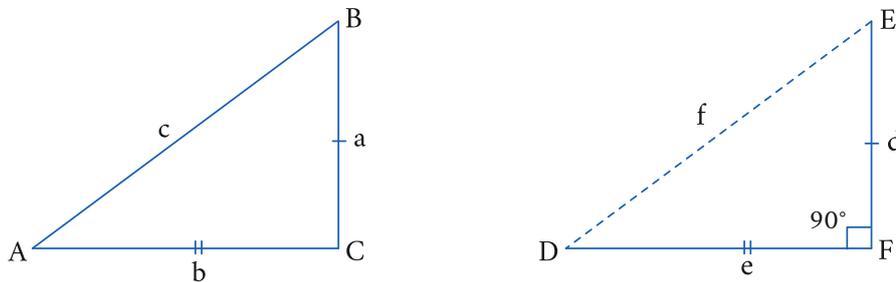
In Figure 3, if  $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$  then  $\triangle ABC$  is a right triangle with  $\angle C = 90^\circ$ .



**Figure 3.** If  $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$  then  $\angle C = 90^\circ$ .

**Proof:**

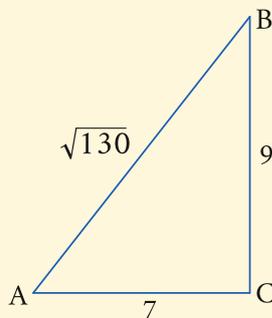
Draw a new triangle,  $\triangle DEF$  so that  $\angle F = 90^\circ$ ,  $d = a$  and  $e = b$  (Figure 4).  $\triangle DEF$  is a right triangle, so by **Theorem 1**,  $f^2 = d^2 + e^2$ . We have  $f^2 = d^2 + e^2 = a^2 + b^2 = c^2$  and therefore  $f = c$ . Therefore  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$  because SSS = SSS. Therefore,  $\angle C = \angle F = 90^\circ$ :



**Figure 4.** Given  $\triangle ABC$ , draw  $\triangle DEF$  so that  $\angle F = 90^\circ$ ,  $d = a$  and  $e = b$ .

**? EXAMPLE E**

Is  $\triangle ABC$  a right triangle?



## Similar Triangles

### SOLUTION

$$AC^2 = 7^2 = 49$$

$$BC^2 = 9^2 = 81$$

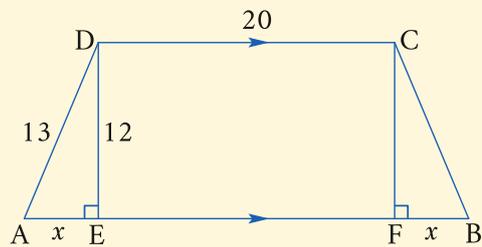
$$AB^2 = (\sqrt{130})^2 = 130$$

$49 + 81 = 130$ , so by **Theorem 2**,  $\triangle ABC$  is a right triangle.

**ANSWER:** Yes.

### ? EXAMPLE F

Find  $x$  and  $AB$ :



### SOLUTION

$$x^2 + 12^2 = 13^2$$

$$x^2 + 144 = 169$$

$$x^2 = 169 - 144$$

$$x^2 = 25$$

$$x = 5$$

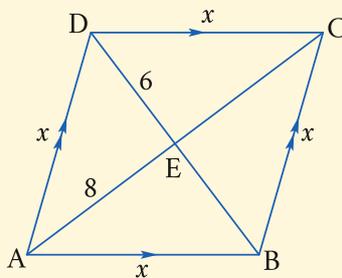
CDEF is a rectangle so  $EF = CD = 20$  and  $CF = DE = 12$ .

Therefore  $FB = 5$  and  $AB = AE + EF + FB = 5 + 20 + 5 = 30$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x=5$ ,  $AB = 30$ .

### ? EXAMPLE G

Find  $x$ ,  $AC$  and  $BD$ :



## Similar Triangles

### SOLUTION

ABCD is a rhombus. The diagonals of a rhombus are perpendicular and bisect each other.

$$6^2 + 8^2 = x^2$$

$$36 + 64 = x^2$$

$$100 = x^2$$

$$10 = x$$

$$AC = 8 + 8 = 16$$

$$BD = 6 + 6 = 12$$

**ANSWER :**  $x = 10$ ,  $AC = 16$ ,  $BD = 12$

### ? EXAMPLE H

A ladder 39 feet long leans against a building. How far up the side of the building does the ladder reach if the foot of the ladder is 15 feet from the building?



### SOLUTION

$$\text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 = \text{hyp}^2$$

$$x^2 + 15^2 = 39^2$$

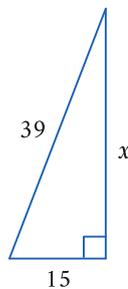
$$x^2 + 225 = 1521$$

$$x^2 = 1521 - 225$$

$$x^2 = 1296$$

$$x = \sqrt{1296}$$

$$x = 36$$

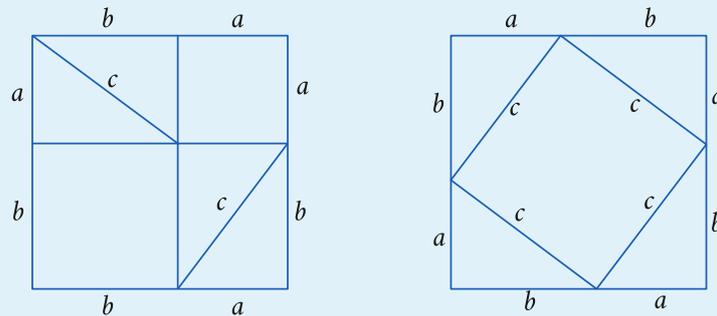


**ANSWER :**  $x = 36$  feet



## HISTORICAL NOTE

Pythagoras (c. 582 - 507 B.C.) was not the first to discover the theorem which bears his name. It was known long before his time by the Chinese, the Babylonians and perhaps also the Egyptians and the Hindus. According to tradition, Pythagoras was the first to give a proof of the theorem. His proof probably made use of areas, like the one suggested in Figure 5 below. (Each square contains four congruent right triangles with



**Figure 5.** Pythagoras may have proved  $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$  in this way.

sides of lengths  $a$ ,  $b$  and  $c$ . In addition the square on the left contains a square with side  $a$  and a square with side  $b$  while the one on the right contains a square with side  $c$ .) Since the time of Pythagoras, at least several hundred different proofs of the Pythagorean Theorem have been proposed. Pythagoras was the founder of the Pythagorean school, a secret religious society devoted to the study of philosophy, mathematics and science. Its membership was a select group, which tended to keep the discoveries and practices of the society secret from outsiders. The Pythagoreans believed that numbers were the ultimate components of the universe and that all physical relationships could be expressed with whole numbers. This belief was prompted in part by their discovery that the notes of the musical scale were related by numerical ratios. The Pythagoreans made important contributions to medicine, physics, and astronomy. In geometry, they are credited with the angle sum theorem for triangles, the properties of parallel lines and the theory of similar triangles and proportions.

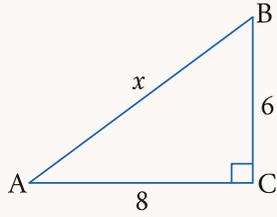
Similar Triangles



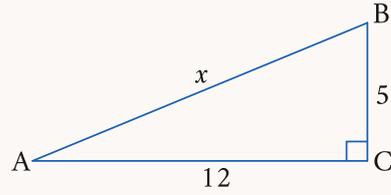
PROBLEMS

1 - 10. Find  $x$ . Leave answers in simplest radical form.

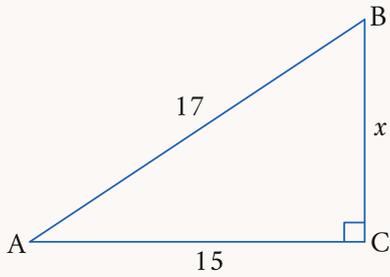
1.



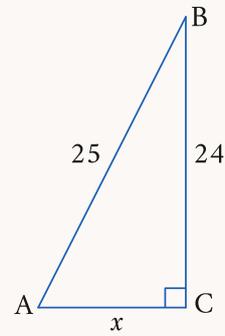
2.



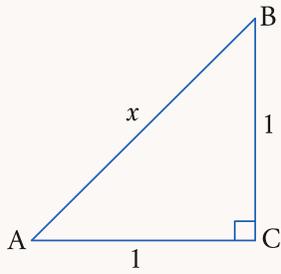
3.



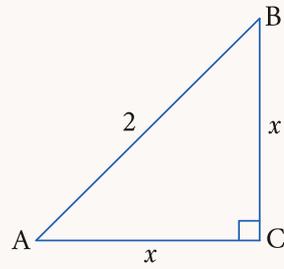
4.



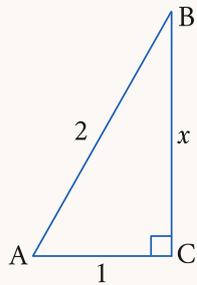
5.



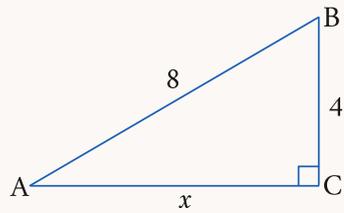
6.



7.

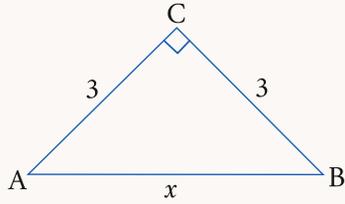


8.

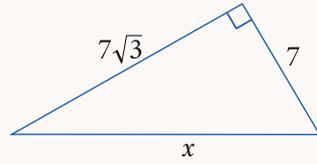


Similar Triangles

9.

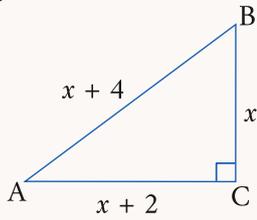


10.

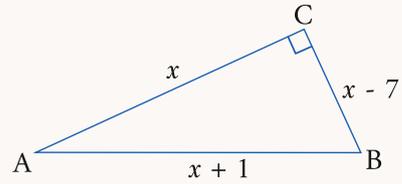


11 - 14. Find  $x$  and all sides of the triangle.

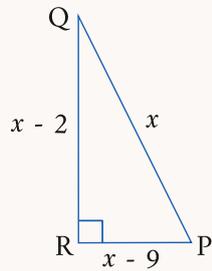
11.



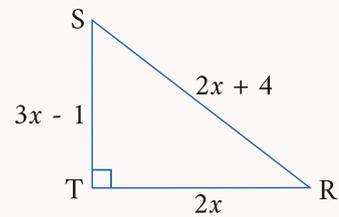
12.



13.

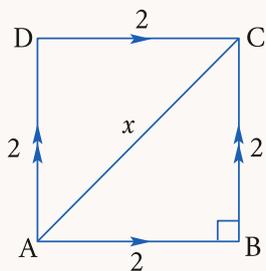


14.

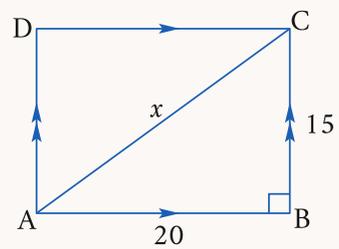


15 - 16. Find  $x$ :

15.

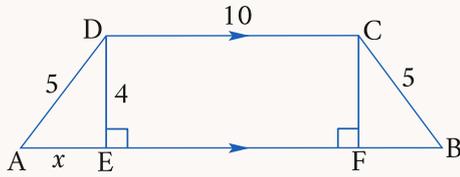


16.

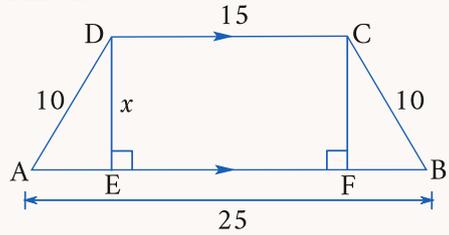


Similar Triangles

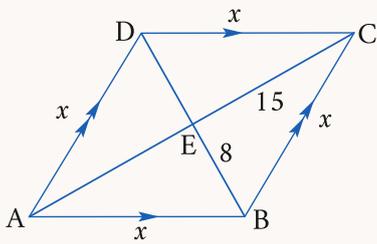
17. Find  $x$  and  $AB$ :



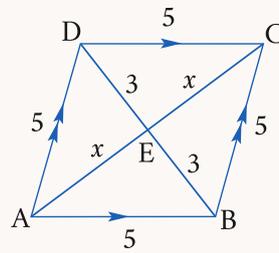
18. Find  $x$ :



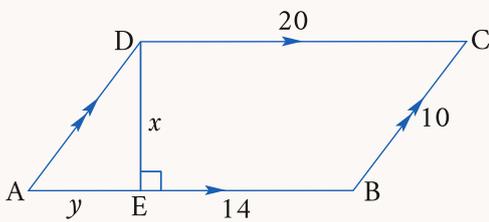
19. Find  $x$ ,  $AC$  and  $BD$ :



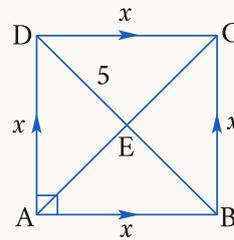
20. Find  $x$ ,  $AC$  and  $BD$ :



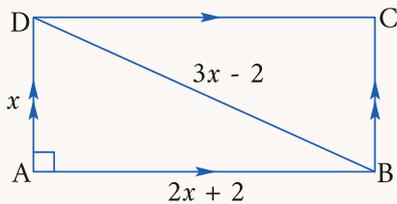
21. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



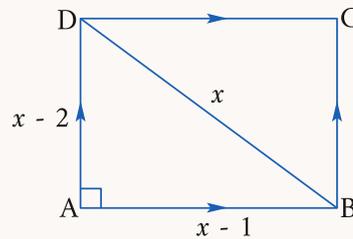
22. Find  $x$ ,  $AC$  and  $BD$ :



23. Find  $x$ ,  $AB$  and  $BD$ :



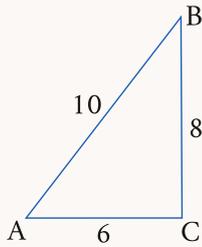
24. Find  $x$ ,  $AB$  and  $AD$ :



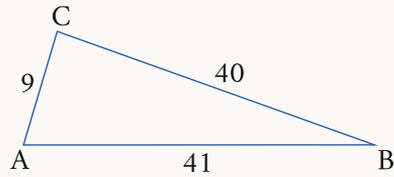
Similar Triangles

25 - 30. Is  $\triangle ABC$  a right triangle?

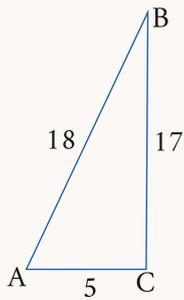
25.



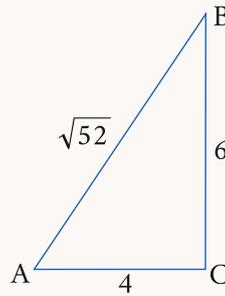
26.



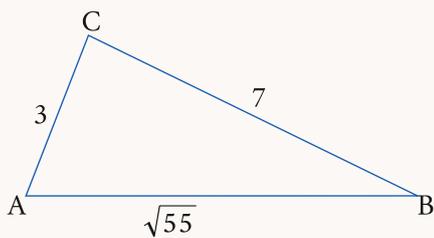
27.



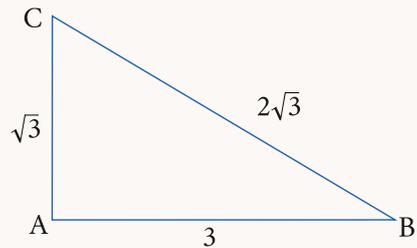
28.



29.



30.

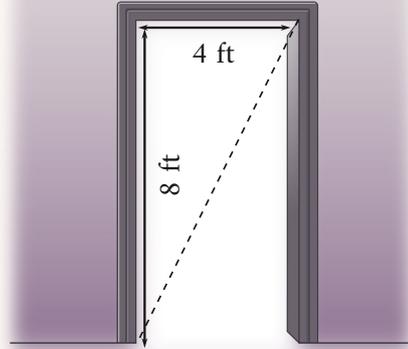


31. A ladder 25 feet long leans against a building. How far up the side of the building does the ladder reach if the foot of the ladder is 7 feet from the building?

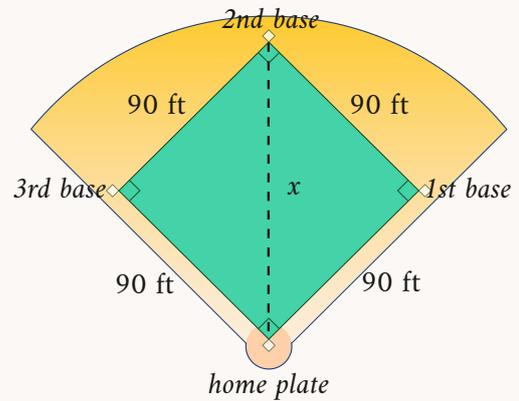
32. A man travels 24 miles east and then 10 miles north. At the end of his journey how far is he from his starting point?

Similar Triangles

33. Can a table 9 feet wide (with its legs folded) fit through a rectangular doorway 4 feet by 8 feet?



34. A baseball diamond is a square 90 feet on each side. Find the distance from home plate to second base (leave answer in simplest radical form)?



4.5 SPECIAL RIGHT TRIANGLES

There are two kinds of right triangle which deserve special attention: the 30° - 60° - 90° right triangle and the 45° - 45° - 90° right triangle.

A triangle whose angles are 30°, 60° and 90° is called a **30° - 60° - 90° triangle**.  $\triangle ABC$  in Figure 1 is a 30° - 60° - 90° triangle with side  $AC = 1$ .

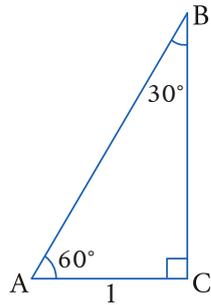


Figure 1. A 30° - 60° - 90° triangle.

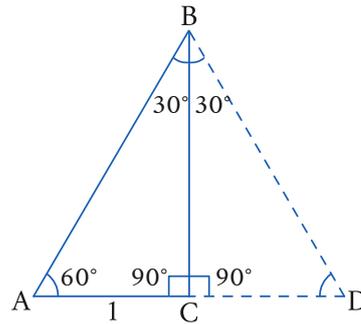


Figure 2. Draw  $BD$  and  $CD$ .

To learn more about this triangle let us draw lines  $BD$  and  $CD$  as in Figure 2.  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DBC$  by ASA = ASA so  $AC = DC = 1$ .  $\triangle ABD$  is an equiangular triangle so all the sides must be equal to 2. Therefore  $AB = 2$  (Figure 3).

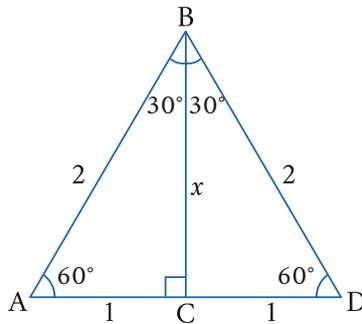


Figure 3.  $\triangle ABD$  is equiangular with all sides equal to 2.

Let  $x = BC$ . Let us find  $x$ . Applying the **Pythagorean Theorem** to  $\triangle ABC$ ,

$$\text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 = \text{hyp}^2$$

$$1^2 + x^2 = 2^2$$

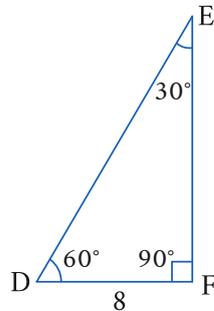
$$1 + x^2 = 4$$

$$x^2 = 3$$

$$x = \sqrt{3}$$

## Similar Triangles

Now suppose we are given another  $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle  $\triangle DEF$ , with side  $DF = 8$  (Figure 4).  $\triangle DEF$  is similar to  $\triangle ABC$  of Figure 3. Therefore



$$\frac{DF}{AC} = \frac{DE}{AB} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{DF}{AC} = \frac{EF}{BC}$$

$$\frac{8}{1} = \frac{DE}{2} \qquad \frac{8}{1} = \frac{EF}{\sqrt{3}}$$

$$16 = DE \qquad 8\sqrt{3} = EF$$

**Figure 4.**  $\triangle DEF$  is similar to  $\triangle ABC$  of Figure 3.

Our conclusions about triangles ABC and DEF suggest the following theorem:

**THEOREM 1**

In the  $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle the hypotenuse is always twice as large as the leg opposite the  $30^\circ$  angle (the **shorter leg**). The leg opposite the  $60^\circ$  angle (the **longer leg**) is always equal to the shorter leg times  $\sqrt{3}$ .

**Figure 5.** The hypotenuse is twice the shorter leg and the longer leg is equal to the shorter leg times the  $\sqrt{3}$ .

In Figure 5,  $s$  = shorter leg,  $L$  = longer leg and  $hyp$  = hypotenuse. **Theorem 1** says that

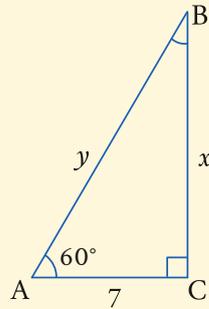
$$\begin{aligned} hyp &= 2s \\ L &= s\sqrt{3} \end{aligned}$$

Note that the longer leg is always the leg opposite (furthest away from) the  $60^\circ$  angle and the shorter leg is always the leg opposite (furthest away from) the  $30^\circ$  angle.

Similar Triangles

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



**SOLUTION**

$\angle B = 180^\circ - (60^\circ + 90^\circ) = 180^\circ - 150^\circ = 30^\circ$ , so  $\triangle ABC$  is a  $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle.

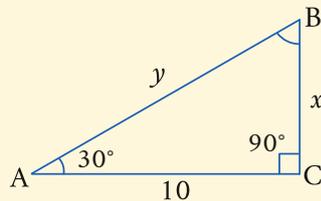
By **Theorem 1**:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{hyp} &= 2s & L &= s\sqrt{3} \\ y &= 2(7) = 14 & x &= 7\sqrt{3} \end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 7\sqrt{3}$ ,  $y = 14$

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



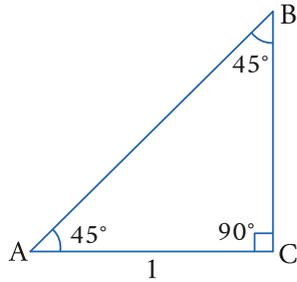
**SOLUTION**

$\angle B = 60^\circ$ , so  $\triangle ABC$  is a  $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle. By **Theorem 1**:

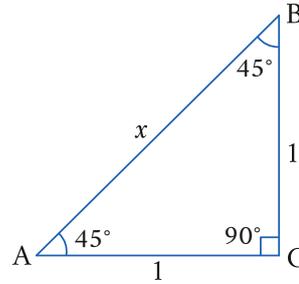
$$\begin{aligned} L &= s\sqrt{3} & \text{hyp} &= 2s \\ 10 &= x\sqrt{3} & y &= 2x = 2\left(\frac{10\sqrt{3}}{3}\right) = \frac{20\sqrt{3}}{3} \\ \frac{10}{\sqrt{3}} &= \frac{x\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}} & & \\ x &= \frac{10}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{10}{\sqrt{3}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{3} & \text{ANSWER: } & x = \frac{10\sqrt{3}}{3}, \quad y = \frac{20\sqrt{3}}{3} \end{aligned}$$

## Similar Triangles

The second special triangle we will consider is the **45° - 45° - 90° triangle**. A triangle whose angles are 45°, 45° and 90° is called a 45° - 45° - 90° triangle or an **isosceles right triangle**.  $\triangle ABC$  in Figure 6 is a 45° - 45° - 90° triangle with side  $AC = 1$ .



**Figure 6.** A 45° - 45° - 90° triangle.



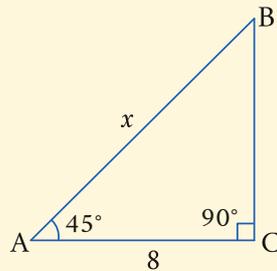
**Figure 7.** The legs of 45° - 45° - 90° triangle are equal.

Since  $\angle A = \angle B = 45^\circ$ , the sides opposite these angles must be equal (**Theorem 2, Section 2.5**). Therefore  $AC = BC = 1$ . Let  $x = AB$  (Figure 7). By the **Pythagorean Theorem**,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 1^2 + 1^2 &= x^2 \\ 1 + 1 &= x^2 \\ 2 &= x^2 \\ \sqrt{2} &= x \end{aligned}$$

### ? EXAMPLE C

Find  $x$ :



### SOLUTION

$\angle B = 180^\circ - (45^\circ + 90^\circ) = 180^\circ - 135^\circ = 45^\circ$ . So  $\triangle ABC$  is a 45° - 45° - 90° triangle.  $AC = BC = 8$  because these sides are opposite equal angles. By the **Pythagorean Theorem**,

$$\begin{aligned} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 8^2 + 8^2 &= x^2 \\ 64 + 64 &= x^2 \\ 128 &= x^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\sqrt{128} = x \quad x = \sqrt{128} = \sqrt{64 \cdot 2} = 8\sqrt{2}$$

**ANSWER :**  $8\sqrt{2}$

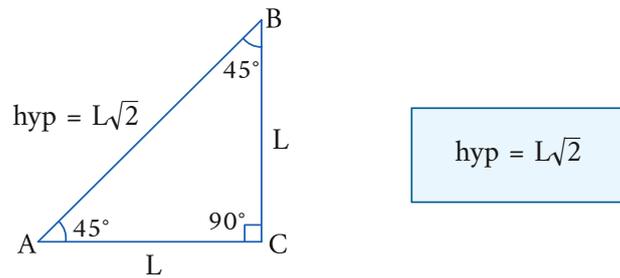
## Similar Triangles

The triangles of Figure 6 and Example C suggest the following theorem:

### THEOREM 2

In the  $45^\circ - 45^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle the legs are equal and the hypotenuse is equal to either leg times  $\sqrt{2}$ .

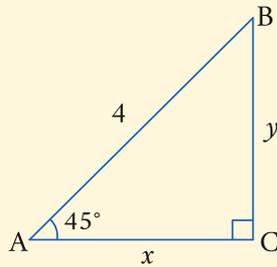
In Figure 8, hyp is the hypotenuse and L is the length of each leg. Theorem 2 says that.



**Figure 8.** The legs are equal and the hypotenuse is equal to either leg times  $\sqrt{2}$

### ? EXAMPLE D

Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



#### SOLUTION

$\angle B = 45^\circ$ . So  $\triangle ABC$  is an isosceles right triangle and  $x = y$ .

$$x^2 + y^2 = 4^2$$

$$x^2 + x^2 = 16$$

$$2x^2 = 16$$

$$x^2 = 8$$

$$x = \sqrt{8} = \sqrt{4\sqrt{2}} = 2\sqrt{2}$$

**Another method:**

$$\text{hyp} = L\sqrt{2}$$

$$4 = x\sqrt{2}$$

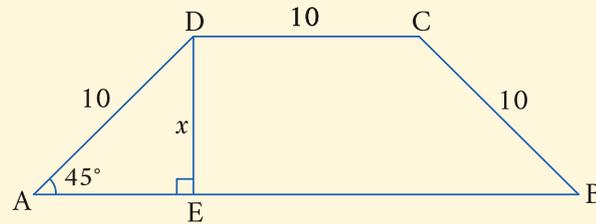
$$\frac{4}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{x\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$x = \frac{4}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{4\sqrt{2}}{2} = 2\sqrt{2}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = y = 2\sqrt{2}$

**? EXAMPLE E**

Find AB:



**SOLUTION**

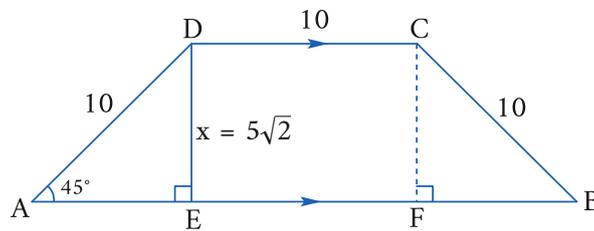
$\triangle ADE$  is a  $45^\circ - 45^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle. Hence

$$\text{hyp} = L\sqrt{2}$$

$$10 = x\sqrt{2}$$

$$\frac{10}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{x\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}} \quad x = \frac{10}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{10}{\sqrt{2}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{2}} = \frac{10\sqrt{2}}{2} = 5\sqrt{2} \quad AE = x = 5\sqrt{2}$$

Now draw CF perpendicular to AB (Figure 9).  $\angle B = 45^\circ$  since ABCD is an isosceles trapezoid (**Theorem 4, Section 3.2**).



**Figure 9.** Draw CF perpendicular to AB.

So  $\triangle BCF$  is a  $45^\circ - 45^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle congruent to  $\triangle ADE$  and therefore  $BF = 5\sqrt{2}$ . CDEF is a rectangle and therefore  $EF = 10$ .

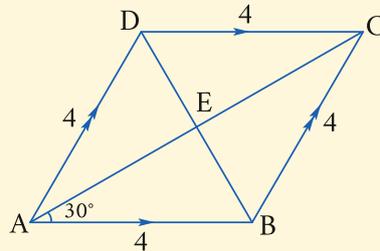
$$\text{We have } AB = AE + EF + FB = 5\sqrt{2} + 10 + 5\sqrt{2} = 10\sqrt{2} + 10$$

**ANSWER:**  $AB = 10\sqrt{2} + 10$

Similar Triangles

**? EXAMPLE F**

Find AC and BD:



**SOLUTION**

ABCD is a rhombus. The diagonals AC and BD are perpendicular and bisect each other.  $\angle AEB = 90^\circ$  and  $\angle ABE = 180^\circ - (90^\circ + 30^\circ) = 60^\circ$ . So  $\triangle AEB$  is a  $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle.

$\text{hyp} = 2s$	$L = s\sqrt{3}$
$4 = 2(\text{BE})$	$AE = 2\sqrt{3}$
$2 = \text{BE}$	$AC = 2\sqrt{3} + 2\sqrt{3}$
$BD = 2 + 2 = 4$	$AC = 4\sqrt{3}$

**ANSWER:**  $AC = 4\sqrt{3}$ ,  $BD = 4$ .

 **HISTORICAL NOTE**

The Pythagoreans believed that all physical relations could be expressed with whole numbers. However the sides of the special triangles described in this section are related by **irrational** numbers,  $\sqrt{2}$  and  $\sqrt{3}$ . An irrational number is a number which can be approximated, but not expressed exactly, by a ratio of whole numbers. For example  $\sqrt{2}$  can be approximated with increasing accuracy by such ratios as

$$1.4 = \frac{14}{10}, \quad 1.41 = \frac{141}{100}, \quad 1.414 = \frac{1414}{1000},$$

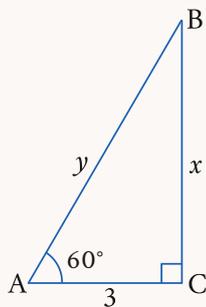
etc., but there is no fraction of whole numbers which is **exactly** equal to  $\sqrt{2}$ . (For more details and a proof, see the book by Richardson listed in the References). The Pythagoreans discovered that  $\sqrt{2}$  was irrational in about the 5th century B.C. It was a tremendous shock to them that not all triangles could be measured "exactly." They may have even tried to keep this discovery a secret for fear of the damage it would do to their philosophical credibility.

The inability of the Pythagoreans to accept irrational numbers had unfortunate consequences for the development of mathematics. Later Greek mathematicians avoided giving numerical values to lengths of line segments. Problems whose algebraic solutions might be irrational numbers, such as those involving quadratic equations, were instead stated and solved geometrically. The result was that geometry flourished at the expense of algebra. It was left for the Hindus and the Arabs to resurrect the study of algebra in the Middle Ages. And it was not until the 19th century that irrational numbers were placed in the kind of logical framework that the Greeks had given to geometry 2000 years before.

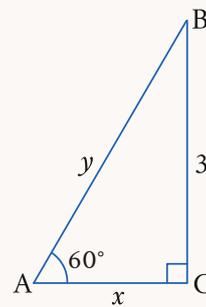
 **PROBLEMS**

1 - 10. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :

1.

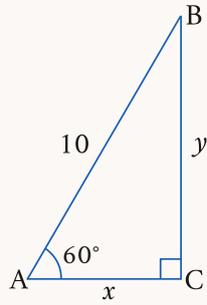


2.

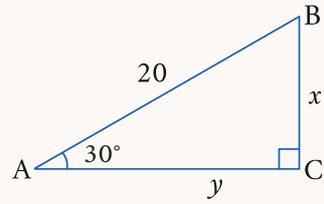


Similar Triangles

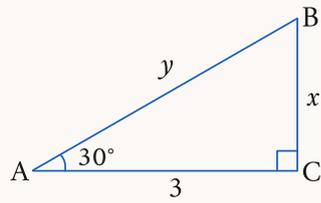
3.



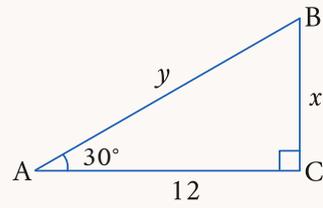
4.



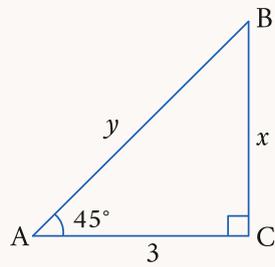
5.



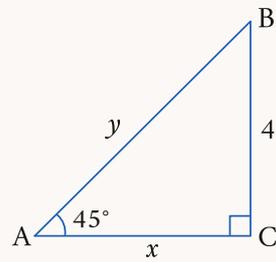
6.



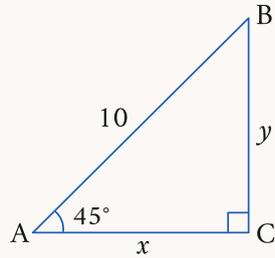
7.



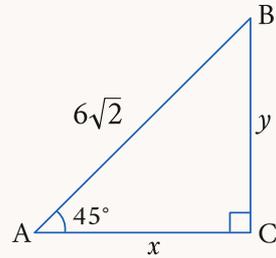
8.



9.



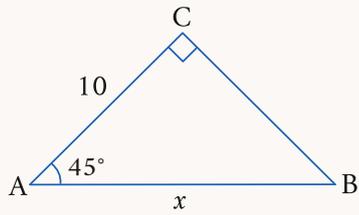
10.



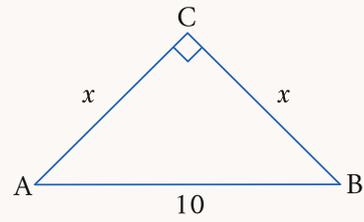
Similar Triangles

11 - 14. Find  $x$ :

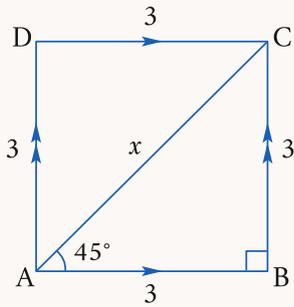
11.



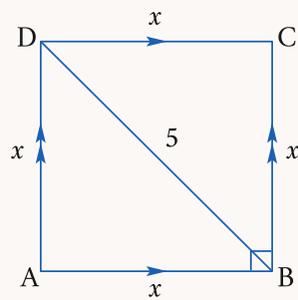
12.



13.

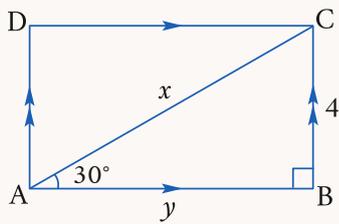


14.

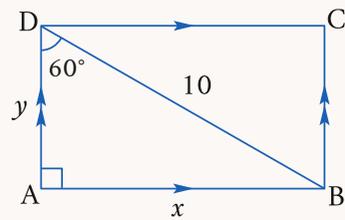


15 - 20. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :

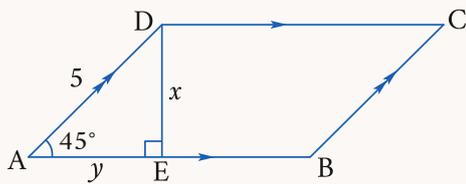
15.



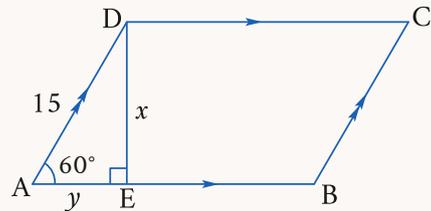
16.



17.

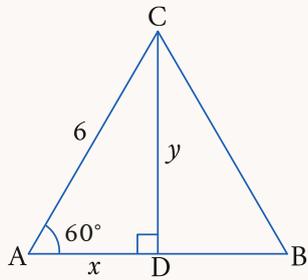


18.

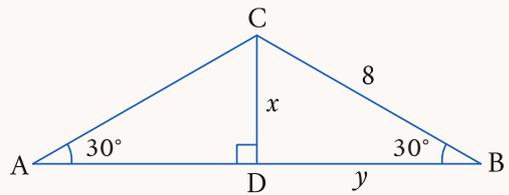


Similar Triangles

19.

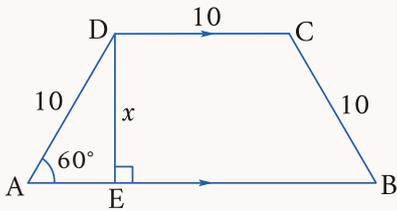


20.

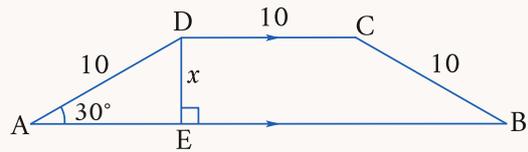


21 - 22. Find  $x$  and  $AB$ :

21.

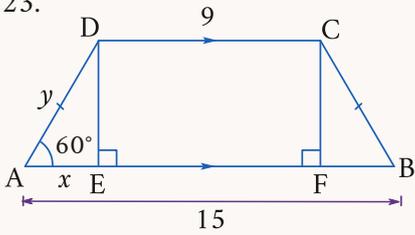


22.

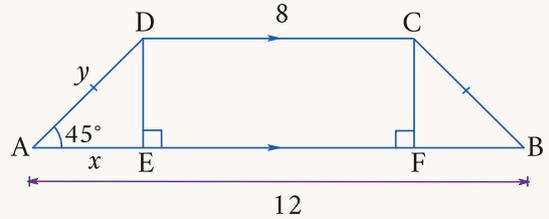


23 - 24. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :

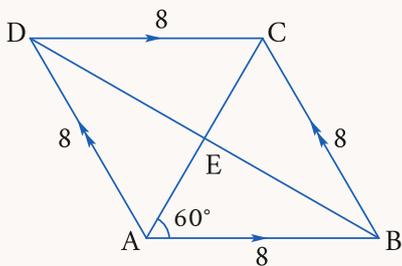
23.



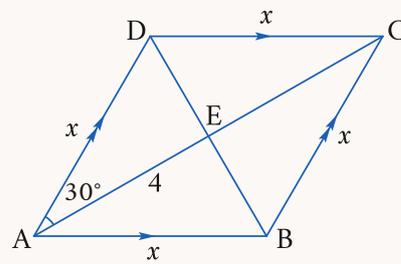
24.



25. Find  $AC$  and  $BD$ :



26. Find  $x$ ,  $AC$  and  $BD$ :



4.6 DISTANCE FROM A POINT TO A LINE

Suppose we are given a point P and a line  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  as in Figure 1. We would like to find the shortest line segment that can be drawn from P to  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$ .

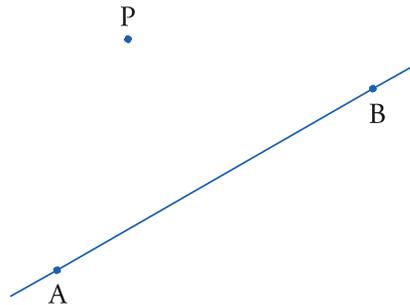


Figure 1. Point P and line  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$ .

First we will prove a theorem:

THEOREM 1

In a right triangle the hypotenuse is larger than either leg. In Figure 2,  $c > a$  and  $c > b$ . (The symbol ">" means "is greater than.")

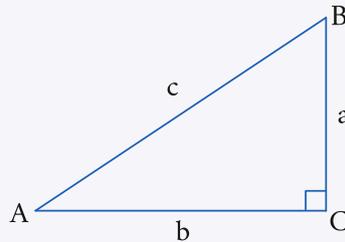


Figure 2. c is larger than either a or b.

**Proof :**

By the Pythagorean Theorem,

$$c^2 = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} > \sqrt{a^2} = a$$

$$c^2 = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2} > \sqrt{b^2} = b$$

Now we can give the answer to our question:

**THEOREM 2**

The perpendicular is the shortest line segment that can be drawn from a point to a straight line.

In Figure 3 the shortest line segment from P to  $\vec{AB}$  is PD. Any other line segment, such as PC, must be longer.

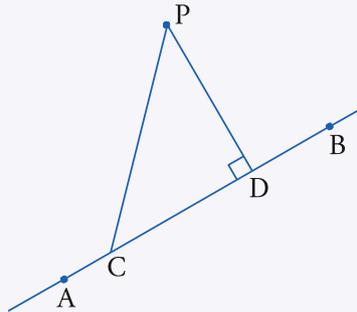


Figure 3. PD is the shortest line segment from P to  $\vec{AB}$ .

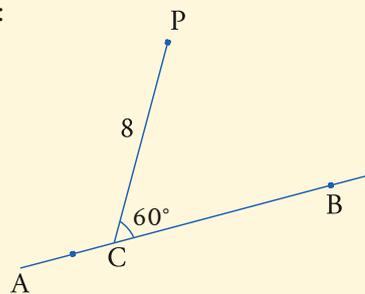
**Proof :**

PC is the hypotenuse of right triangle PCD. Therefore by **Theorem 1**,  $PC > PD$ .

We define the **distance from a point to a line** to be the length of the perpendicular.

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find the distance from P to  $\vec{AB}$ :



**SOLUTION**

Draw PD perpendicular to  $\vec{AB}$  (Figure 4).  $\triangle PCD$  is a  $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle.

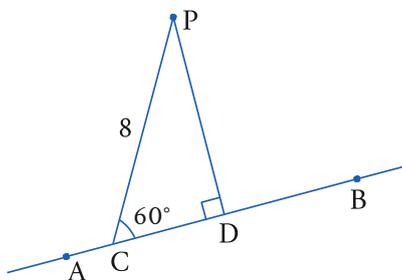


Figure 4. Draw PD perpendicular to  $\vec{AB}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{hyp} &= 2s \\ 8 &= 2(\text{CD}) \\ 4 &= \text{CD} \\ L &= s\sqrt{3} \\ \text{PD} &= 4\sqrt{3} \end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER :**  $\text{PD} = 4\sqrt{3}$

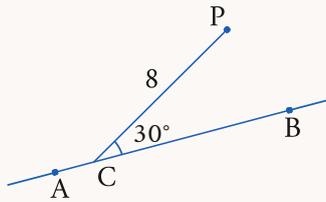
Similar Triangles



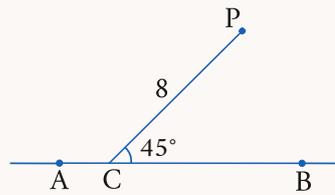
PROBLEMS

1 - 6. Find the distance from P to  $\vec{AB}$ :

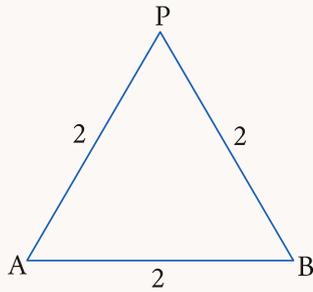
1.



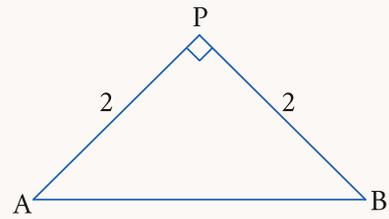
2.



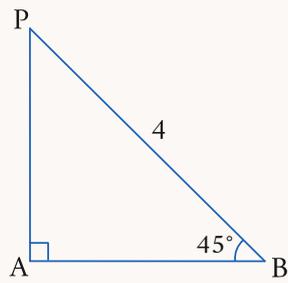
3.



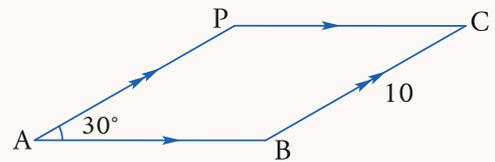
4.



5.



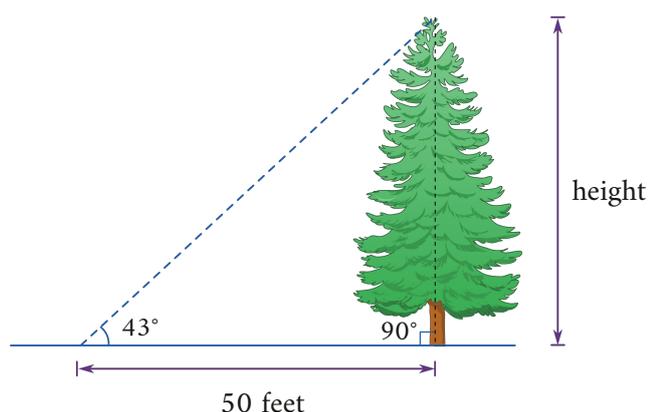
6.



## TRIGONOMETRY OF THE RIGHT TRIANGLE

## 5.1 THE TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

**Trigonometry** (from Greek words meaning triangle-measure) is the branch of mathematics concerned with computing unknown sides and angles of triangles. For example, in Figure 1, we might want to measure the height of the tree without actually having to climb the tree. The methods of trigonometry will enable us to do this.

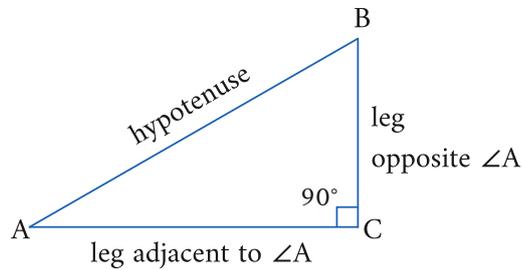


*Figure 1.* Trigonometry will enable us to measure the height of the tree without actually climbing the tree.

In this book we will consider just the trigonometry of the right triangle. In more advanced courses, trigonometry deals with other kinds of triangles as well. Here, however, the following definitions apply only to **right triangles**.

In right triangle ABC of Figure 2, AC is called the leg **adjacent** to  $\angle A$ . "Adjacent" means "next to." BC is called the leg **opposite**  $\angle A$ . "Opposite" here means "furthest away from."

## Trigonometry of the Right Triangle



**Figure 2.** Right triangle ABC.

We define the **sine**, **cosine**, and **tangent** of an acute angle  $A$  in a right triangle as follows:

$$\text{sine } A = \frac{\text{leg opposite } \angle A}{\text{hypotenuse}} \quad \left( \sin A = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}} \right)$$

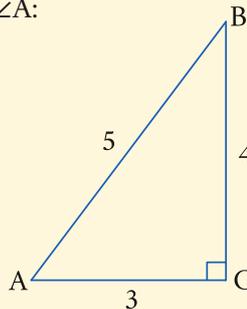
$$\text{cosine } A = \frac{\text{leg adjacent to } \angle A}{\text{hypotenuse}} \quad \left( \cos A = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}} \right)$$

$$\text{tangent } A = \frac{\text{leg opposite } \angle A}{\text{leg adjacent to } \angle A} \quad \left( \tan A = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} \right)$$

The sine, cosine and tangent are called **trigonometric functions**.

### ? EXAMPLE A

Find the sine, cosine and tangent of  $\angle A$ :



### SOLUTION

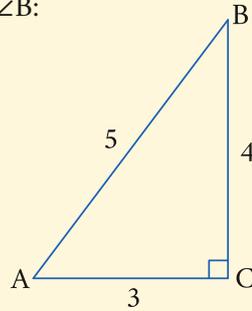
$$\begin{aligned} \text{leg adjacent to } \angle A &= 3. & \sin A &= \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{4}{5}. & \cos A &= \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{3}{5}. & \tan A &= \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} = \frac{4}{3}. \\ \text{leg opposite } \angle A &= 4. \\ \text{hypotenuse} &= 5. \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{ANSWER: } \sin A = \frac{4}{5}, \cos A = \frac{3}{5}, \tan A = \frac{4}{3}.$$

Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

? EXAMPLE B

Find the sine, cosine and tangent of  $\angle B$ :



**SOLUTION**

leg adjacent to  $\angle B = 4$ .

leg opposite  $\angle B = 3$ .

hypotenuse = 5.

$$\sin B = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{3}{5}, \quad \cos B = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{4}{5}, \quad \tan B = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} = \frac{3}{4}.$$

**ANSWER:**  $\sin B = \frac{3}{5}$ ,  $\cos B = \frac{4}{5}$ ,  $\tan B = \frac{3}{4}$ .

The definitions of sine, cosine and tangent should be memorized. It may be helpful to remember the mnemonic "SOHCAHTOA:"

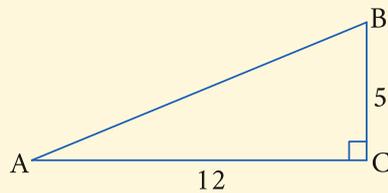
$$\text{Sin} = \text{Opp} / \text{Hyp}$$

$$\text{Cos} = \text{Adj} / \text{Hyp}$$

$$\text{Tan} = \text{Opp} / \text{Adj}$$

? EXAMPLE C

Find the  $\sin A$ ,  $\cos A$  and  $\tan A$ :



**SOLUTION**

To find the hypotenuse, we use the **Pythagorean Theorem**:

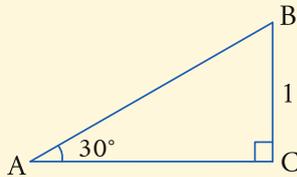
$$\begin{aligned} \text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 5^2 + 12^2 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 25 + 144 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 169 &= \text{hyp}^2 \\ 13 &= \text{hyp} \end{aligned}$$

$$\sin A = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{5}{13} \quad \cos A = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{12}{13} \quad \tan A = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} = \frac{5}{12}$$

**ANSWER:**  $\sin A = \frac{5}{13}$ ,  $\cos A = \frac{12}{13}$ ,  $\tan A = \frac{5}{12}$

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find the  $\sin A$ ,  $\cos A$  and  $\tan A$ :

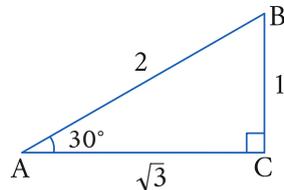


**SOLUTION**

$\triangle ABC$  is a  $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle so by **Theorem 1**, Section 4.5,  $AB = \text{hyp} = 2s = 2(1) = 2$  and  $AC = L = s\sqrt{3} = (1)\sqrt{3} = \sqrt{3}$ .

$$\sin A = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \cos A = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2},$$

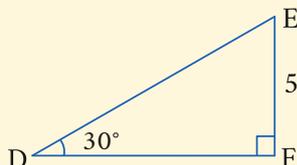
$$\tan A = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{3}}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}.$$



**ANSWER:**  $\sin A = \frac{1}{2}$ ,  $\cos A = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ ,  $\tan A = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$ .

**? EXAMPLE E**

Find the  $\sin D$ ,  $\cos D$  and  $\tan D$ :



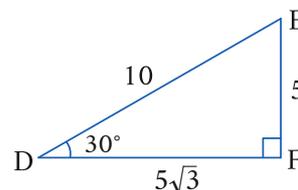
**SOLUTION**

Again using **Theorem 1**, Section 4.5,

$$DE = \text{hyp} = 2s = 2(5) = 10 \text{ and } DF = L = s\sqrt{3} = 5\sqrt{3}.$$

$$\sin D = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{5}{10} = \frac{1}{2} \quad \cos D = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{5\sqrt{3}}{10} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

$$\tan D = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} = \frac{5}{5\sqrt{3}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$$



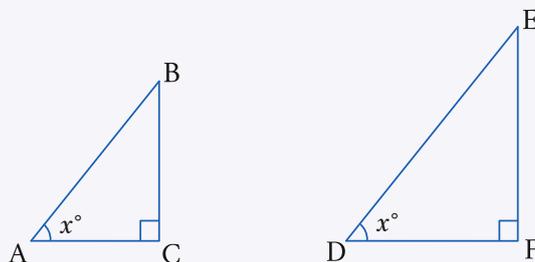
**ANSWER :**  $\sin D = \frac{1}{2}$  ,  $\cos D = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  ,  $\tan D = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$  .

Notice that the answers to Example D and Example E were the same. This is because  $\angle A = \angle D = 30^\circ$ . The values of the trigonometric functions for all  $30^\circ$  angles will be the same. The reason is that all right triangles with a  $30^\circ$  angle are similar. Therefore their sides are proportional and the trigonometric ratios are equal. What holds for  $30^\circ$  angles holds for other acute angles as well. We state this in the following theorem:

**THEOREM 1**

The values of the trigonometric functions for equal angles are the same.

In Figure 3, if  $\angle A = \angle D = x^\circ$  then  $\sin A = \sin D$ ,  $\cos A = \cos D$  and  $\tan A = \tan D$ .



**Figure 3.**  $\angle A = \angle D = x^\circ$  so  $\sin A = \sin D$ ,  $\cos A = \cos D$  and  $\tan A = \tan D$ .

Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

**Proof :**

$\angle A = \angle D = x^\circ$  and  $\angle C = \angle F = 90^\circ$  so  $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$  by AA = AA. Therefore

$$\frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{AB}{DE} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{AC}{DF} = \frac{AB}{DE} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{BC}{EF} = \frac{AC}{DF}.$$

By **Theorem 2**, Section 4.1, we may interchange the means of each proportion:

$$\frac{BC}{AB} = \frac{EF}{DE} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{AC}{AB} = \frac{DF}{DE} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{EF}{DF}.$$

These proportions just state that  $\sin A = \sin D$  and  $\cos A = \cos D$  and  $\tan A = \tan D$ .

**Theorem 1** tells us that the trigonometric functions do not depend on the particular triangle chosen, only on the number of degrees in the angle. If we want to find the trigonometric values of an angle, we may choose any right triangle containing the angle which is convenient to use.

**? EXAMPLE F**

If  $\sin A = \frac{12}{13}$  find  $\cos A$  and  $\tan A$ .

**SOLUTION**

If  $\sin A = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{12}{13}$  then there is a right triangle ABC containing  $\angle A$  with leg opposite  $\angle A = 12$  and hypotenuse = 13 (see Figure 4).

Let  $b =$  leg adjacent to  $\angle A$ .

$$\text{leg}^2 + \text{leg}^2 = \text{hyp}^2$$

$$b^2 + 12^2 = 13^2$$

$$b^2 + 144 = 169$$

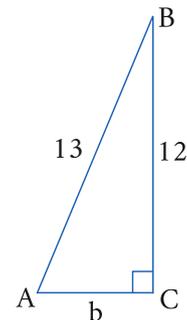
$$-144 \quad -144$$

$$b^2 = 25$$

$$b = 5$$

$$\cos A = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{5}{13}$$

$$\tan A = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} = \frac{12}{5}$$



**Figure 4.**

$\triangle ABC$  with leg opposite  $\angle A = 12$  and hypotenuse = 13.

**ANSWER :**  $\cos A = \frac{5}{13}$  ,  $\tan A = \frac{12}{5}$  .

**? EXAMPLE G**

If  $\tan A = 2$  find  $\sin A$  and  $\cos A$ .

**SOLUTION**

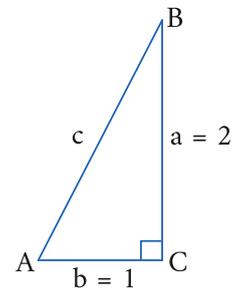
$$\tan A = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} = 2 = \frac{2}{1}.$$

Let  $\triangle ABC$  be such that  $a = \text{leg opposite } \angle A = 2$  and  $b = \text{leg adjacent to } \angle A = 1$ . See Figure 5.

$$\begin{aligned} a^2 + b^2 &= c^2 \\ 2^2 + 1^2 &= c^2 \\ 4 + 1 &= c^2 \\ 5 &= c^2 \\ \sqrt{5} &= c \end{aligned}$$

$$\sin A = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{5}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{5}}{\sqrt{5}} = \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}.$$

$$\cos A = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{5}} \cdot \frac{\sqrt{5}}{\sqrt{5}} = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}.$$



**ANSWER:**  $\sin A = \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}$ ,  $\cos A = \frac{\sqrt{5}}{5}$ .

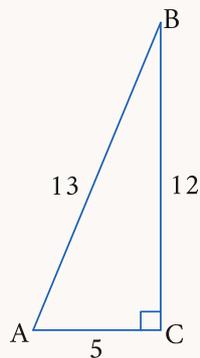
**Figure 5.**  
 $\triangle ABC$  with  $a = 2$  and  $b = 1$ .



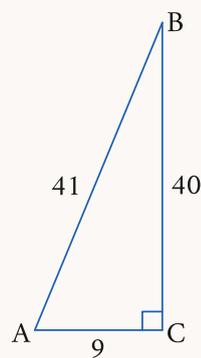
**PROBLEMS**

1 - 14. Find  $\sin A$ ,  $\cos A$ ,  $\tan A$ ,  $\sin B$ ,  $\cos B$  and  $\tan B$ :

1.

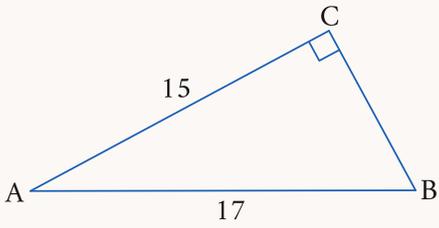


2.

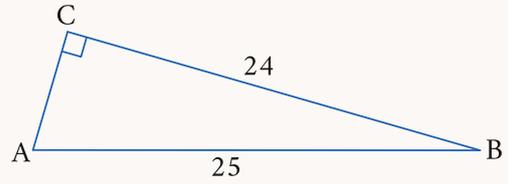


Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

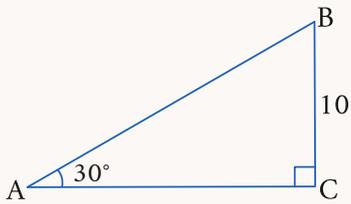
3.



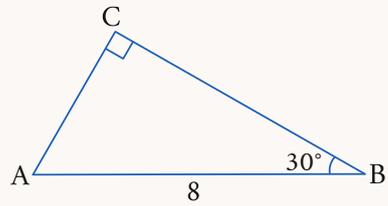
4.



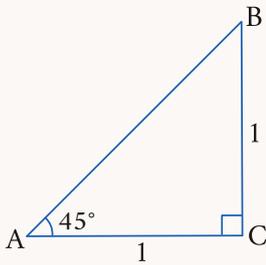
5.



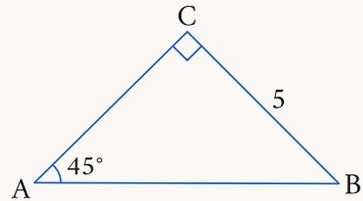
6.



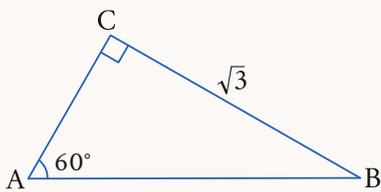
7.



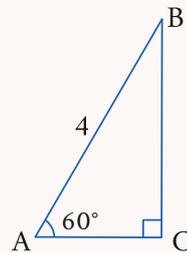
8.



9.

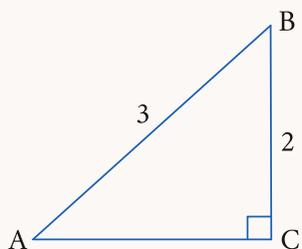


10.

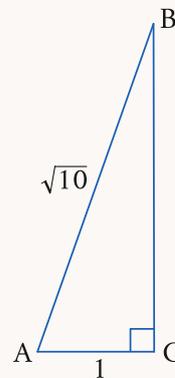


Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

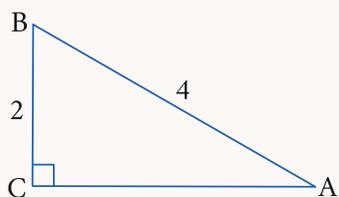
11.



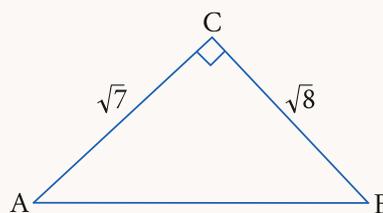
12.



13.



14.



15. If  $\sin A = \frac{4}{5}$  find  $\cos A$  and  $\tan A$ .

16. If  $\sin A = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$  find  $\cos A$  and  $\tan A$ .

17. If  $\cos A = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$  find  $\sin A$  and  $\tan A$ .

18. If  $\cos A = \frac{1}{3}$  find  $\sin A$  and  $\tan A$ .

19. If  $\tan A = 3$  find  $\sin A$  and  $\cos A$ .

20. If  $\tan A = 1$  find  $\sin A$  and  $\cos A$ .

**5.2 SOLUTION OF RIGHT TRIANGLES**

In the preceding section we showed that all  $30^\circ$  angles have the same trigonometric values. If we compute each of these values to four decimal places, we obtain  $\sin 30^\circ = \frac{1}{2} = 0.5000$ ,  $\cos 30^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} = \frac{1.73205}{2} = 0.8660$  and  $\tan 30^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} = \frac{1.73205}{3} = 0.5774$ . These numbers appear in the table of trigonometric values on page 303 in the row corresponding to  $30^\circ$ . As you can see, this table contains the trigonometric values of angles from  $1^\circ$  to  $90^\circ$ . It is impractical to compute most of these values directly, so we will use this table when we need them. A calculator with trigonometric functions may also be used.

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find  $\sin 20^\circ$ ,  $\cos 20^\circ$  and  $\tan 20^\circ$ .

**SOLUTION**

Look for  $20^\circ$  in the angle column of the table on page 303:

Angle	Sine	Cosine	Tangent
.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.
$20^\circ$	0.3420	0.9397	0.3640
.	.	.	.

If you are using a calculator, first make sure that it is in degree mode. Then type the sin, cos or tan key followed by 20. Some calculators might require you to enter the 20 first followed by the sin, cos or tan key.

**ANSWER:**  $\sin 20^\circ = 0.3420$ ,  $\cos 20^\circ = 0.9397$ ,  $\tan 20^\circ = 0.3640$

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$  to the nearest tenth:

## Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

### SOLUTION

We wish to find the leg opposite  $20^\circ$  and we know the hypotenuse. We use the sine because it is the only one of the three trigonometric functions which involves both the opposite leg and the hypotenuse.

$$\sin 20^\circ = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}}$$

$$0.3420 = \frac{x}{10}$$

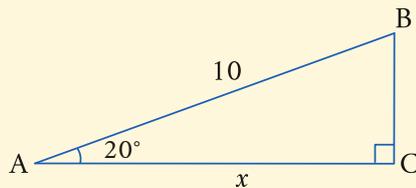
$$(10)(0.3420) = \frac{x}{\cancel{10}} (\cancel{10})$$

$$3.420 = x$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 3.4$ .

### ? EXAMPLE C

Find  $x$  to the nearest tenth:



### SOLUTION

We know the hypotenuse and we wish to find the leg adjacent to  $\angle A$ . We therefore use the cosine.

$$\cos 20^\circ = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}}$$

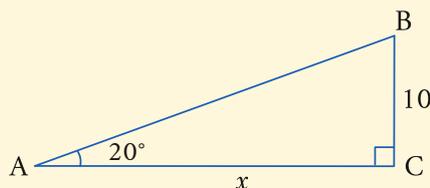
$$0.9397 = \frac{x}{10}$$

$$9.3970 = x$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 9.4$ .

### ? EXAMPLE D

Find  $x$  to the nearest tenth:



## Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

### SOLUTION

We know the leg opposite  $\angle A$  and we wish to find the leg adjacent to  $\angle A$ . We therefore use the tangent.

$$\begin{aligned}\tan 20^\circ &= \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} \\ 0.3640 &= \frac{10}{x} \\ (x)(0.3640) &= \frac{10}{\cancel{x}} (\cancel{x}) \\ 0.3640x &= 10 \\ \frac{0.3640x}{0.3640} &= \frac{10}{0.3640} \\ x &= \frac{10}{0.3640} = 27.47\end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 27.5$ .

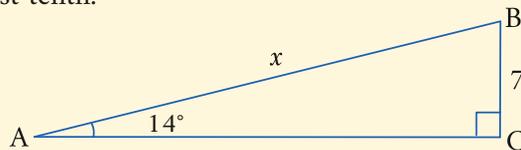
There is an easier method to solve Example D.  $\angle B = 90^\circ - 20^\circ = 70^\circ$ . The leg opposite  $\angle B$  is  $x$  and the leg adjacent to  $\angle B$  is 10.

$$\begin{aligned}\tan 70^\circ &= \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{adj}} & (2.7475)(10) &= x \\ & & 27.475 &= x \\ 2.7475 &= \frac{x}{10} & 27.5 &= x\end{aligned}$$

This method is easier because it involves multiplication rather than long division.

### **?** EXAMPLE E

Find  $x$  to the nearest tenth:



### SOLUTION

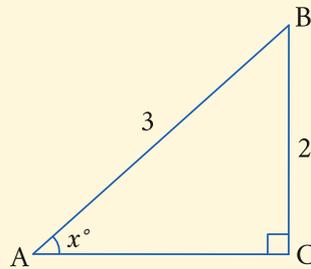
$$\begin{aligned}\sin 14^\circ &= \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}} & 0.2419x &= 7 \\ & & x &= \frac{7}{0.2419} = 28.9 \\ 0.2419 &= \frac{7}{x}\end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 28.9$

Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

**? EXAMPLE F**

Find  $x$  to the nearest degree:



**SOLUTION**

$$\sin x^\circ = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}}$$

$$\sin x^\circ = \frac{2}{3} = 0.6667$$

In the table we look in the sine column for the value closest to 0.6667:

Angle	Sine
.	.
.	.
41°	0.6561
42°	0.6691
.	.

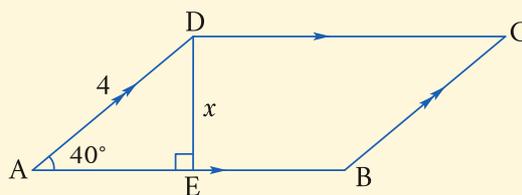
0.6667 is closest to 0.6691 because  $0.6691 - 0.6667 = 0.0024$  whereas  $0.6667 - 0.6561 = 0.0106$ . Therefore  $x^\circ = 42^\circ$ , to the nearest degree.

If you are using a calculator, you will need to use the INV, SHIFT, or 2nd key followed by the sin key, depending on the calculator, followed by  $2/3$ . Some calculators might have a built in sine inverse key. Some calculators might require you to enter the  $2/3$  first.

**ANSWER:**  $x = 42$

**? EXAMPLE G**

Find  $x$  to the nearest tenth:



Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

**SOLUTION**

$$\sin 40^\circ = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}}$$

$$0.6428 = \frac{x}{4}$$

$$(4)(0.6428) = \frac{x}{\cancel{4}}$$

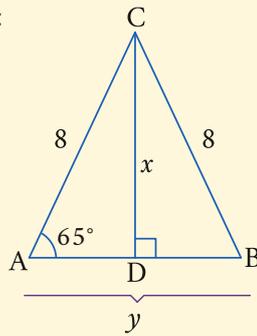
$$2.5712 = x$$

$$2.6 = x$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 2.6$ .

**? EXAMPLE H**

Find  $x$  and  $y$  to the nearest tenth:



**SOLUTION**

$$\sin 65^\circ = \frac{\text{opp}}{\text{hyp}}$$

$$0.9063 = \frac{x}{8}$$

$$(8)(0.9063) = \frac{x}{\cancel{8}}$$

$$7.2504 = x$$

$$7.3 = x$$

To find  $y$  we first find  $AD$ :

$$\cos 65^\circ = \frac{\text{adj}}{\text{hyp}}$$

$$0.4226 = \frac{AD}{8}$$

$$(8)(0.4226) = \frac{AD}{\cancel{8}}$$

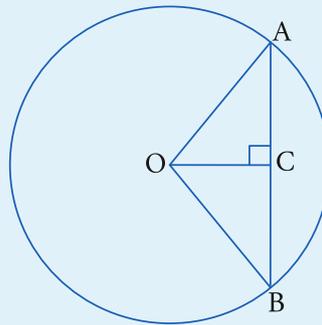
$$3.3808 = AD$$

Since  $AC = BC = 8$  we have  $\angle A = \angle B = 65^\circ$ . Therefore  $BD = AD = 3.3808$ .  
 $y = AD + BD = 3.3808 + 3.3808 = 6.7616 = 6.8$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x = 7.3, y = 6.8$ .


**HISTORICAL NOTE**

The first table of trigonometric values was constructed by the Greek astronomer Hipparchus (c.180 - 125 B.C.). Hipparchus assumed the vertex of each angle to be the center of a circle, as  $\angle AOB$  is shown to be in the circle of Figure 1. Depending on the number of degrees in  $\angle AOB$ , his table would give the length of the chord  $AB$  relative to the radius of the circle. Today we would measure  $\angle AOC$  instead of  $\angle AOB$  and use the half chord  $AC$  instead of  $AB$ . The ratio  $AC/AO$  is then just the sine of  $\angle AOC$ .



**Figure 1.** The table of Hipparchus gave the length of the chord  $AB$  relative to the radius  $AO$  for each angle  $AOB$ .

Hipparchus obtained some of the values for his table from the properties of special geometric figures, such as the  $30^\circ-60^\circ-90^\circ$  triangle and the  $45^\circ-45^\circ-90^\circ$  triangle. The rest of the values were obtained from those already known by using trigonometric identities and approximation. The identities he used were essentially the half-angle and sum and difference formulas which students encounter in modern trigonometry courses.

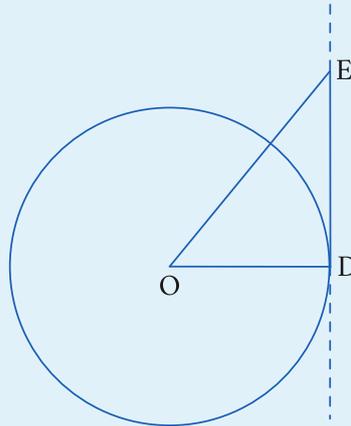
The trigonometry of the Greeks and later of the Hindus and the Arabs, was based primarily on the sine function. The Hindus replaced the table of chords of Hipparchus with a table of half chords. The term **sine** is derived from a Hindu word meaning "half-chord."

Gradually the right triangle replaced the chords of circles as the basis of trigonometric definitions. The **cosine** is just the sine of the complement of the angle in a right triangle. For example the complement of  $60^\circ$  is  $30^\circ$  and  $\cos 60^\circ = \sin 30^\circ = 0.5$ .

A **tangent** is a line which touches a circle at only one point (see Chapter 7). In trigonometry it refers to just that part of the tangent line intercepted by the angle, relative to the radius of the circle. In Figure 2 the tangent of  $\angle DOE$  is the segment  $DE$  divided by the radius  $OD$ .

## Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

The ancient Greeks were probably aware of the tangent function but the first known table of values was constructed by the Arabs in 10th century. The term "tangent" was adopted in the 16th century.



**Figure 2.** The tangent of  $\angle DOE$  is  $DE/OD$ .

Modern trigonometric tables are constructed from infinite series. These were first discovered in the 17th century by Newton, Leibniz and others. For example the infinite series for the sine function is

$$\text{sine } x = x - \frac{x^3}{6} + \frac{x^5}{120} - \frac{x^7}{5040} + \dots$$

where  $x$  is in radians, 1 radian = 57.296 degrees. A good approximation of the sine of an angle can be obtained from the infinite series by summing just the first few terms. This is also the method computers and calculators use to find trigonometric values. The derivation of these formulas is found in calculus textbooks.

Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

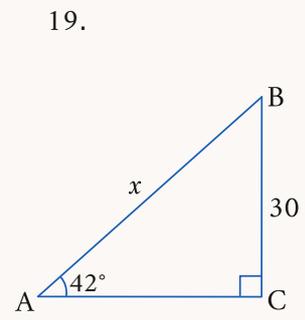
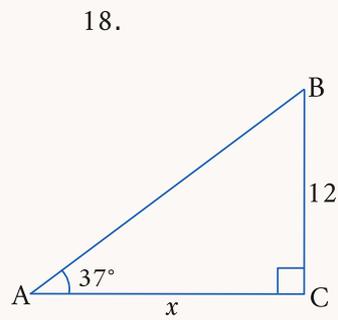
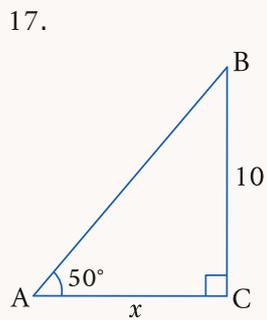
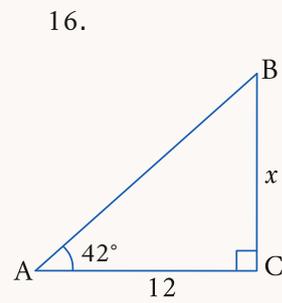
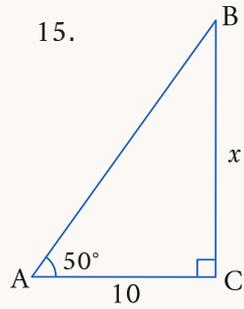
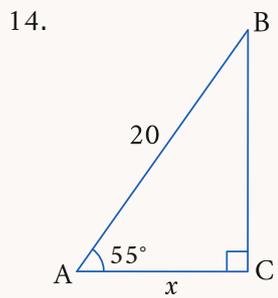
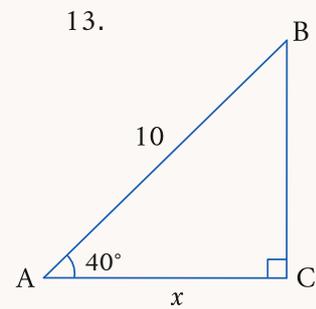
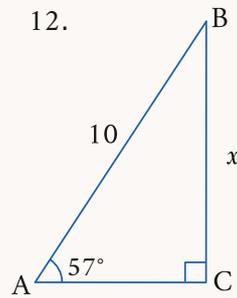
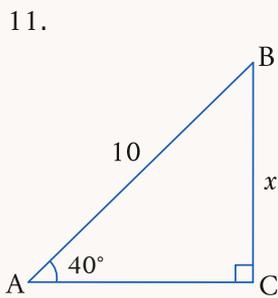


PROBLEMS

1 - 10. Find each of the following using the table:

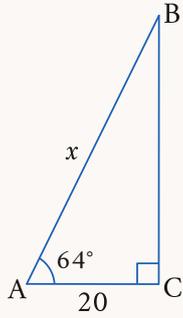
1.  $\sin 10^\circ$       2.  $\sin 30^\circ$       3.  $\cos 80^\circ$       4.  $\cos 60^\circ$       5.  $\tan 45^\circ$   
 6.  $\tan 60^\circ$       7.  $\sin 18^\circ$       8.  $\cos 72^\circ$       9.  $\tan 50^\circ$       10.  $\tan 80^\circ$

11 - 30. Find  $x$  to the nearest tenth:

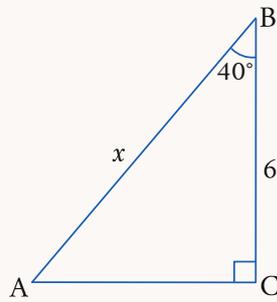


Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

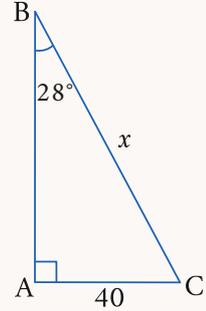
20.



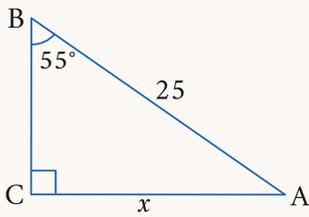
21.



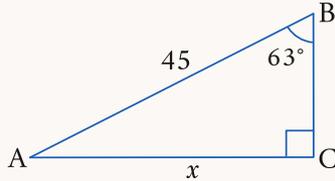
22.



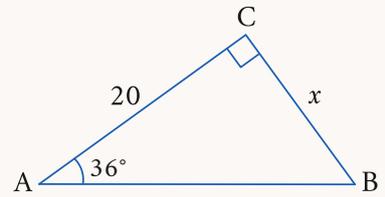
23.



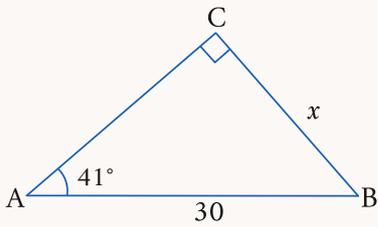
24.



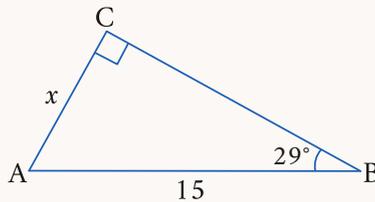
25.



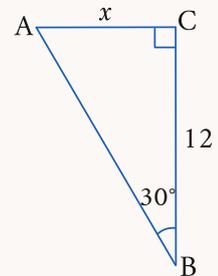
26.



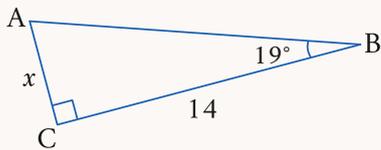
27.



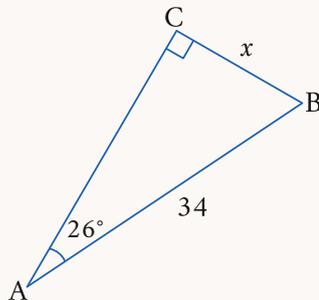
28.



29.



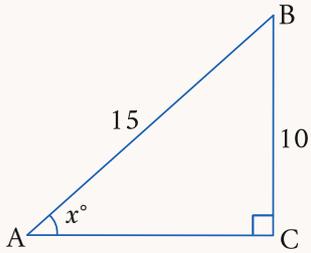
30.



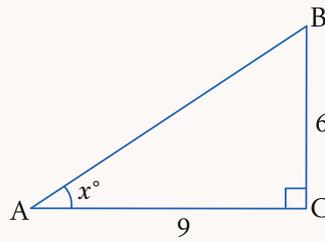
Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

31 - 38. Find  $x$  to the nearest degree:

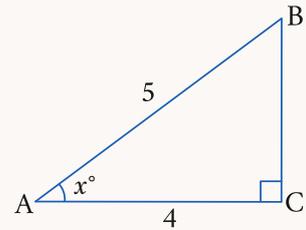
31.



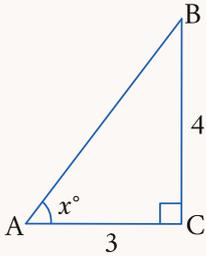
32.



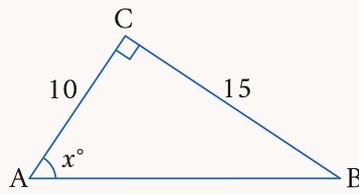
33.



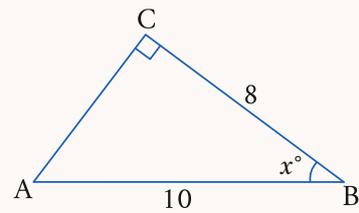
34.



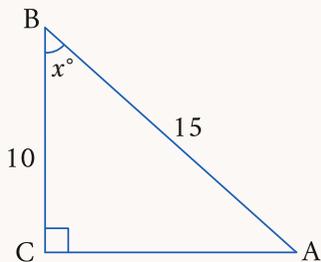
35.



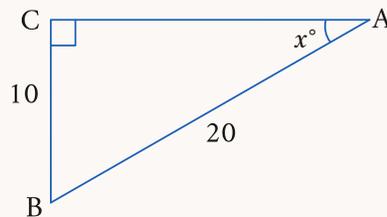
36.



37.

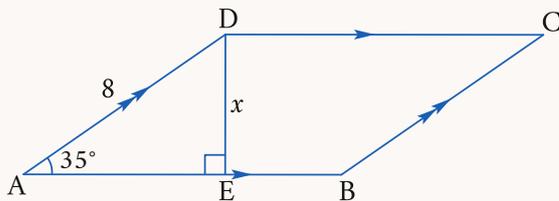


38.

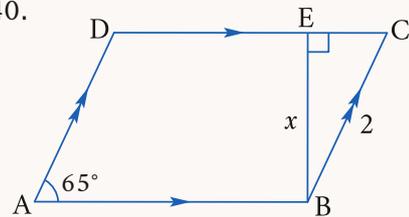


39 - 46. Find  $x$  or  $x$  and  $y$  to the nearest tenth:

39.

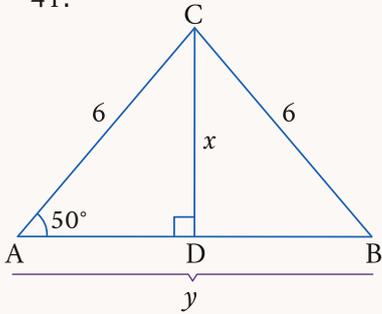


40.

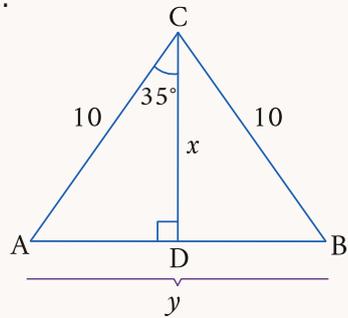


Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

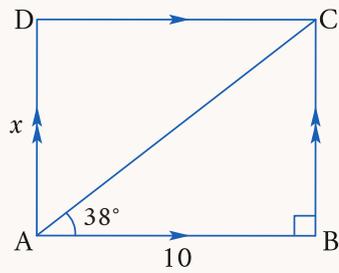
41.



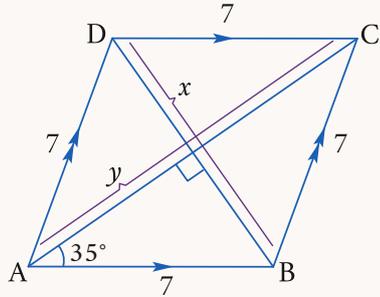
42.



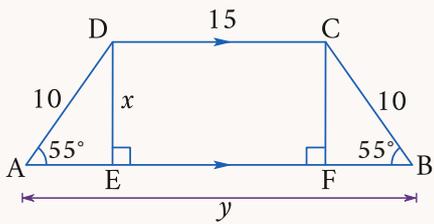
43.



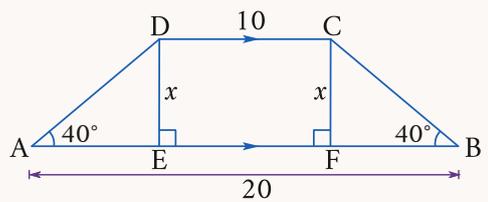
44.



45.



46.



5.3 APPLICATIONS OF TRIGONOMETRY

Trigonometry has many applications in science and engineering. In this section we will present just a few examples from surveying and navigation.

The angle made by the line of sight of an observer on the ground to a point above the horizontal is called the **angle of elevation**. In Figure 1,  $\angle BAC$  is the angle of elevation.

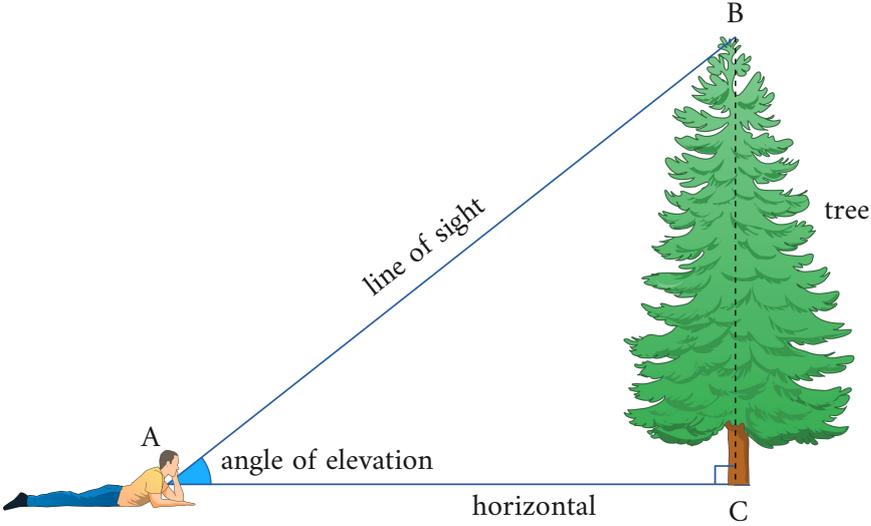
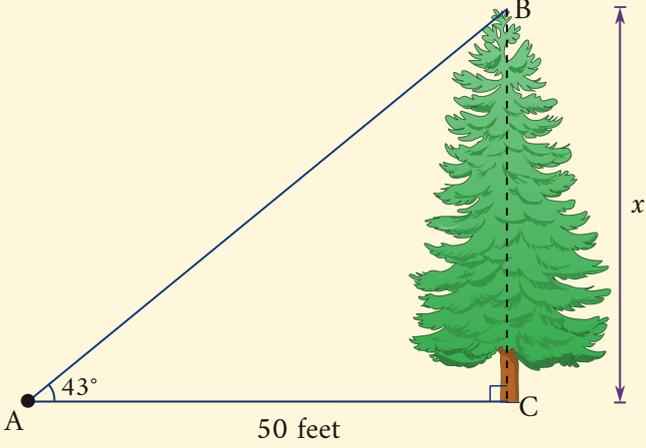


Figure 1. The angle of elevation.

? EXAMPLE A

At a point 50 feet from a tree the angle of elevation of the top of the tree is  $43^\circ$ . Find the height of the tree to the nearest tenth of a foot.



Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

**SOLUTION**

Let  $x$  = height of tree.

$$\tan 43^\circ = \frac{x}{50}$$

$$0.9325 = \frac{x}{50}$$

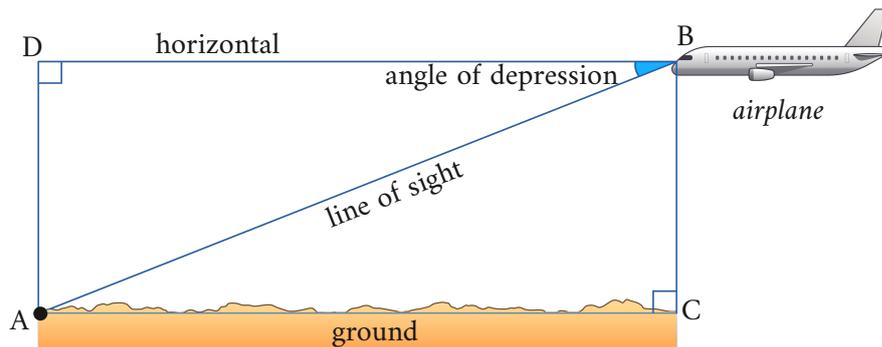
$$(50) 0.9325 = \frac{x}{\cancel{50}} (\cancel{50})$$

$$46.6250 = x$$

$$46.6 = x$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 46.6$  feet.

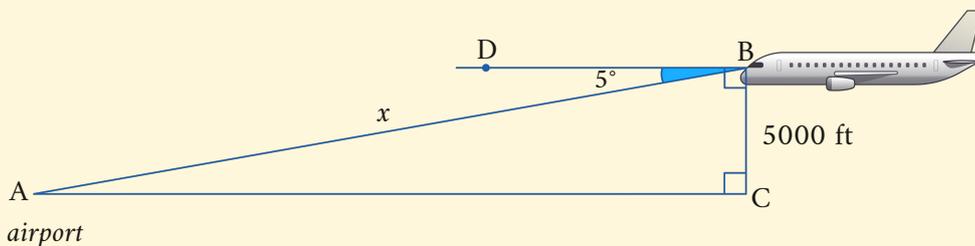
The angle made by the line of sight of an observer above to a point on the ground is called the **angle of depression**. In Figure 2  $\angle ABD$  is the angle of depression.



*Figure 2.* The angle of depression.

**? EXAMPLE B**

From an airplane 5000 feet above the ground the angle of depression of an airport is  $5^\circ$ . How far away is the airport to the nearest hundred feet?



## Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

### SOLUTION

Let  $x$  = distance to airport.  $\angle ABC = 85^\circ$ .

$$\cos 85^\circ = \frac{5000}{x}$$

$$0.0872 = \frac{5000}{x}$$

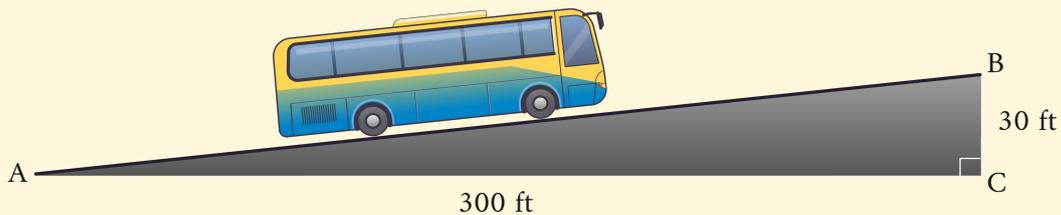
$$0.0872x = 5000$$

$$x = \frac{5000}{0.0872} = 57,300$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 57,300$  feet.

### ? EXAMPLE C

A road rises 30 feet in a horizontal distance of 300 feet. Find to the nearest degree the angle the road makes with the horizontal.



### SOLUTION

$$\tan A = \frac{30}{300}$$

$$\tan A = 0.1000$$

$$\angle A = 6^\circ$$

**ANSWER:**  $6^\circ$ .

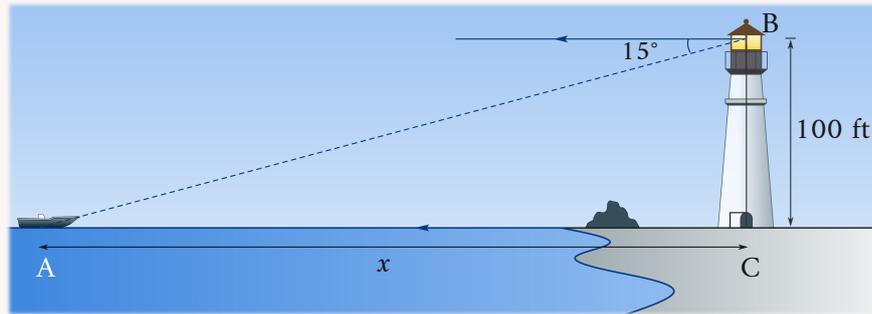


### PROBLEMS

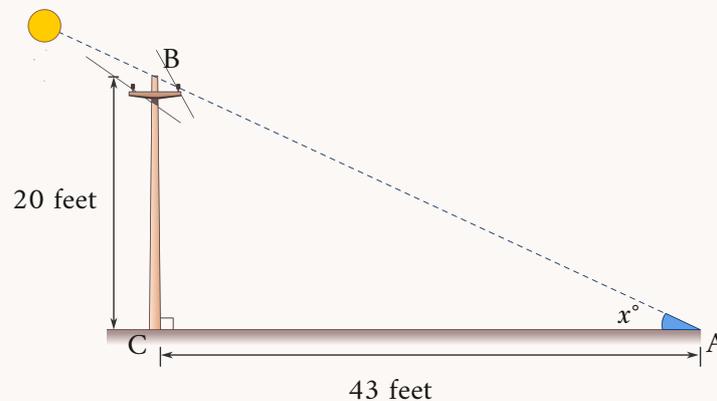
1. At a point 60 feet from a tree the angle of elevation of the top of the tree is  $40^\circ$ . Find the height of the tree to the nearest tenth of a foot.
2. At a point 100 feet from a tall building the angle of elevation of the top of the building is  $65^\circ$ . Find the height of the building to the nearest foot.

Trigonometry of the Right Triangle

3. From a helicopter 1000 feet above the ground the angle of depression of a heliport is  $10^\circ$ . How far away is the heliport to the nearest foot?
4. From the top of a 100 foot lighthouse the angle of depression of a boat is  $15^\circ$ . How far is the boat from the bottom of the lighthouse (nearest foot)?



5. A road rises 10 feet in a horizontal distance of 400 feet. Find to the nearest degree the angle the road makes with the horizontal.
6. If a 20 foot telephone pole casts a shadow of 43 feet, what is the angle of elevation of the sun?



7. A 20 foot ladder is leaning against a wall. It makes an angle of  $70^\circ$  with the ground. How high is the top of the ladder from the ground (nearest tenth of a foot)?
8. The angle of elevation of the top of a mountain from a point 20 miles away is  $6^\circ$ . How high is the mountain (nearest tenth of a mile)?

## AREA AND PERIMETER

## 6.1 THE AREA OF A RECTANGLE AND SQUARE

The measurement of the area of geometric figures is one of the most familiar ways mathematics is used in our daily lives. The floor space of a building, the size of a picture, the amount of paper in a roll of paper towels are all examples of items often measured in terms of area. In this chapter we will derive formulas for the areas of the geometric objects which we have studied.

Area is measured in square inches, square feet, square centimeters, etc. The basic unit of measurement is the **unit square**, the square whose sides are of length 1 (Figure 1). Its area is 1 square inch, 1 square foot, 1 square centimeter, etc., depending on which measurement of length is chosen. The **area** of any closed figure is defined to be the number of unit squares it contains.

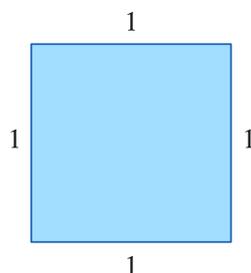


Figure 1. The unit square.

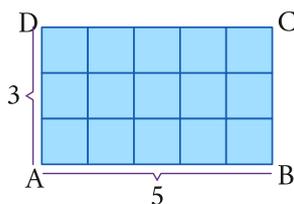
## ? EXAMPLE A

Find the area of a rectangle with length 5 and width 3.

**SOLUTION**

We see from the diagram that the area is  $(5)(3) = 15$ .

**ANSWER:** 15.



This suggests the following theorem:

**THEOREM 1**

The area of a rectangle is the length times its width.

$$A = lw$$

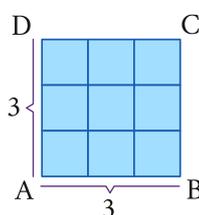
**EXAMPLE B**

Find the area of a square with side 3.

**SOLUTION**

$$\text{Area} = (3)(3) = 3^2 = 9.$$

**ANSWER:** 9.



The formula for a square is now self-evident:

**THEOREM 2**

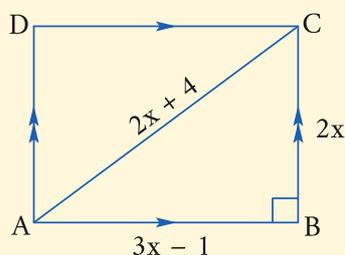
The area of a square is the square of one of its sides.

$$A = s^2$$

The **perimeter** of a polygon is the sum of the lengths of its sides. For instance the perimeter of the rectangle of Example A would be  $5 + 5 + 3 + 3 = 16$ .

**EXAMPLE C**

Find the area and perimeter of rectangle ABCD:



**SOLUTION**

We first use the **Pythagorean Theorem** to find  $x$ :

$$\begin{aligned} AB^2 + BC^2 &= AC^2 \\ (3x - 1)^2 + (2x)^2 &= (2x + 4)^2 \\ 9x^2 - 6x + 1 + 4x^2 &= 4x^2 + 16x + 16 \\ 9x^2 - 22x - 15 &= 0 \\ (9x + 5)(x - 3) &= 0 \\ 9x + 5 = 0 & \quad x - 3 = 0 \\ x = -\frac{5}{9} & \quad x = 3 \end{aligned}$$

We reject the answer  $x = -\frac{5}{9}$  because  $BC = 2x = 2(-\frac{5}{9}) = -\frac{10}{9}$  would have negative length. Therefore  $x = 3$ .

$$AB = 3x - 1 = 3(3) - 1 = 9 - 1 = 8. \quad BC = 2x = 2(3) = 6$$

$$AC = 2x + 4 = 2(3) + 4 = 6 + 4 = 10.$$

**CHECK:**

$$\begin{array}{r|l} AB^2 + BC^2 & AC^2 \\ 8^2 + 6^2 & 10^2 \\ 64 + 36 & 100 \\ 100 & \end{array}$$

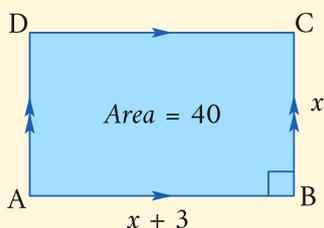
$$\text{Area} = l \cdot w = (8)(6) = 48.$$

$$\text{Perimeter} = 8 + 8 + 6 + 6 = 28.$$

**ANSWER:** Area = 48, Perimeter = 28.

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find  $x$ :



**SOLUTION**

$$\text{Area} = l \cdot w$$

$$40 = (x + 3)(x)$$

$$40 = (x^2 + 3x)$$

$$0 = x^2 + 3x - 40$$

$$0 = (x - 5)(x + 8)$$

$$0 = x - 5 \quad x = -8$$

We reject  $x = -8$  because side  $BC = x$  of the rectangle would be negative.

**ANSWER:**  $x = 5$ .

**CHECK:**

$$x = 5$$

$$\text{Area} = l \cdot w$$

$$40 \quad | \quad (x + 3)(x)$$

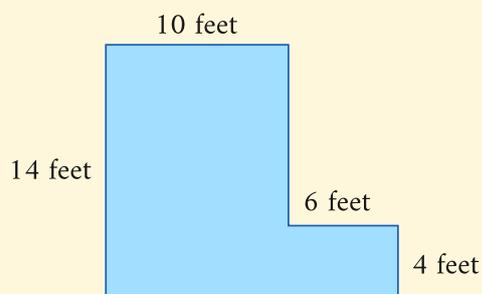
$$40 \quad | \quad (5 + 3)(5)$$

$$40 \quad | \quad (8)(5)$$

$$40$$

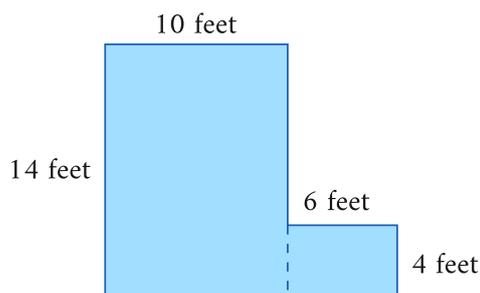
**? EXAMPLE E**

An L-shaped room has the dimensions indicated in the diagram. How many one by one foot tiles are needed to tile the floor?



**SOLUTION**

Divide the room into two rectangles as shown.



$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area of room} &= \text{Area of large rectangle} + \text{Area of small rectangle} \\ &= (14)(10) + (6)(4) \\ &= 140 + 24 \\ &= 164 \text{ square feet} \end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER:** 164.



**HISTORICAL NOTE**

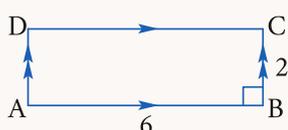
The need to measure land areas was one of the ancient problems which led to the development of geometry. Both the early Egyptians and Babylonians had formulas for the areas of rectangles, triangles and trapezoids, but some of their formulas were not entirely accurate. The formulas in this chapter were known to the Greeks and are found in Euclid's *Elements*.



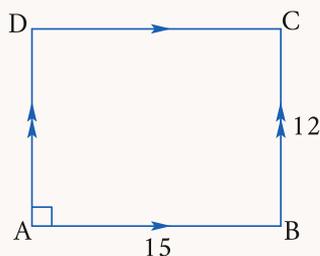
**PROBLEMS**

1 - 14. Find the area and perimeter of ABCD:

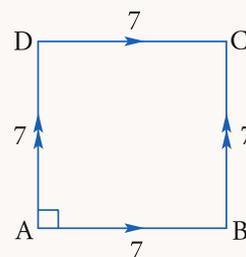
1.



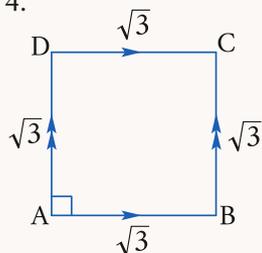
2.



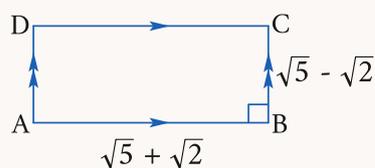
3.



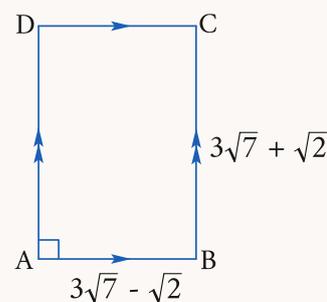
4.



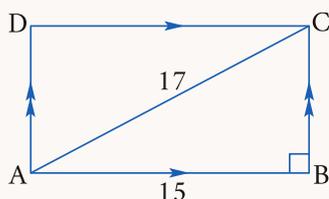
5.



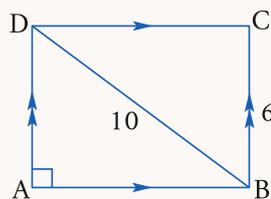
6.



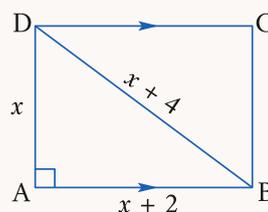
7.



8.

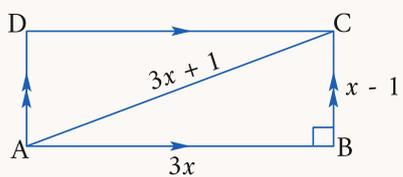


9.

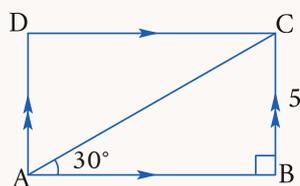


Area and Perimeter

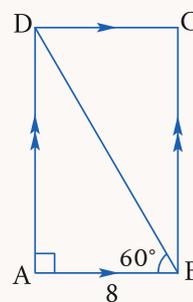
10.



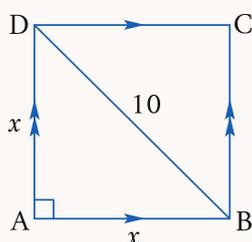
11.



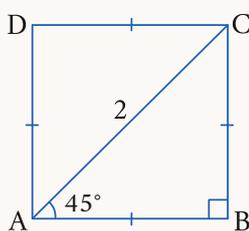
12.



13.

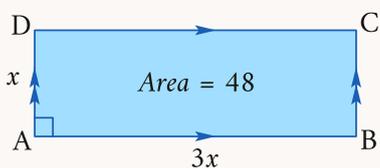


14.

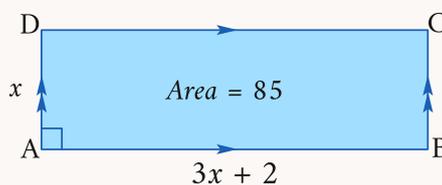


15 - 18. Find  $x$ :

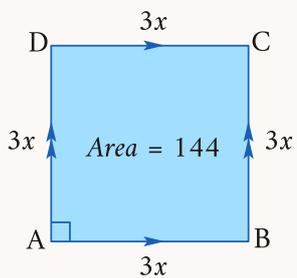
15.



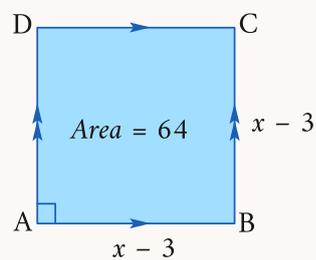
16.



17.



18.



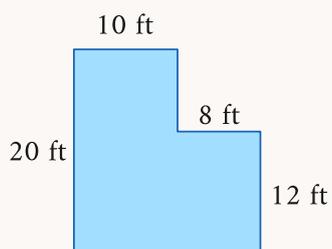
Area and Perimeter

19. A football field has length 300 feet and width 160 feet. What is the area?

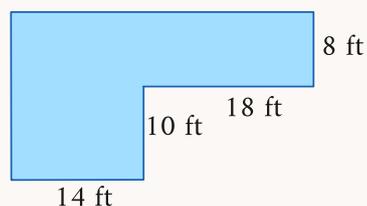
20. A tennis court is 78 feet long and 36 feet wide. What is the area?

21 - 24. How many one by one foot tiles are needed to tile each of the following rooms?

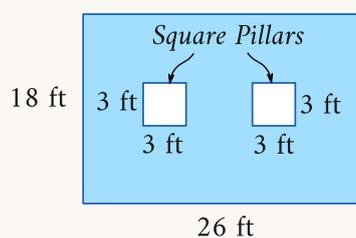
21.



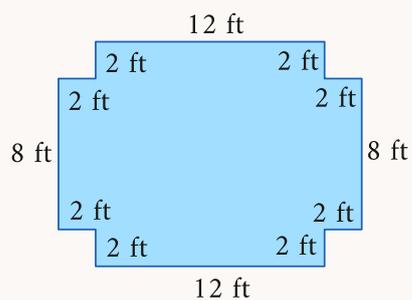
22.



23.



24.



25. A concrete slab weighs 60 pounds per square foot. What is the total weight of a rectangular slab 10 feet long and 3 feet wide?

26. A rectangular piece of plywood is 8 by 10 feet. If the plywood weighs 3 pounds per square foot, what is the weight of the whole piece?

## 6.2 THE AREA OF A PARALLELOGRAM

In parallelogram ABCD of Figure 1, side AB is called the **base** and the line segment DE is called the **height** or **altitude**. The base may be any side of the parallelogram, though it is usually chosen to be the side on which the parallelogram appears to be resting. The height is a line drawn perpendicular to the base from the opposite side.

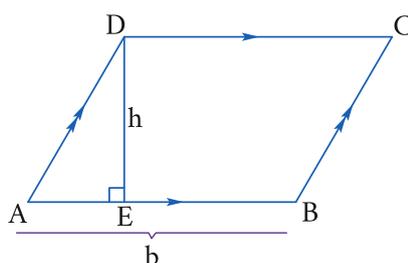


Figure 1. Parallelogram ABCD with base  $b$  and height  $h$ .

THEOREM 1

The area of a parallelogram is equal to its base times its height.

$$A = bh$$

**Proof :**

Draw BF and CF as shown in Figure 2.  $\angle A = \angle CBF$ ,  $\angle AED = \angle F = 90^\circ$  and  $AD = BC$ . Therefore  $\triangle ADE \cong \triangle BCF$  and the area of  $\triangle ADE$  equals the area of  $\triangle BCF$ . We have:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area of parallelogram ABCD} &= \text{Area of } \triangle ADE + \text{Area of trapezoid BCDE} \\ &= \text{Area of } \triangle BCF + \text{Area of trapezoid BCDE} \\ &= \text{Area of rectangle CDEF} \\ &= bh \end{aligned}$$

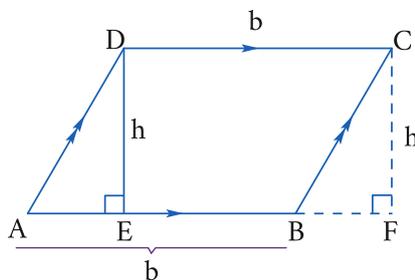
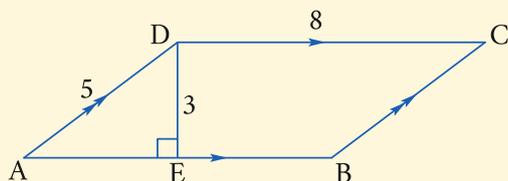


Figure 2. Draw BF and CF.

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find the area and perimeter of ABCD:

**SOLUTION**

$$b = AB = CD = 8, h = 3.$$

$$\text{Area} = bh = (8)(3) = 24.$$

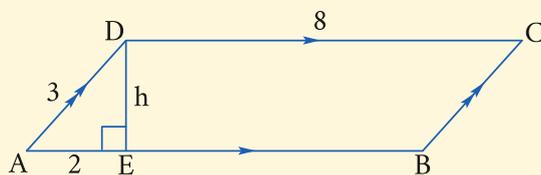
$$AB = CD = 8. BC = AD = 5.$$

$$\text{Perimeter} = 8 + 8 + 5 + 5 = 26.$$

**ANSWER:** Area = 24, Perimeter = 26.

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find the area and perimeter of ABCD:

**SOLUTION**

Apply the **Pythagorean theorem** to right triangle ADE:

$$AE^2 + DE^2 = AD^2$$

$$2^2 + h^2 = 3^2$$

$$4 + h^2 = 9$$

$$h^2 = 5$$

$$h = \sqrt{5}$$

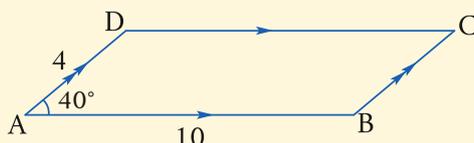
$$\text{Area} = bh = (8)(\sqrt{5}) = 8\sqrt{5}.$$

$$\text{Perimeter} = 8 + 8 + 3 + 3 = 22.$$

**ANSWER:** Area =  $8\sqrt{5}$ , Perimeter = 22.

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find the area and perimeter to the nearest tenth:



**SOLUTION**

To find the area we must first find the height  $h$  (Figure 3). Using trigonometry,

$$\sin 40^\circ = \frac{h}{4}$$

$$(4) 0.6428 = \frac{h}{4} \quad (4)$$

$$2.5712 = h$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= bh = (10)(2.5712) \\ &= 25.712 = 25.7 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Perimeter} = 10 + 10 + 4 + 4 = 28.$$

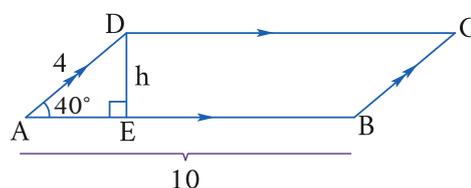
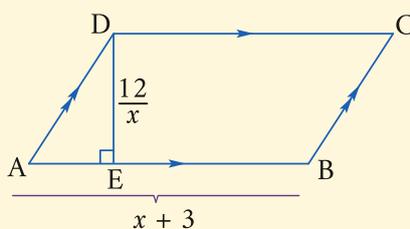


Figure 3. Draw in height  $h$ .

**ANSWER:**  $A = 25.7$ ,  $P = 28$ .

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find  $x$  if the area is 21:



**SOLUTION**

$$A = bh$$

$$21 = (x + 3)\left(\frac{12}{x}\right)$$

$$(x)21 = (x + 3)\frac{12}{x} \quad (x)$$

$$21x = 12x + 36$$

$$9x = 36$$

$$x = 4$$

**CHECK**

$$A = bh$$

$$21 \quad \left| \quad (x + 3)\frac{12}{x}$$

$$\quad \left| \quad (4 + 3)\frac{12}{4}$$

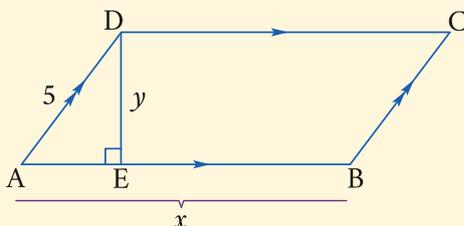
$$\quad \left| \quad (7)(3)$$

$$\quad \left| \quad 21$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 4$ .

**? EXAMPLE E**

The area of parallelogram ABCD is 48 and the perimeter is 34. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :

**SOLUTION**

$$\text{Perimeter} = AB + BC + CD + DA$$

$$34 = x + 5 + x + 5$$

$$34 = 2x + 10$$

$$24 = 2x$$

$$12 = x$$

$$\text{Area} = xy$$

$$48 = 12y$$

$$4 = y$$

**CHECK**

$$\text{Perimeter} = x + 5 + x + 5$$

$$34 \mid 12 + 5 + 12 + 5$$

$$34$$

$$\text{Area} = xy$$

$$48 \mid (12)(4)$$

$$48$$

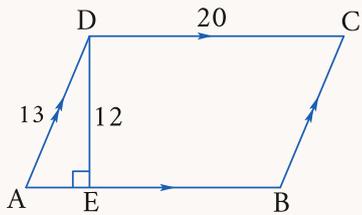
**ANSWER :**  $x = 12, y = 4.$



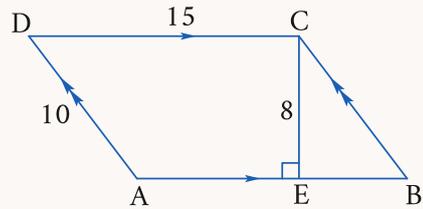
PROBLEMS

1 - 4. Find the area and perimeter of ABCD:

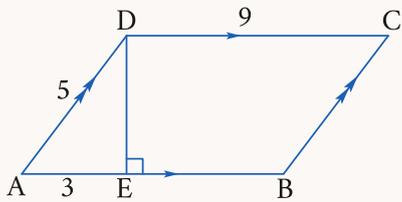
1.



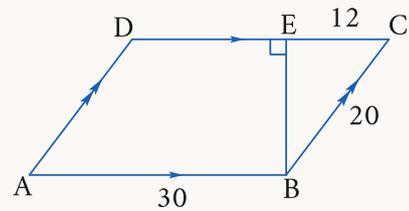
2.



3.

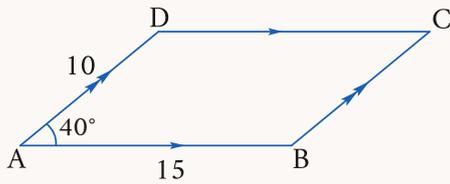


4.

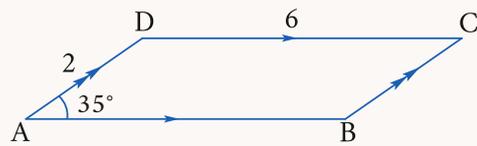


5 - 6. Find the area and perimeter to the nearest tenth:

5.

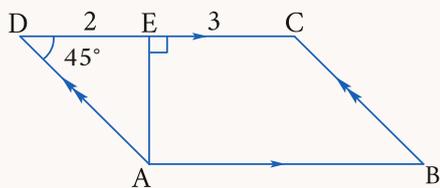


6.

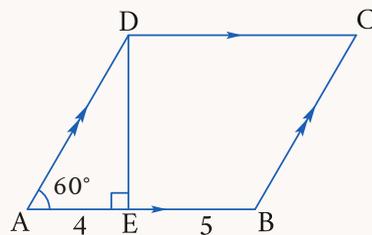


7 - 8. Find the area and perimeter. Leave answers in simplest radical form:

7.

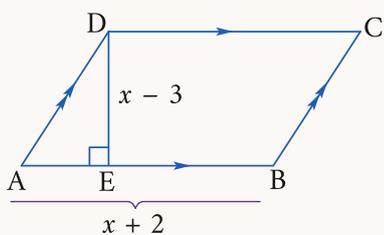


8.

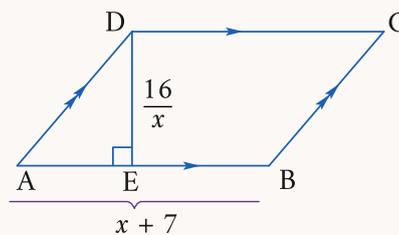


Area and Perimeter

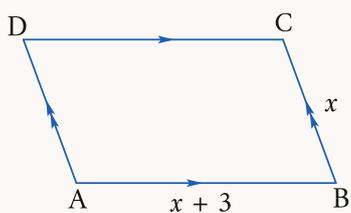
9. Find  $x$  if the area of ABCD is 36:



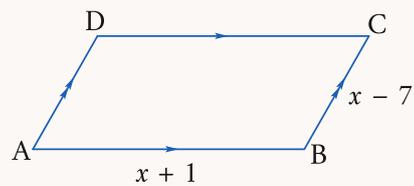
10. Find  $x$  if the area of ABCD is 72:



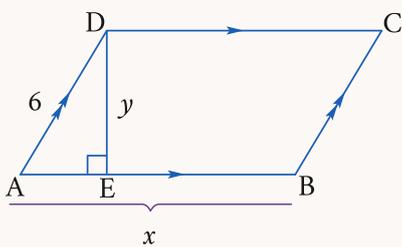
11. Find  $x$  if the perimeter is 22:



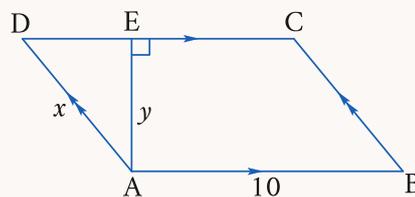
12. Find  $x$  if the perimeter is 40:



13. The area of ABCD is 40 and the perimeter is 28. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



14. The area of ABCD is 40 and the perimeter is 30. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :



6.3 THE AREA OF A TRIANGLE

For each of the triangles in Figure 1, side AB is called the **base** and CD is called the **height** or **altitude** drawn to this base. The base can be any state of the triangle though it is usually chosen to be the side on which the triangle appears to be resting. The height is the line drawn perpendicular to the base from the opposite vertex. Note that the height may fall outside the triangle, if the triangle is obtuse, and that the height may be one of the legs, if the triangle is a right triangle.

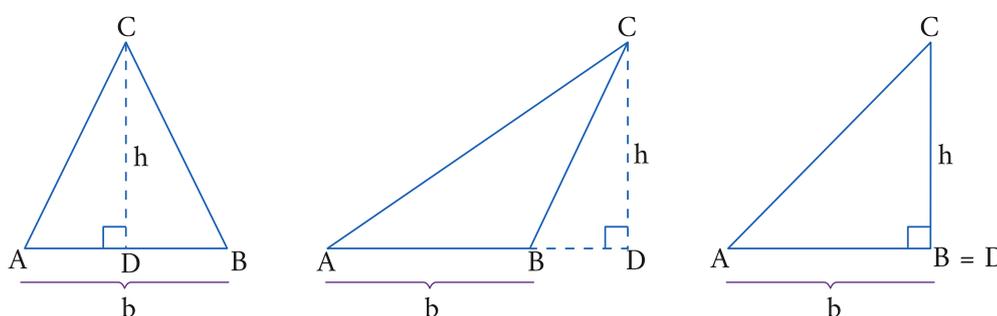


Figure 1. Triangles with base  $b$  and height  $h$ .

THEOREM 1

The area of a triangle is equal to one-half of its base times its height.

$$A = \frac{1}{2}bh$$

**Proof:**

For each of the triangles illustrated in Figure 1, draw AE and CE so that ABCE is a parallelogram (Figure 2).  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle CEA$  so area of  $\triangle ABC =$  area of  $\triangle CEA$ . Therefore area of  $\triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2}$  area of parallelogram ABCE =  $\frac{1}{2}bh$ .

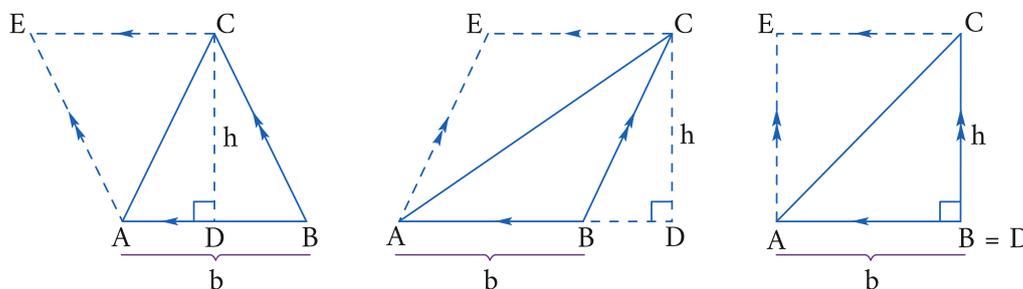
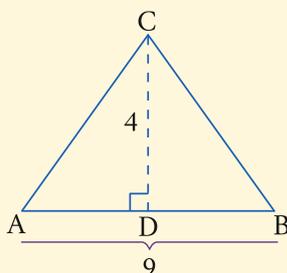


Figure 2. Draw AE and CE so that ABCE is a parallelogram.

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find the area:



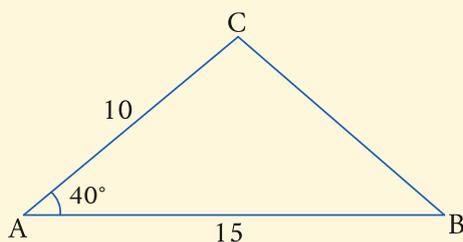
**SOLUTION**

$$A = \frac{1}{2} bh = \frac{1}{2} (9)(4) = \frac{1}{2} (36) = 18.$$

**ANSWER:** 18.

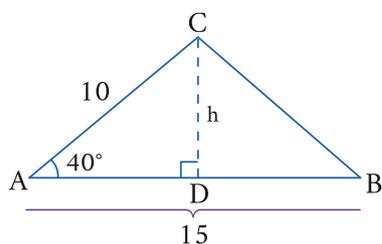
**? EXAMPLE B**

Find the area to the nearest tenth:



**SOLUTION**

Draw the height  $h$  as shown in Figure 3.



**Figure 3.** Draw height  $h$ .

$$\sin 40^\circ = \frac{h}{10}$$

$$0.6428 = \frac{h}{10}$$

$$(10)(0.6428) = \frac{h}{10} (10)$$

$$6.428 = h$$

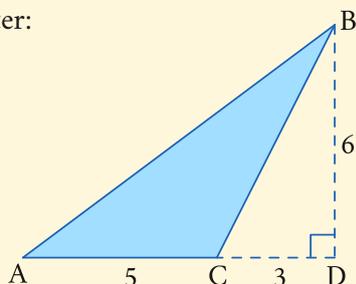
$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} bh$$

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} (15)(6.428) = \frac{1}{2} (96.420) = 48.21 = 48.2$$

**ANSWER:** 48.2 .

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find the area and perimeter:



**SOLUTION**

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} bh = \frac{1}{2} (5)(6) = \frac{1}{2} (30) = 15.$$

To find AB and BC we use the **Pythagorean theorem**:

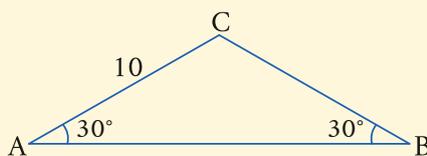
$$\begin{aligned} AD^2 + BD^2 &= AB^2 & CD^2 + BD^2 &= BC^2 \\ 8^2 + 6^2 &= AB^2 & 3^2 + 6^2 &= BC^2 \\ 64 + 36 &= AB^2 & 9 + 36 &= BC^2 \\ 100 &= AB^2 & 45 &= BC^2 \\ 10 &= AB & BC &= \sqrt{45} = \sqrt{9 \cdot 5} = 3\sqrt{5} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Perimeter} = AB + AC + BC = 10 + 5 + 3\sqrt{5} = 15 + 3\sqrt{5}$$

**ANSWER:** A = 15, P = 15 + 3√5

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find the area and perimeter:



**SOLUTION**

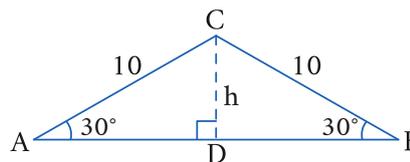
$\angle A = \angle B = 30^\circ$  so  $\triangle ABC$  is isosceles with  $BC = AC = 10$ . Draw height  $h$  as in Figure 4.

$\triangle ACD$  is a  $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle hence

hypotenuse = 2 (short leg)

$$10 = 2h$$

$$5 = h$$



**Figure 4.** Draw height  $h$ .

Area and Perimeter

$$\text{long leg} = (\text{short leg})\sqrt{3}$$

$$AD = h\sqrt{3} = 5\sqrt{3}.$$

$$\text{Similarly } BD = 5\sqrt{3}.$$

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} bh = \frac{1}{2} (5\sqrt{3} + 5\sqrt{3})(5) = \frac{1}{2} (10\sqrt{3})(5) = \frac{1}{2} (50\sqrt{3}) = 25\sqrt{3}.$$

$$\text{Perimeter} = 10 + 10 + 5\sqrt{3} + 5\sqrt{3} = 20 + 10\sqrt{3}.$$

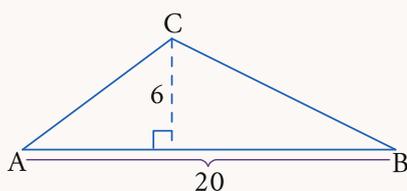
**ANSWER:**  $A = 25\sqrt{3}$ ,  $P = 20 + 10\sqrt{3}$ .



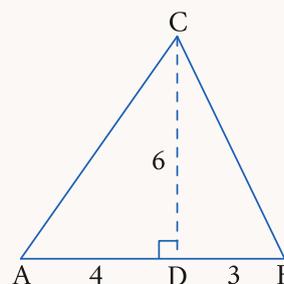
PROBLEMS

1 - 4. Find the area of  $\triangle ABC$ :

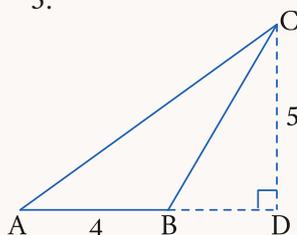
1.



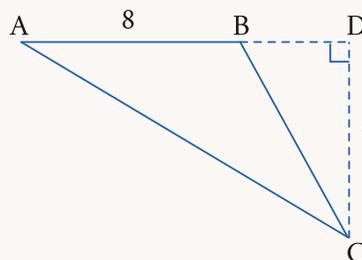
2.



3.

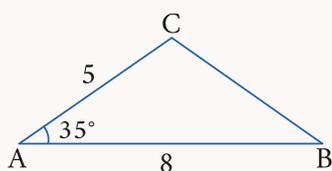


4.

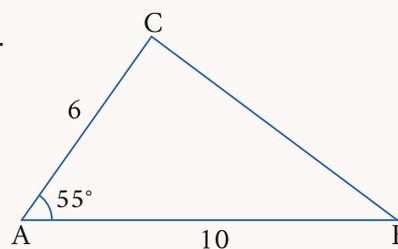


5 - 6. Find the area to the nearest tenth:

5.

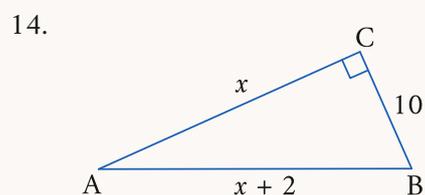
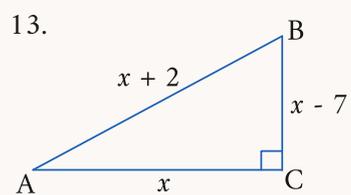
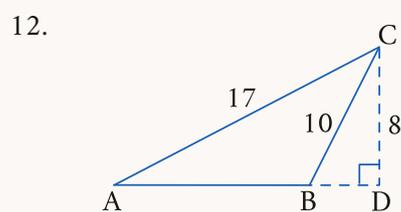
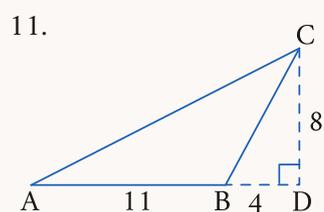
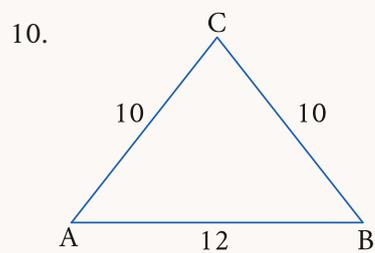
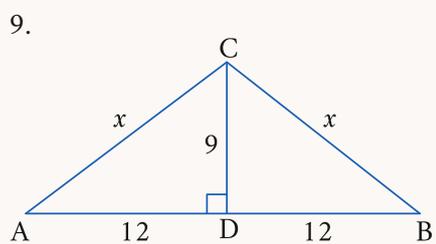
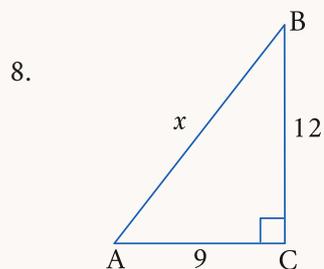
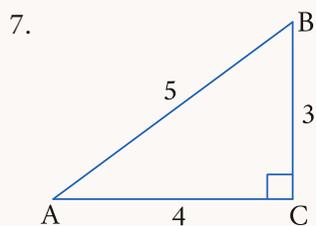


6.

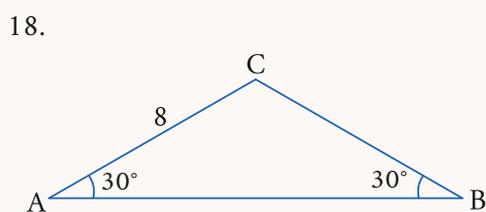
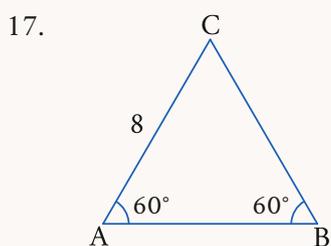
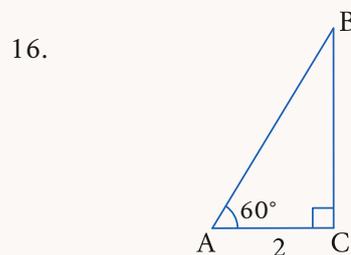
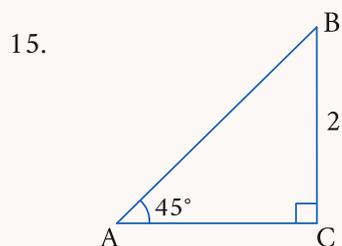


Area and Perimeter

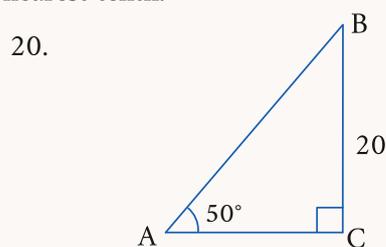
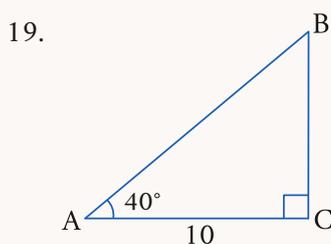
7 - 20. Find the area and perimeter of  $\triangle ABC$  :



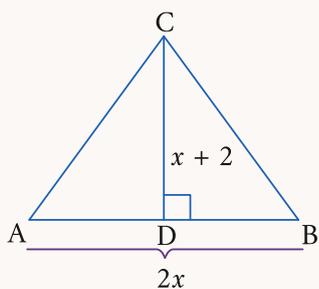
Area and Perimeter



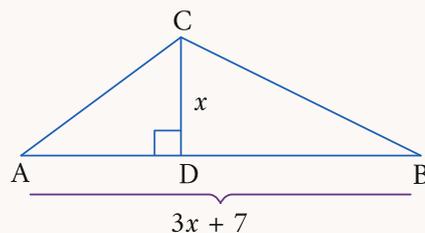
19 - 20. Find the area and perimeter to the nearest tenth:



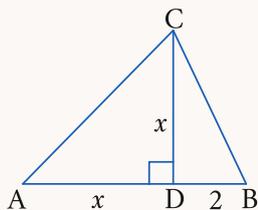
21. Find  $x$  if the area of  $\triangle ABC$  is 35:



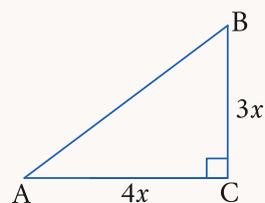
22. Find  $x$  if the area of  $\triangle ABC$  is 24:



23. Find  $x$  if the area of  $\triangle ABC$  is 12:

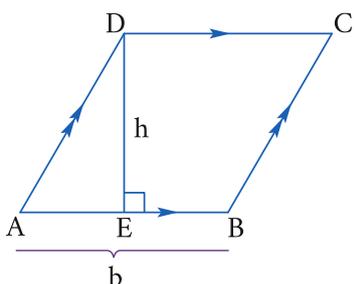


24. Find  $x$  if the area of  $\triangle ABC$  is 108:



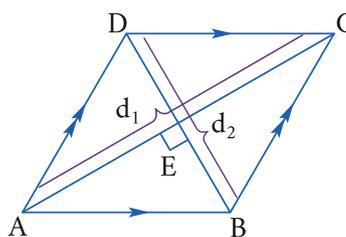
**6.4 THE AREA OF A RHOMBUS**

The area of a rhombus can be found by using the formula for the area of a parallelogram,  $A = bh$ , since a rhombus is a special kind of parallelogram (Figure 1). However if the diagonals are known the following formula can be used instead (see Figure 2):



**Figure 1.**

The area of Rhombus ABCD is  $bh$ .



**Figure 2.**

The area of rhombus ABCD is  $\frac{1}{2} d_1 d_2$ .

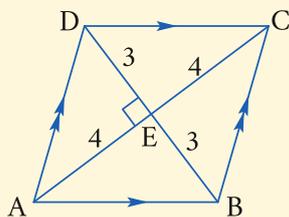
**THEOREM 1**

The area of a rhombus is one-half the product of the diagonals.

$$A = \frac{1}{2} d_1 d_2$$

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find the area of the rhombus:



**SOLUTION**

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} d_1 d_2 = \frac{1}{2} (8)(6) = \frac{1}{2} (48) = 24.$$

**ANSWER :** 24.

**Proof of Theorem 1:**

Referring to Figure 2,

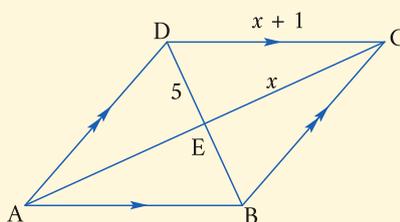
$$\text{Area of } \triangle ABC = \frac{1}{2}bh = \frac{1}{2}(AC)(BE) = \frac{1}{2}d_1\left(\frac{1}{2}d_2\right) = \frac{1}{4}d_1d_2.$$

$$\text{Area of } \triangle ADC = \frac{1}{2}bh = \frac{1}{2}(AC)(DE) = \frac{1}{2}d_1\left(\frac{1}{2}d_2\right) = \frac{1}{4}d_1d_2.$$

$$\text{Area of rhombus } ABDC = \text{Area of } \triangle ABC + \text{Area of } \triangle ADC = \frac{1}{4}d_1d_2 + \frac{1}{4}d_1d_2 = \frac{1}{2}d_1d_2.$$

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find the area and perimeter of the rhombus:



**SOLUTION**

The diagonals of a rhombus are perpendicular so  $\triangle CDE$  is a right triangle. Therefore we can apply the Pythagorean theorem.

$$\begin{aligned} 5^2 + x^2 &= (x + 1)^2 & d_1 &= 12 + 12 = 24. \\ 25 + x^2 &= x^2 + 2x + 1 & d_2 &= 5 + 5 = 10. \\ 24 &= 2x & CD &= x + 1 = 12 + 1 = 13. \\ 12 &= x \end{aligned}$$

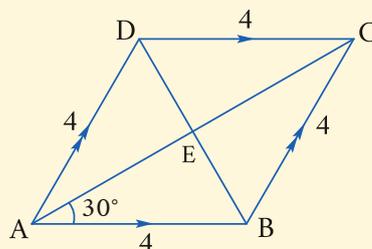
$$A = \frac{1}{2}d_1 \cdot d_2 = \frac{1}{2}(24)(10) = 120.$$

$$\text{Perimeter} = 13 + 13 + 13 + 13 = 52.$$

**ANSWER:** A= 120, P= 52.

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find the area of the rhombus:



**SOLUTION**

As in Example F of section 4.5, we obtain  $AC = 4\sqrt{3}$  and  $BD = 4$ .

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} d_1 d_2 = \frac{1}{2} (AC)(BD) = \frac{1}{2} (4\sqrt{3})(4) = 8\sqrt{3}.$$

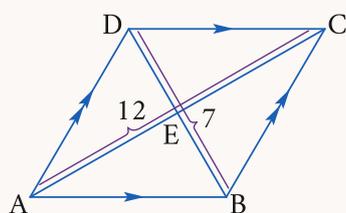
**ANSWER:**  $A = 8\sqrt{3}$ .



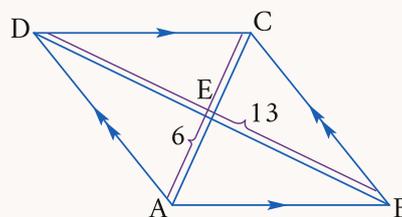
**PROBLEMS**

1 - 2. Find the area of the rhombus:

1.

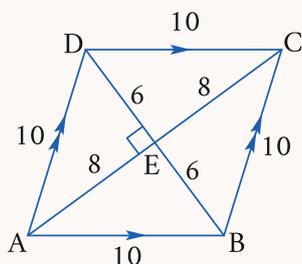


2.

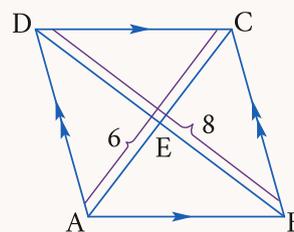


3 - 8. Find the area and perimeter of the rhombus:

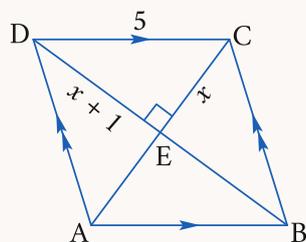
3.



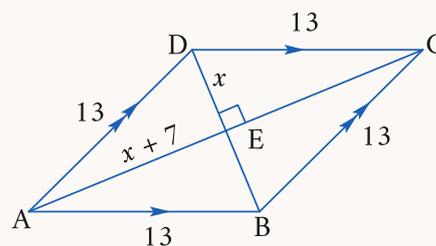
4.



5.

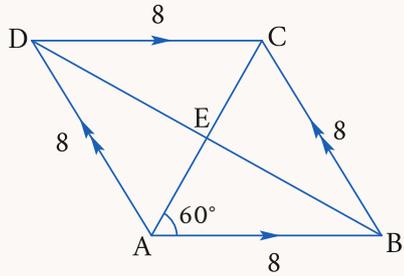


6.

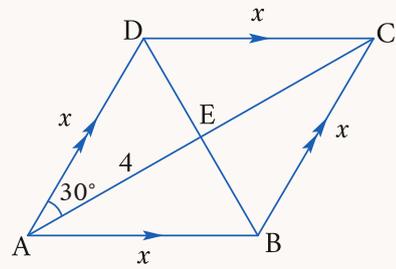


Area and Perimeter

7.

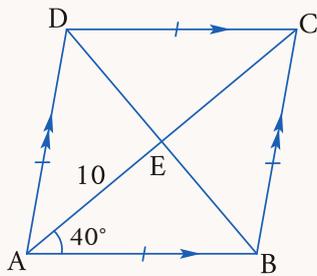


8.

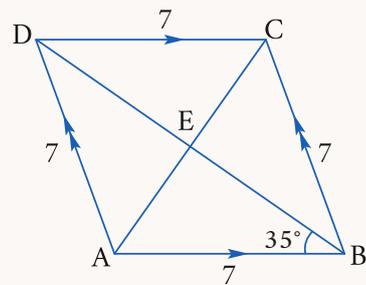


9 - 10. Find the area to the nearest tenth:

9.

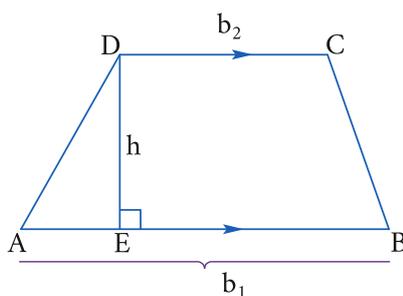


10.



## 6.5 THE AREA OF A TRAPEZOID

In Figure 1,  $b_1$  and  $b_2$  are the **bases** of trapezoid ABCD and  $h$  is the **height** or **altitude**. The formula for the area is given in the following theorem:



*Figure 1.* Trapezoid ABCD with bases  $b_1$  and  $b_2$  and height  $h$ .

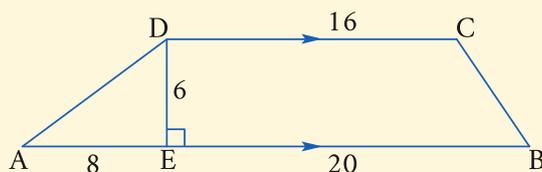
THEOREM 1

The area of a trapezoid is equal to one-half the product of its height and the sum of its bases.

$$A = \frac{1}{2} h (b_1 + b_2)$$

? EXAMPLE A

Find the area:



SOLUTION

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} h (b_1 + b_2) = \frac{1}{2} (6)(28 + 16) = \frac{1}{2} (6)(44) = 132.$$

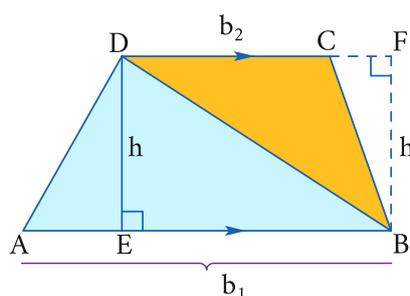
**ANSWER:**  $A = 132$ .

**Proof of Theorem 1:**

In Figure 1 draw BD (see Figure 2). Note that  $CD = b_2$  is the base and  $BF = h$  is the height of  $\triangle BCD$ .

Area of trapezoid ABCD = Area of  $\triangle ABD$  + Area of  $\triangle BCD$ .

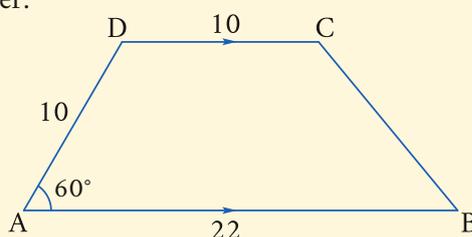
$$\text{Area of trapezoid ABCD} = \frac{1}{2} b_1 h + \frac{1}{2} b_2 h = \frac{1}{2} h (b_1 + b_2).$$



**Figure 2.** Draw BD. CD is the base and BF is the height of  $\triangle BCD$ .

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find the area and perimeter:

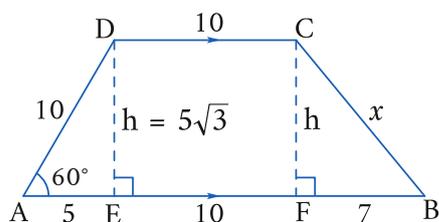


**SOLUTION**

Draw heights DE and CF (Figure 3).  $\triangle ADE$  is  $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle.

So  $AE = \text{short leg} = \frac{1}{2} \text{hypotenuse} = \frac{1}{2} (10) = 5$  and

$DE = \text{long leg} = (\text{short leg})(\sqrt{3}) = 5\sqrt{3}$ .



**Figure 3.** Draw heights DE and CF.

## Area and Perimeter

CDEF is a rectangle so  $EF = CD = 10$ .

Therefore  $BF = AB - AF = 22 - (10 + 5) = 7$ . Let  $x = BC$ .

$$CF^2 + BF^2 = BC^2$$

$$5\sqrt{3}^2 + 7^2 = x^2$$

$$75 + 49 = x^2$$

$$124 = x^2$$

$$x = \sqrt{124} = \sqrt{4\sqrt{31}} = 2\sqrt{31}.$$

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2} h (b_1 + b_2) = \frac{1}{2} (5\sqrt{3})(22 + 10) = \frac{1}{2} (5\sqrt{3})(32) = 80\sqrt{3}.$$

$$\text{Perimeter} = 22 + 10 + 10 + 2\sqrt{31} = 42 + 2\sqrt{31}.$$

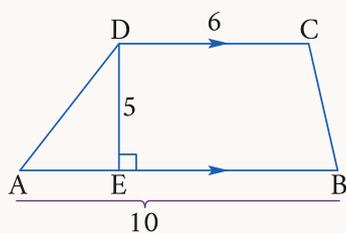
**ANSWER:**  $A = 80\sqrt{3}$ ,  $P = 42 + 2\sqrt{31}$ .



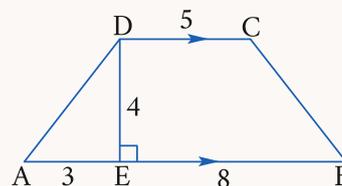
### PROBLEMS

1 - 2. Find the area of ABCD:

1.

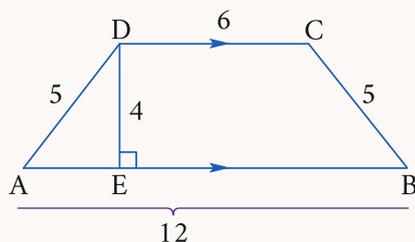


2.

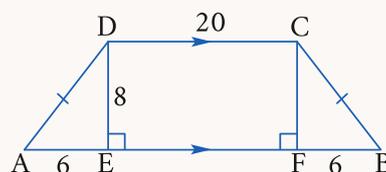


3 - 12. Find the area and perimeter of ABCD:

3.

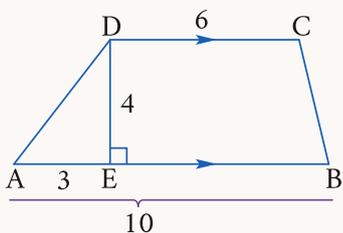


4.

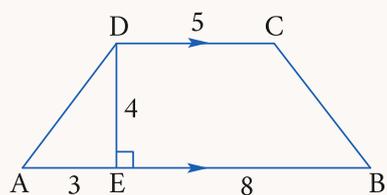


Area and Perimeter

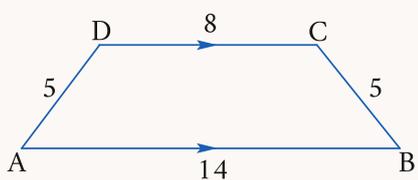
5.



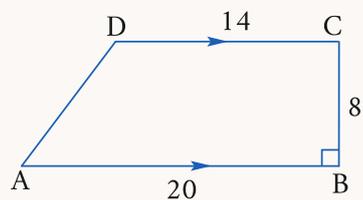
6.



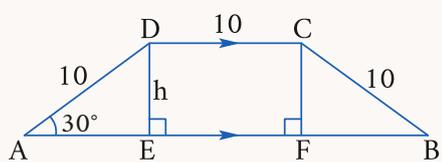
7.



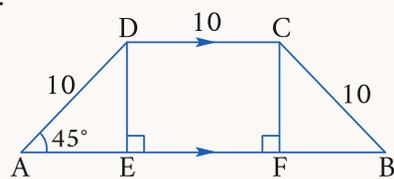
8.



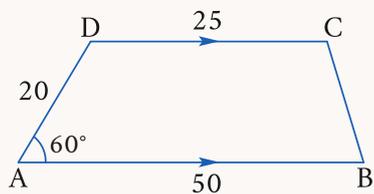
9.



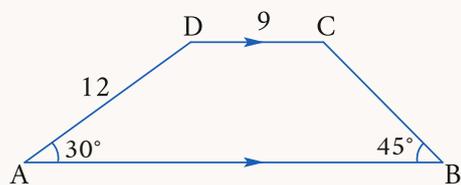
10.



11.

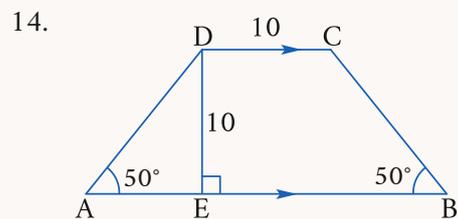
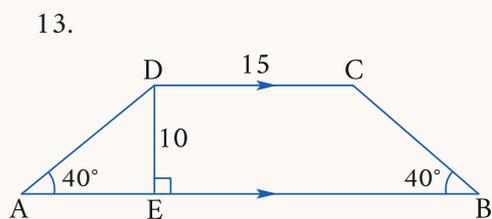


12.

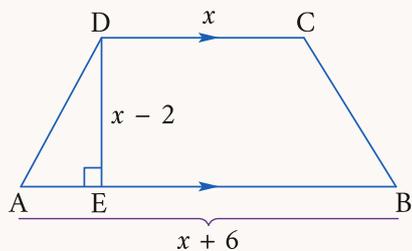


Area and Perimeter

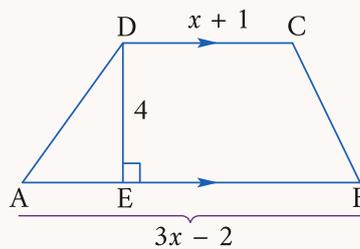
13 - 14. Find the area and perimeter to the nearest tenth of ABCD:



15. Find  $x$  if the area of ABCD is 50:



16. Find  $x$  if the area of ABCD is 30:



# REGULAR POLYGONS AND CIRCLES

## 7.1 REGULAR POLYGONS

A **regular polygon** is a polygon in which all sides are equal and all angles are equal. Examples of a regular polygon are the equilateral triangle (3 sides), the square (4 sides), the regular pentagon (5 sides) and the regular hexagon (6 sides). The angles of a regular polygon can easily be found using the methods of section 1.5.

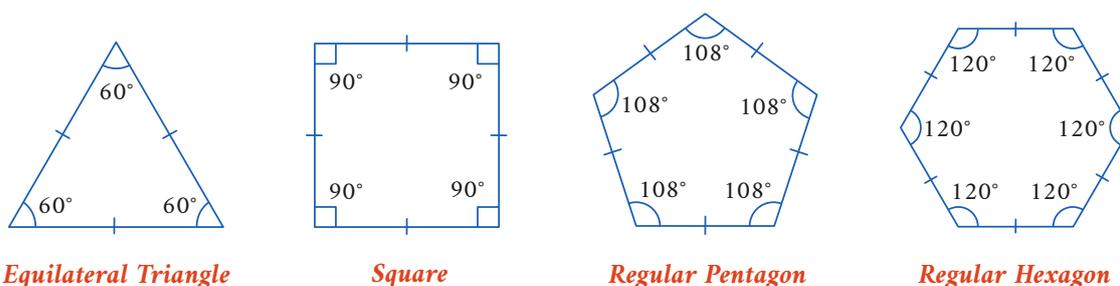


Figure 1. Examples of regular polygons.

Suppose we draw the angle bisector of each angle of a regular polygon. We will find these angle bisectors all meet at the same point (Figure 2).

**THEOREM 1**

The angle bisectors of each angle of a regular polygon meet at the same point. This point is called the **center** of the regular polygon.

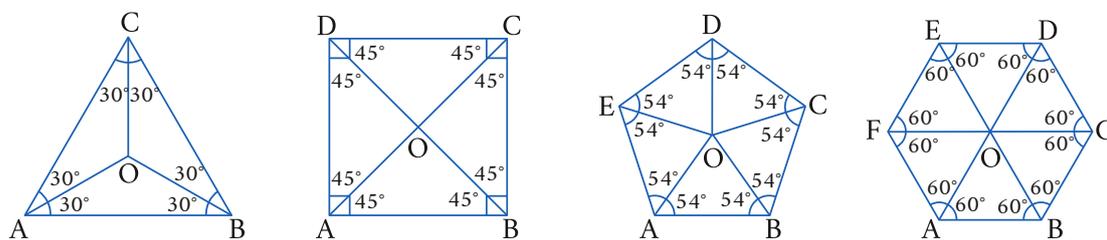


Figure 2. The angle bisectors of a regular polygon meet at the same point, O. O is called the center of the regular polygon.

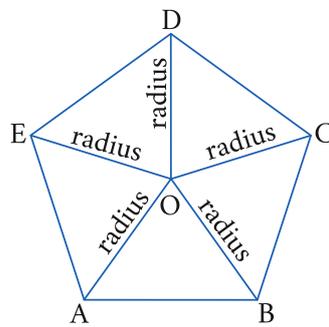
## Regular Polygons and Circles

In Figure 2, O is the center of each regular polygon. The segment of each angle bisector from the center to the vertex is called a **radius**. For example, OA, OB, OC, OD and OE are the five radii of regular pentagon ABCDE.

**THEOREM 2**

The radii of a regular polygon divide the polygon into congruent isosceles triangles. All the radii are equal.

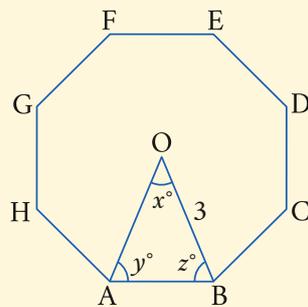
In Figure 3, radii OA, OB, OC, OD and OE divide the regular pentagon into five isosceles triangles with  $OA = OB = OC = OD = OE$ .



**Figure 3.** The five radii of a regular pentagon.

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find the radius CA and the angles  $x^\circ$ ,  $y^\circ$  and  $z^\circ$  in the regular octagon (eight-sided figure):



**SOLUTION**

The radii divide the octagon into 8 congruent isosceles triangles. Therefore  $OA = OB = 3$ .

$$x^\circ = \frac{1}{8}(360^\circ) = 45^\circ$$

$$y^\circ = z^\circ = \frac{1}{2}(180^\circ - 45^\circ) = \frac{1}{2}(135^\circ) = 67.5^\circ \quad \text{ANSWER : } OA = 3, x^\circ = 45^\circ, y^\circ = z^\circ = 67.5^\circ.$$

Theorem 1 and Theorem 2 appear to be true intuitively, but we verify them with a formal proof:

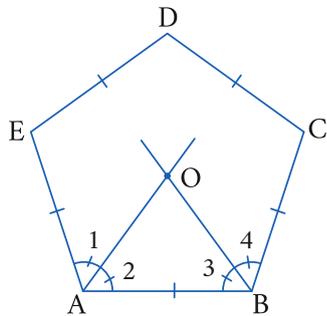
**Proof of Theorem 1 and Theorem 2:**

We will prove these theorems for the regular pentagon. The proof for other regular polygons is similar.

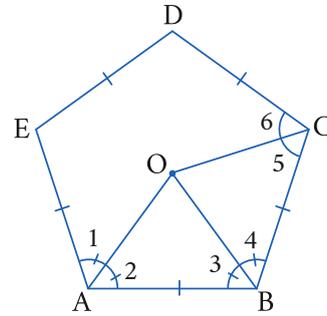
Draw the angle bisectors of  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  as in Figure 4 and call their point of intersection O. We will show OC, OD and OE are the angle bisectors of  $\angle C$ ,  $\angle D$  and  $\angle E$  respectively.

$\angle EAB = \angle ABC$  since the angles of a regular pentagon are equal.

$\angle 1 = \angle 2 = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $\angle EAB = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $\angle ABC = \angle 3 = \angle 4$  since OA and OB are angle bisectors.



**Figure 4.** Draw the angle bisectors of  $\angle A$  and  $\angle B$  and call their point of intersection O.

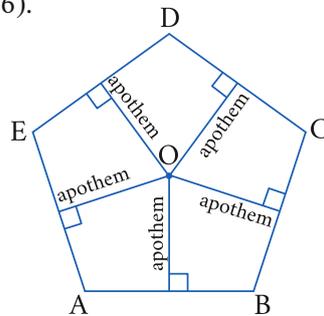


**Figure 5.** Draw OC.

Draw OC (Figure 5).  $AB = BC$  since the sides of a regular pentagon are equal. Therefore  $\triangle AOB \cong \triangle COB$  by SAS = SAS. Therefore  $\angle 5 = \angle 2 = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $\angle EAB = \frac{1}{2}$  of  $\angle BCD$ . So OC is the angle bisector of  $\angle BCD$ .

Similarly we can show  $\triangle BOC \cong \triangle DOC$ ,  $\triangle COD \cong \triangle EOD$ ,  $\triangle DOE \cong \triangle AOE$  and that OD and OE are angle bisectors. The triangles are all isosceles because their base angles are equal. This completes the proof.

A line segment drawn from the center perpendicular to the sides of a regular polygon is called an **apothem**. (see Figure 6).



**Figure 6.** The apothems of a regular pentagon.

**THEOREM 3**

The apothems of a regular polygon are all equal. They bisect the sides of the regular polygon.

**Proof of Theorem 3:**

The apothems are all equal because they are the heights of the congruent isosceles triangles formed by the radii (see Theorem 2). Each apothem divides the isosceles triangle into two congruent right triangles. Therefore each apothem bisects a side of the polygon, which is what we wanted to prove.

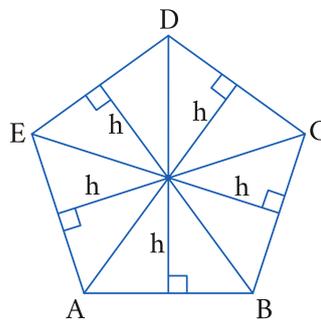


Figure 7. The apothems are the heights of the congruent isosceles triangles formed by the radii.

**EXAMPLE B**

Find the apothem of a regular pentagon with side 20, to the nearest tenth.

**SOLUTION** In Figure 8,

$$\angle AOB = \frac{1}{5} (360^\circ) = (72^\circ),$$

$$\angle AOF = \frac{1}{2} \angle AOB = \frac{1}{2} (72^\circ) = 36^\circ,$$

$$\text{and } \angle OAF = 90^\circ - 36^\circ = 54^\circ.$$

$$\tan 54^\circ = \frac{a}{10}$$

$$(10)1.3764 = \frac{a}{10} (10)$$

$$13.764 = a$$

$$13.8 = a$$

**ANSWER:** 13.8

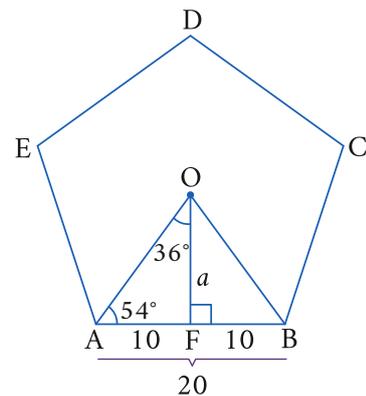


Figure 8. A regular pentagon with side 20.

The apothem of a regular polygon is important because it is used to find the area:

**THEOREM 4**

The area of a regular polygon is one-half the product of the apothem and the perimeter.

$$A = \frac{1}{2} aP$$

**EXAMPLE C**

Find the area of a regular pentagon with side 20, to the nearest tenth.

**SOLUTION**

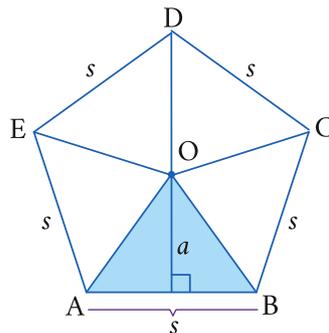
From Example B we know  $a = 13.764$ . The perimeter  $P = (5)(20) = 100$ .  
 Therefore  $A = \frac{1}{2} aP = \frac{1}{2} (13.764)(100) = \frac{1}{2} (1376.4) = 688.2$ .

**ANSWER:** 688.2.

**Proof of Theorem 4:**

We prove the theorem for the regular pentagon. The proof for other regular polygons is similar.

The radii of a regular pentagon divide the regular pentagon into five congruent triangles. The area of each triangle is  $\frac{1}{2} as$ , where  $s$  is the side of the pentagon (Figure 9). Therefore, area of the pentagon =  $5(\frac{1}{2} as) = \frac{1}{2} a(5s) = \frac{1}{2} aP$ , which is the formula we wanted to prove.



**Figure 9.** The area of  $\triangle AOB$  is  $\frac{1}{2} as$ , where  $s$  is the side of the pentagon.

To find the perimeter of a regular polygon, all we have to do is to multiply the length of a side by the number of sides. For example, the pentagon of Figure 8 has perimeter  $P = 5(20) = 100$ . However it is also useful to have a formula for the perimeter when only the **radius** is known:

**THEOREM 5**

The perimeter of a regular polygon of  $n$  sides with radius  $r$  is given by the formula

$$P = 2rn \sin \frac{180^\circ}{n}.$$

**EXAMPLE D**

Find the perimeter of a regular pentagon with radius 10, to the nearest tenth.

**SOLUTION**

A pentagon has  $n = 5$  sides. Using the formula of **Theorem 5**,

$$P = 2rn \sin \frac{180^\circ}{n} = 2(10)(5)\sin \frac{180^\circ}{5} = 100\sin 36^\circ = 100(0.5878) = 58.78 = 58.8.$$

**ANSWER:** 58.8.

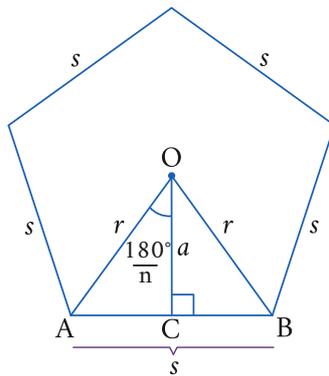
**Proof of Theorem 5:**

Let us label the regular polygon as in Figure 10. Since the radii of the regular polygon divide the polygon into  $n$  congruent triangles (Theorem 2), we have

$$\angle AOB = \frac{1}{n}(360^\circ) = \frac{360^\circ}{n}$$

By **Theorem 3** apothem  $OC$  divides  $\triangle AOB$  into two congruent right triangles, so

$$\angle AOC = \frac{1}{2} \angle AOB = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{360^\circ}{n} \right) = \frac{180^\circ}{n}.$$



**Figure 10.** A regular polygon with radius  $r$  and side  $s$ .

## Regular Polygons and Circles

Applying trigonometry to right triangle AOC we have

$$\sin \frac{180^\circ}{n} = \frac{AC}{r}$$

$$(r)\sin \frac{180^\circ}{n} = \frac{AC}{r}(r)$$

$$r\sin \frac{180^\circ}{n} = AC .$$

Since OC bisects AB,

$$s = 2(AC) = 2r\sin \frac{180^\circ}{n}$$

and therefore

$$P = ns = n(2r \sin \frac{180^\circ}{n}) = 2rn \sin \frac{180^\circ}{n}$$

which is the formula that we wish to prove.

We can also give explicit formulas for the various regular polygons, as in the following table:

Regular Figure	n	$n \sin \frac{180^\circ}{n}$	$P = 2rn \sin \frac{180^\circ}{n}$
<b><i>Triangle</i></b>	3	$3 \sin 60^\circ = 2.5980$	5.1960 r
<b><i>Square</i></b>	4	$4 \sin 45^\circ = 2.8284$	5.6568 r
<b><i>Pentagon</i></b>	5	$5 \sin 36^\circ = 2.9390$	5.8780 r
<b><i>Hexagon</i></b>	6	$6 \sin 30^\circ = 3.0000$	6.0000 r
<b><i>Decagon</i></b>	10	$10 \sin 18^\circ = 3.090$	6.180 r
<b><i>45 - sided figure</i></b>	45	$45 \sin 4^\circ = 3.139$	6.278 r
<b><i>90 - sided figure</i></b>	90	$90 \sin 2^\circ = 3.141$	6.282 r
<b><i>1000 - sided figure</i></b>	1000	$1000 \sin 0.18^\circ = 3.1416$	6.283 r

From the table we can see that as the number of sides increases, the perimeter of a regular polygon becomes approximately 6.28 times the radius. You may also recognize that the value of  $(n \sin 180^\circ)/n$  comes close to the number  $\pi$ . We will return to this point when we discuss the circumference of a circle in section 7.5.

**? EXAMPLE D (REPEATED)**

Find the perimeter of a regular pentagon with radius 10, to the nearest tenth.

**SOLUTION**

From the table

$$P = 5.8780 r = 5.8780(10) = 58.78 = 58.8$$

**ANSWER:** 58.8.

**? EXAMPLE E**

Find the apothem and area of a regular pentagon with radius 10, to the nearest tenth.

**SOLUTION**

In Figure 11

$$\angle AOB = \frac{1}{5}(360^\circ) = 72^\circ \text{ and}$$

$$\angle AOF = \frac{1}{2}\angle AOB = \frac{1}{2}(72^\circ) = 36^\circ.$$

Applying trigonometry to right triangle AOF,

$$\cos 36^\circ = \frac{a}{10}$$

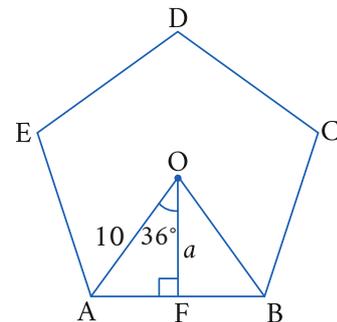
$$(10)0.8090 = \frac{a}{10}(10)$$

$$8.090 = a.$$

From Example D,  $P = 58.78$ . Therefore, by **Theorem 4**,

$$A = \frac{1}{2} aP = \frac{1}{2} (8.09)(58.78) = \frac{1}{2}(475.5302) = 237.7651 = 237.8.$$

**ANSWER:**  $a = 8.1$ ,  $P = 237.8$ .



**Figure 11.** A regular pentagon with radius 10.

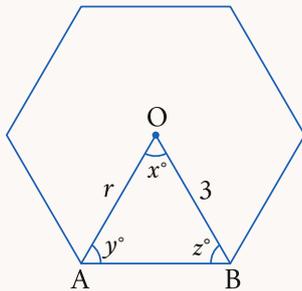
**HISTORICAL NOTE**

In 1936 archeologists unearthed a group of ancient Babylonian tables containing formulas for the areas of regular polygons of three, four, five, six and seven sides. There is evidence that regular polygons were commonly used in the architecture and designs of other ancient civilizations as well. A classical problem of Greek mathematics was to construct a regular polygon using just a ruler and compass. Regular polygons were usually studied in relationship to circles. As we shall see later in this chapter, the formulas for the area and perimeter of a circle can be derived from the corresponding formulas for regular polygons.

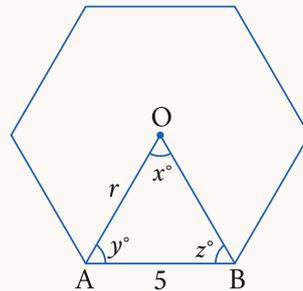
**PROBLEMS**

1 - 6. Find the angles  $x^\circ$ ,  $y^\circ$ ,  $z^\circ$  and radius  $r$  of the regular polygons:

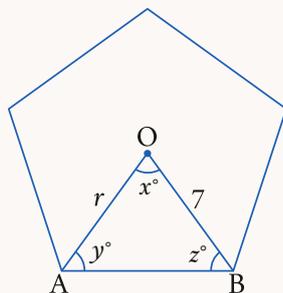
1.



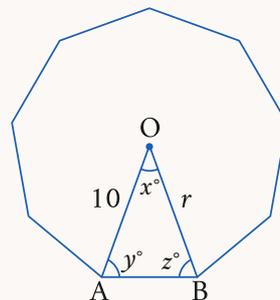
2.



3.

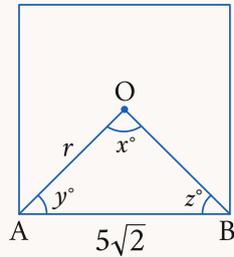


4.

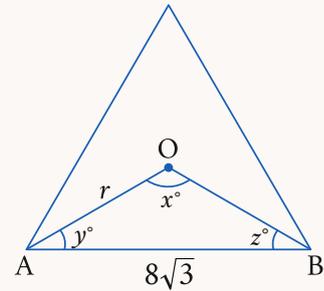


Regular Polygons and Circles

5.



6.



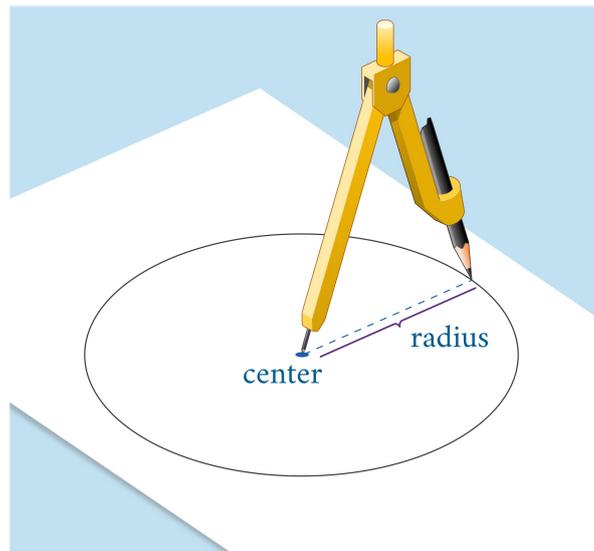
7 - 18. Find the apothem, perimeter and area to the nearest tenth:

7. regular pentagon with side 40.
8. regular pentagon with side 16.
9. regular hexagon with side 20.
10. regular hexagon with side 16.
11. regular decagon (ten-sided figure) with side 20.
12. regular nonagon (nine-sided figure) with side 20.
13. regular pentagon with radius 20.
14. regular pentagon with radius 5.
15. regular hexagon with radius 10.
16. regular hexagon with radius 20.
17. regular decagon with radius 10.
18. regular nonagon with radius 20.

## 7.2 CIRCLES

The circle is one of the most frequently encountered geometric figures. Wheels, rings, phonograph records, clocks, coins are just a few examples of common objects with circular shape. The circle has many applications in the construction of machinery and in architectural and ornamental design.

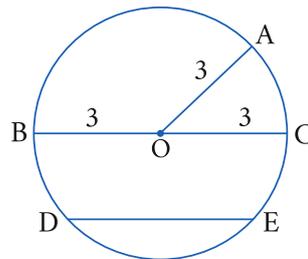
To draw a circle we use an instrument called a **compass** (Figure 1). The compass consists of two arms, one ending in a sharp metal point and the other attached to a pencil. We draw the circle by rotating the pencil while the metal point is held so that it does not move. The position of the metal point is called the **center** of the circle. The distance between the center and the tip of the pencil is called the **radius** of the circle. The radius remains the same as the circle is drawn.



*Figure 1.* Using a compass to draw a circle.

The method of constructing a circle suggests the following definition:  
A **circle** is a figure consisting of all points which are a given distance from a fixed point called the **center**. For example the circle in Figure 2 consists of all points which are a distance of 3 from the center O. The **radius** is the distance of any point on the circle from the center.

The circle in Figure 2 has radius 3. The term **radius** is also used to denote any of the **line segments** from a point on the circle to the center. In Figure 2, each of the line segments OA, OB and OC is a radius. It follows from the definition of circle that all radii of a circle are equal. So in Figure 2 the three radii OA, OB and OC are all equal to 3.

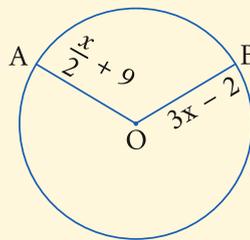


**Figure 2.** A circle with radius 3.

A circle is usually named for its center. The circle in Figure 2 is called **circle O**. A **chord** is a line segment joining two points on a circle. In Figure 2, DE is a chord. A **diameter** is a chord which passes through the center. BC is a diameter. A diameter is always twice the length of a radius since it consists of two radii. Any diameter of circle O is equal to 6. All diameters of a circle are equal.

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find the radius and diameter:



**SOLUTION**

All radii are equal so

$$\begin{aligned}
 OA &= OB \\
 \frac{x}{2} + 9 &= 3x - 2 \\
 (2)\left(\frac{x}{2} + 9\right) &= (3x - 2)(2) \\
 x + 18 &= 6x - 4 \\
 22 &= 5x \\
 x &= \frac{22}{5} = 4.4
 \end{aligned}$$

**CHECK**

$$\begin{array}{r|l}
 OA = OB & \\
 \frac{x}{2} + 9 & 3x - 2 \\
 \hline
 4.4 + 9 & 3(4.4) - 2 \\
 2.2 + 9 & 13.2 - 2 \\
 11.2 & 11.2
 \end{array}$$

Therefore the radius =  $OA = OB = 11.2$  and the diameter =  $2(11.2) = 22.4$ .

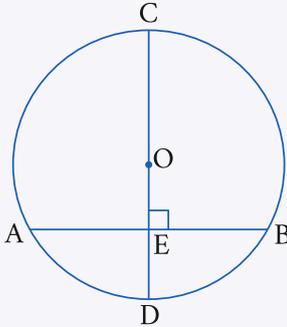
**ANSWER :** radius = 11.2, diameter = 22.4.

The following three theorems show that a diameter of a circle and the perpendicular bisector of a chord in a circle are actually the same thing.

**THEOREM 1**

A diameter perpendicular to a chord bisects the chord.

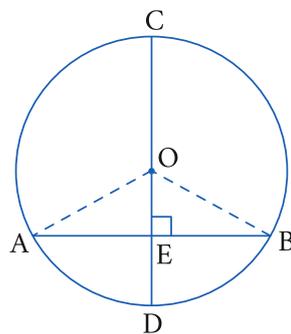
In Figure 3, if  $AB \perp CD$  then  $AE = EB$ .



*Figure 3.* The diameter CD is perpendicular to chord AB.

**Proof of Theorem 1:**

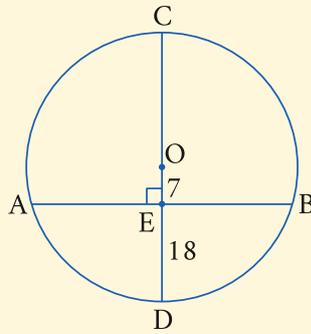
Draw OA and OB (Figure 4).  $OA = OB$  because all radii of a circle are equal.  $OE = OE$  because of identity. Therefore  $\triangle AOE \cong \triangle BOE$  by Hyp-Leg = Hyp-Leg. Hence  $AE = BE$  because they are corresponding sides of congruent triangles.



*Figure 4.* Draw OA and OB.

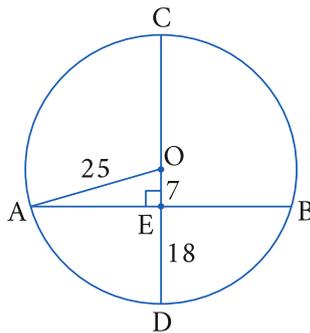
**? EXAMPLE B**

Find AB:



**SOLUTION**

Draw OA (Figure 5). OA = radius = OD = 18 + 7 = 25.  $\triangle AOE$  is a right triangle and therefore we can use the Pythagorean theorem to find AE :



*Figure 5.* Draw OA.

$$AE^2 + OE^2 = OA^2$$

$$AE^2 + 7^2 = 25^2$$

$$AE^2 + 49 = 625$$

$$AE^2 = 576$$

$$AE = 24$$

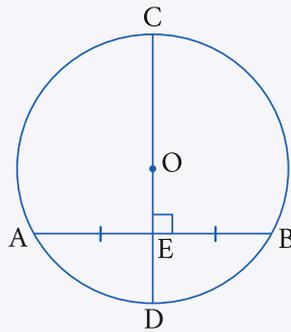
By **Theorem 1**,  $EB = AE = 24$  so  $AB = AE + EB = 24 + 24 = 48$ .

**ANSWER :** AB = 48.

**THEOREM 2**

A diameter that bisects a chord which is not a diameter is perpendicular to it.

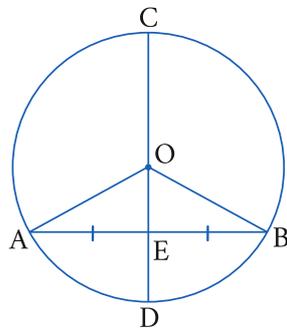
In Figure 6, if  $AE = EB$  then  $AB \perp CD$ .



*Figure 6.* Diameter CD bisects chord AB.

**Proof of Theorem 2:**

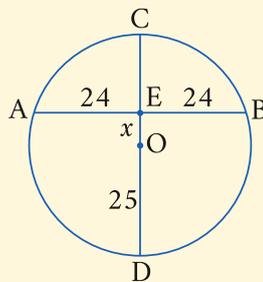
Draw OA and OB (Figure 7).  $OA = OB$  because all radii are equal,  $OE = OE$  (identity) and  $AE = EB$  (given). Therefore  $\triangle AOE \cong \triangle BOE$  by SSS=SSS. Therefore  $\angle AEO = \angle BEO$ . Since  $\angle AEO$  and  $\angle BEO$  are also supplementary we must also have  $\angle AEO = \angle BEO = 90^\circ$ , which is what we had to prove.



*Figure 7.* Draw OA and OB.

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find x:



**SOLUTION**

Draw OA (Figure 8). OA = radius = OD = 25. According to **Theorem 2**,  $AB \perp CD$ . Therefore  $\triangle AOE$  is a right triangle and we can use the Pythagorean theorem to find x:

$$OE^2 + AE^2 = OA^2$$

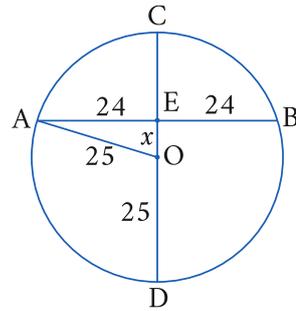
$$x^2 + 24^2 = 25^2$$

$$x^2 + 576 = 625$$

$$x^2 = 49$$

$$x = 7$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 7$ .

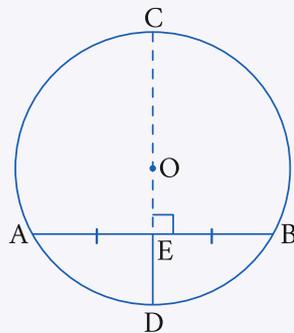


**Figure 8.** Draw OA.

▶ **THEOREM 3**

The perpendicular bisector of a chord must pass through the center of the circle (that is, it is a diameter).

In Figure 9, if  $CD \perp AB$  and  $AE = EB$  then O must lie on CD.

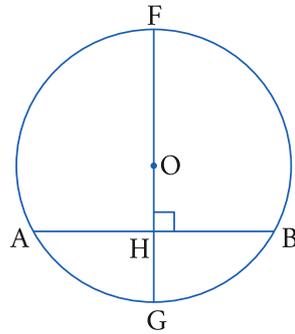


**Figure 9.** If CD is a perpendicular bisector of AB then CD must pass through O.

**Proof of Theorem 3:**

Draw a diameter FG through O perpendicular to AB at H (Figure 10). Then according to **Theorem 1** H must bisect AB. Hence H and E are the same point and FG and CD are the same line. So O lies on CD. This completes the proof.

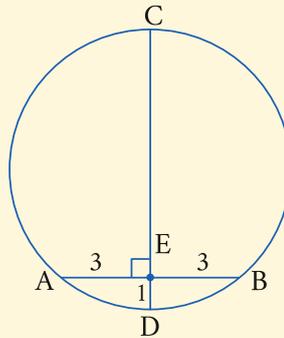
Regular Polygons and Circles



**Figure 10.** Draw FG through O perpendicular to AB.

**? EXAMPLE D**

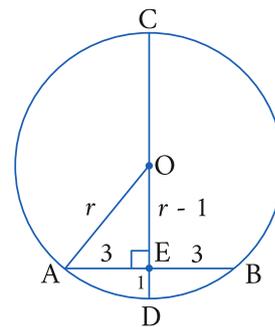
Find the radius of the circle:



**SOLUTION**

According to **Theorem 3**, O must lie on CD. Draw OA (Figure 11). Let  $r$  be the radius. Then  $OA = OD = r$  and  $OE = r - 1$ . To find  $r$  we apply the Pythagorean theorem to right triangle AOE:

$$\begin{aligned} AE^2 + OE^2 &= OA^2 \\ 3^2 + (r - 1)^2 &= r^2 \\ 9 + r^2 - 2r + 1 &= r^2 \\ 10 &= 2r \\ 5 &= r \end{aligned}$$

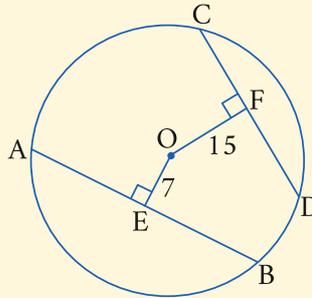


**Figure 11.** Draw OA and let  $r$  be the radius.

**ANSWER:**  $r = 5$ .

**? EXAMPLE E**

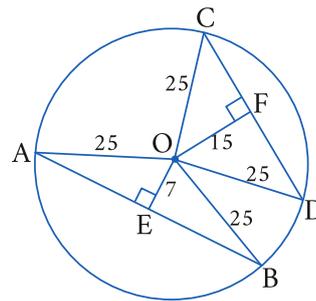
Find which chord, AB or CD, is larger if the radius of the circle is 25:



**SOLUTION**

Draw OA, OB, OC and OD(Figure 12). Each is a radius and equal to 25. We use the Pythagorean theorem, applied to right triangle AOE , to find AE:

$$\begin{aligned} AE^2 + OE^2 &= OA^2 \\ AE^2 + 7^2 &= 25^2 \\ AE^2 + 49 &= 625 \\ AE^2 &= 576 \\ AE &= 24. \end{aligned}$$



**Figure 12.** Draw OA, OB, OC and OD.

Since perpendicular OE bisects AB (**Theorem 1**)

BE = AE = 24 and so AB = AE + BE = 24 + 24 = 48.

Similarly, to find CF, we apply the Pythagorean theorem to right triangle COF:

$$\begin{aligned} CF^2 + OF^2 &= OC^2 \\ CF^2 + 15^2 &= 25^2 \\ CF^2 + 225 &= 625 \\ CF^2 &= 400 \\ CF &= 20 \end{aligned}$$

Again, from **Theorem 1**, we know OF bisects CD, hence DF = CF = 20 and CD = 40.

**ANSWER :** AB = 48, CD = 40, AB is larger than CD.

Example E suggests the following Theorem (which we state without proof):

**THEOREM 4**

The length of a chord is determined by its distance from the center of the circle; the closer to the center, the larger the chord.

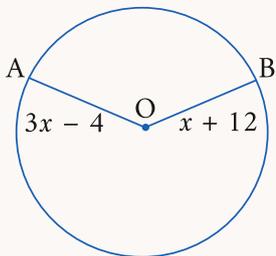
**HISTORICAL NOTE**

The definition of a circle and essentially all of the theorems of this and the next two sections can be found in Book III of Euclid's *Elements*.

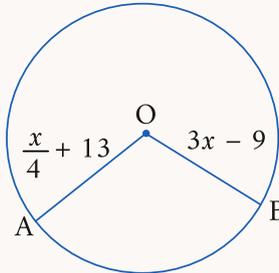
**PROBLEMS**

1 - 2. Find the radius and diameter:

1.

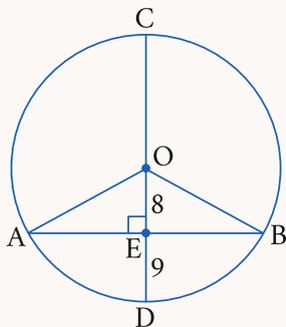


2.

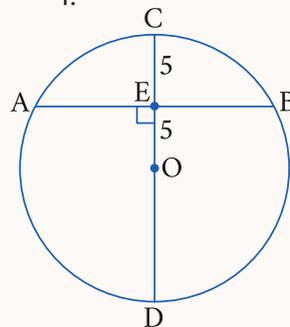


3 - 4. Find AB:

3.



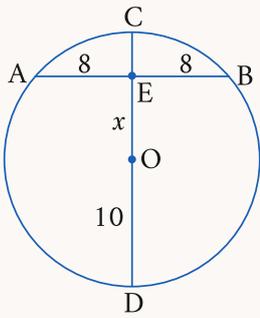
4.



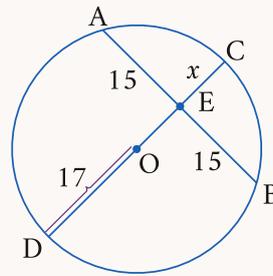
Regular Polygons and Circles

5 - 6. Find  $x$ :

5.

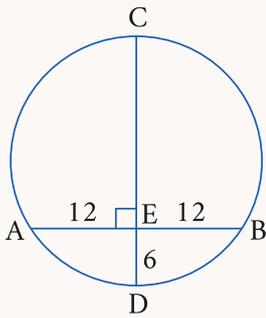


6.

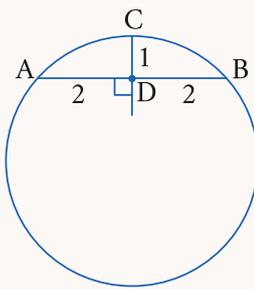


7 - 10. Find the radius and diameter:

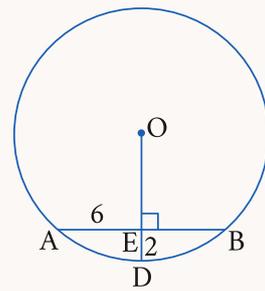
7.



8.

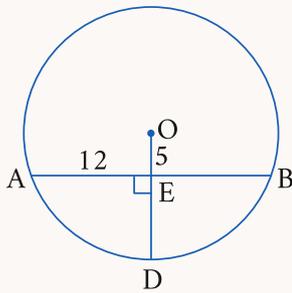


9.

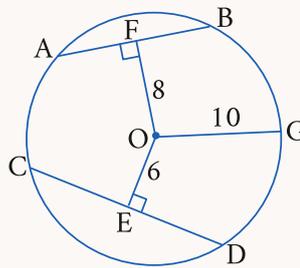


11 - 12. Find the lengths of  $AB$  and  $CD$ :

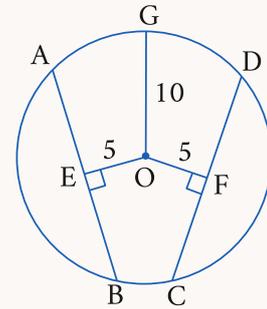
10.



11.



12.



7.3 TANGENTS TO THE CIRCLE

A **tangent** to a circle is a line which intersects the circle in exactly one point. In Figure 1 line  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  is a tangent, intersecting circle O just at point P.

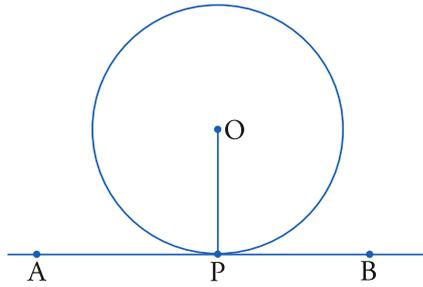


Figure 1.  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  is tangent to circle O at point P.

A tangent has the following important property:

THEOREM 1

A tangent is perpendicular to the radius drawn to the point of intersection.

In Figure 1 tangent  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  is perpendicular to radius OP at the point of intersection P.

? EXAMPLE A

Find x:

SOLUTION

According to **Theorem 1**,  $\angle QPO$  is a right angle. We may therefore apply the Pythagorean theorem to right triangle QPO :

$$6^2 + 8^2 = x^2$$

$$36 + 64 = x^2$$

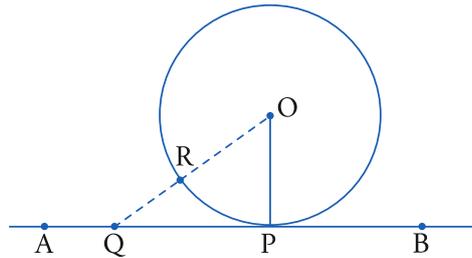
$$100 = x^2$$

$$10 = x$$

ANSWER :  $x = 10$ .

**Proof of Theorem 1:**

OP is the shortest line segment that can be drawn from O to line  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$ . This is because if Q were another point on  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  then OQ would be longer than radius OR = OP (Figure 2). Therefore  $OP \perp \overleftrightarrow{AB}$  since the shortest line segment that can be drawn from a point to a straight line is the perpendicular (**Theorem 2, Section 4.6**). This completes the proof.



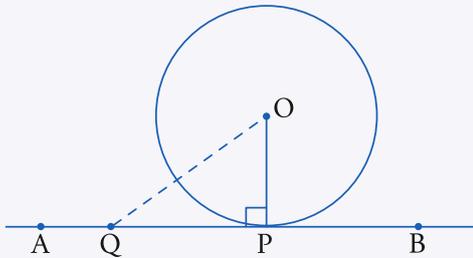
**Figure 2.** OP is the shortest line segment that can be drawn from O to line  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$ .

The converse of **Theorem 1** is also true:

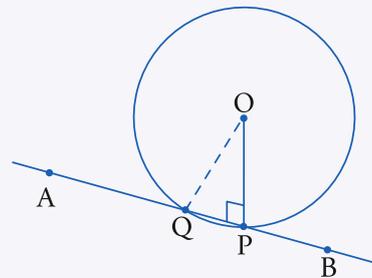
▶ **THEOREM 2**

A line perpendicular to a radius at a point touching the circle must be a tangent.

In Figure 3, if  $OP \perp \overleftrightarrow{AB}$  then  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  must be a tangent; that is, P is the only point at which  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  can touch the circle (see Figure 4).



**Figure 3.** If  $OP \perp \overleftrightarrow{AB}$  then  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  must be a tangent.



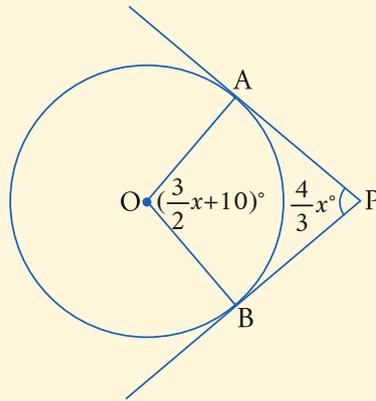
**Figure 4.** Theorem 2 implies that this **cannot** happen.

**Proof of Theorem 2:**

Suppose Q were some other point on  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$ . Then OQ is the hypotenuse of right triangle OPQ (see Figure 3). According to **Theorem 1, section 4.6**, the hypotenuse of a right triangle is always larger than a leg. Therefore hypotenuse OQ is larger than leg OP. Since OQ is larger than the radius OP, Q cannot be on the circle. We have shown that no other point on  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  besides P can be on the circle. Therefore  $\overleftrightarrow{AB}$  is a tangent. This completes the proof.

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$ ,  $\angle O$  and  $\angle P$ :



**SOLUTION**

$\vec{AP}$  and  $\vec{BP}$  are tangent to circle  $O$ , so by **Theorem 1**,  $\angle OAP = \angle OBP = 90^\circ$ . The sum of the angles of quadrilateral  $AOBP$  is  $360^\circ$  (see Example E, Section 1.5), hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 90 + \left(\frac{3}{2}x + 10\right) + 90 + \frac{4}{3}x &= 360 \\
 \frac{3}{2}x + \frac{4}{3}x + 190 &= 360 \\
 \frac{3}{2}x + \frac{4}{3}x &= 170 \\
 (6)\left(\frac{3}{2}x\right) + (6)\left(\frac{4}{3}x\right) &= (6)(170) \\
 9x + 8x &= 1020 \\
 17x &= 1020 \\
 x &= 60.
 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting 60 for  $x$ , we find

$$\angle O = \left(\frac{3}{2}x + 10\right)^\circ = \left(\frac{3}{2}(60) + 10\right)^\circ = (90 + 10)^\circ = 100^\circ \text{ and}$$

$$\angle P = \frac{4}{3}x^\circ = \frac{4}{3}(60^\circ) = 80^\circ.$$

**CHECK:**  $\angle A + \angle O + \angle B + \angle P = 90^\circ + 100^\circ + 90^\circ + 80^\circ = 360^\circ$ .

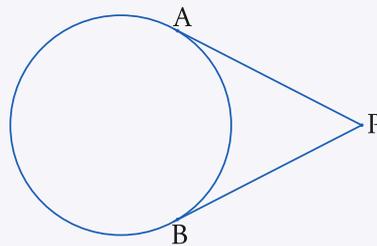
**ANSWER:**  $x = 60$ ,  $\angle O = 100^\circ$ ,  $\angle P = 80^\circ$ .

If we measure line segments AP and BP in Example B we will find that they are approximately equal in length. In fact we can prove that they must be exactly equal:

**THEOREM 3**

Tangents drawn to a circle from an outside point are equal.

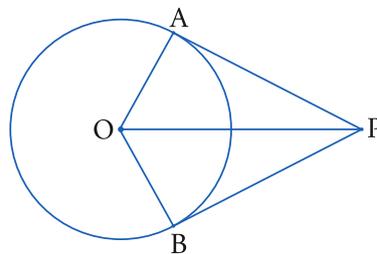
In Figure 5 if  $\vec{AP}$  and  $\vec{BP}$  are tangents then  $AP = BP$ .



*Figure 5.* If  $\vec{AP}$  and  $\vec{BP}$  are tangents then  $AP = BP$ .

**Proof of Theorem 3:**

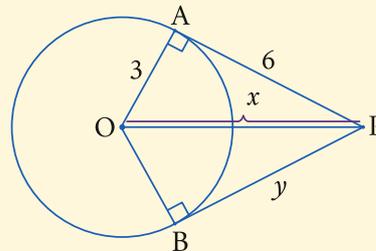
Draw OA, OB and OP (Figure 6).  $OA = OB$  (all radii are equal),  $OP = OP$  (identity) and  $\angle A = \angle B = 90^\circ$  (**Theorem 1**), hence  $\triangle AOP \cong \triangle BOP$  by Hyp-Leg = Hyp-Leg. Therefore  $AP = BP$  because they are corresponding sides of congruent triangles.



*Figure 6.* Draw OA, OB and OP.

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find x and y:



**SOLUTION**

By the Pythagorean theorem,

$$x^2 = 3^2 + 6^2$$

$$x^2 = 9 + 36 = 45$$

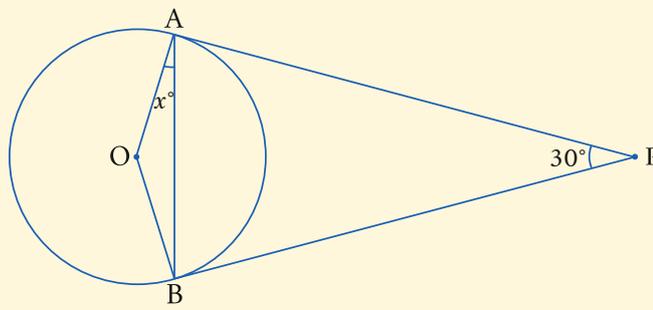
$$x = \sqrt{45} = \sqrt{9 \cdot 5} = 3\sqrt{5}.$$

By **Theorem 3**,  $y = BP = AP = 6$ .

**ANSWER :**  $x = 3\sqrt{5}$ ,  $y=6$ .

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find  $x$ :

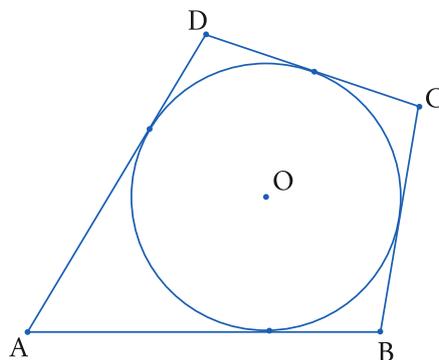


**SOLUTION**

By **Theorem 3**,  $AP = BP$ . So  $\triangle ABP$  is isosceles with  $\angle PAB = \angle PBA = 75^\circ$ .  
Therefore  $x^\circ = 90^\circ - 75^\circ = 15^\circ$ .

**ANSWER :**  $x = 15$ .

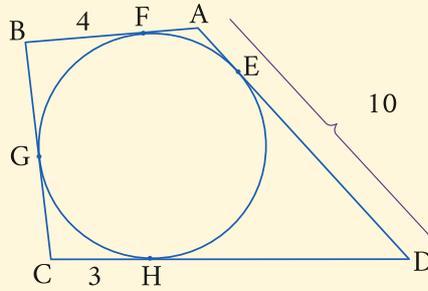
If each side of a polygon is tangent to a circle, the circle is said to be **inscribed** in the polygon and the polygon is said to be **circumscribed** about the circle. In **Figure 7** circle  $O$  is inscribed in quadrilateral  $ABCD$  and  $ABCD$  is circumscribed about circle  $O$ .



**Figure 7.** Circle  $O$  is inscribed in  $ABCD$ .

**? EXAMPLE E**

Find the perimeter of ABCD:



**SOLUTION**

By **Theorem 3**,  $CG = CH = 3$  and  $BG = BF = 4$ . Also  $DH = DE$  and  $AF = AE$  so  $DH + AF = DE + AE = 10$ .

Therefore the perimeter of ABCD =  $3 + 3 + 4 + 4 + 10 + 10 = 34$ .

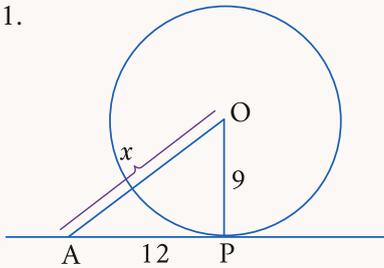
**ANSWER :**  $P = 34$ .



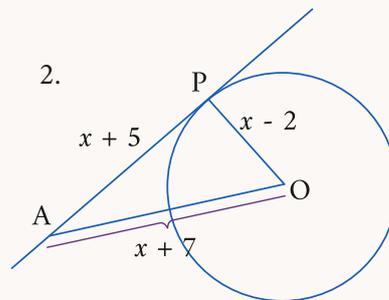
**PROBLEMS**

1 - 4. Find  $x$ :

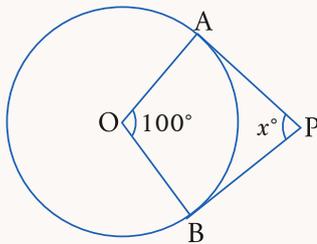
1.



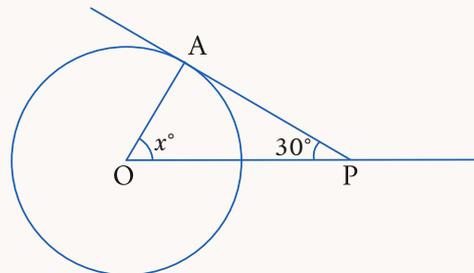
2.



3.



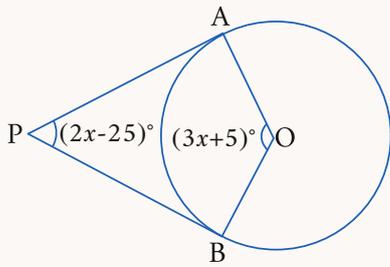
4.



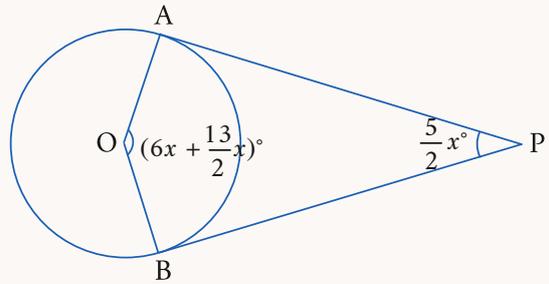
Regular Polygons and Circles

5 - 6. Find  $x$ ,  $\angle O$  and  $\angle P$  :

5.

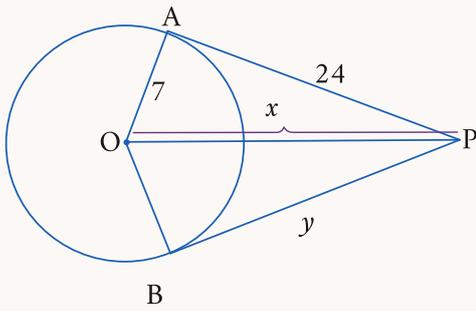


6.

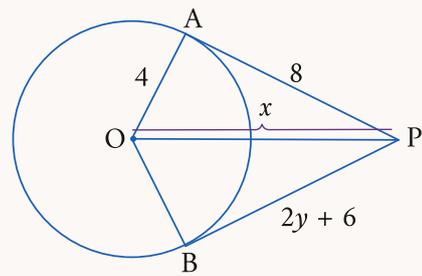


7 - 8. Find  $x$  and  $y$ :

7.

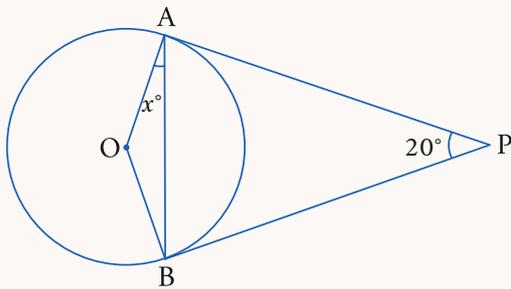


8.

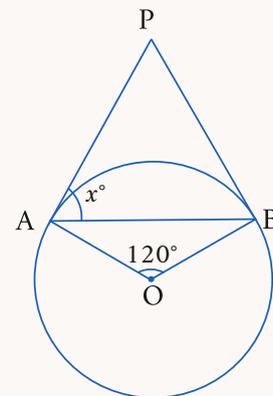


9 - 12. Find  $x$ :

9.

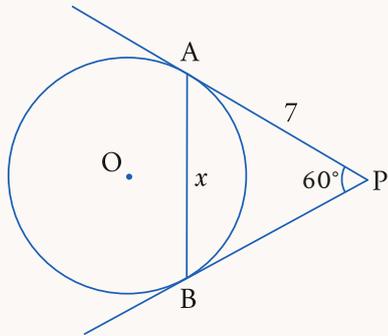


10.

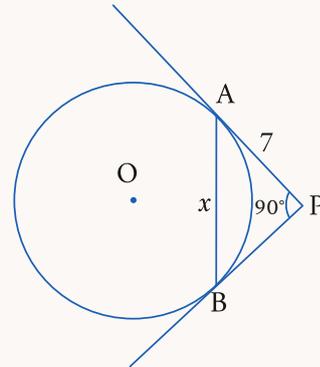


Regular Polygons and Circles

11.

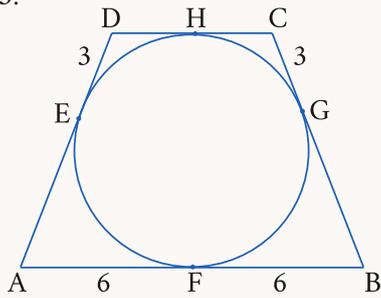


12.

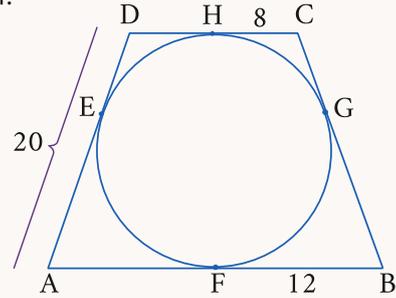


12 - 16. Find the perimeter of the polygon:

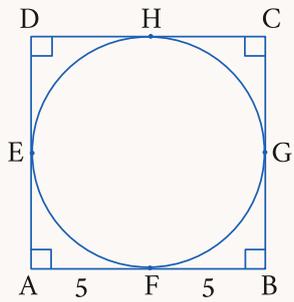
13.



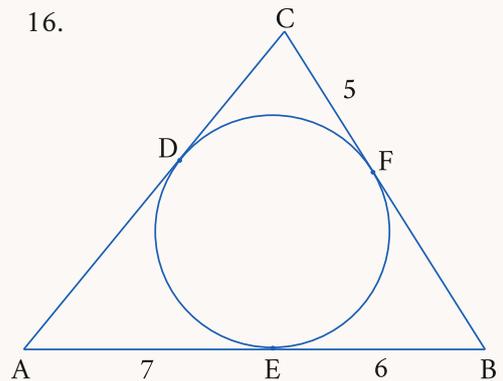
14.



15.

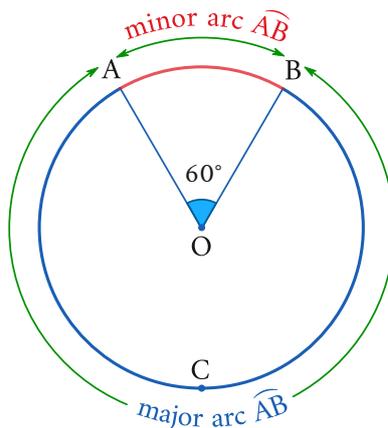


16.



7.4 DEGREES IN AN ARC

An **arc** is a part of the circle included between two points. The symbol for the arc included between points A and B is  $\widehat{AB}$ . In Figure 1 there are two arcs determined by A and B. The shorter one is called the **minor arc** and the longer one is called the **major arc**. Unless otherwise indicated,  $\widehat{AB}$  will always refer to the minor arc. In Figure 1 we might also write  $\widehat{ACB}$  instead of  $\widehat{AB}$  to indicate the major arc.



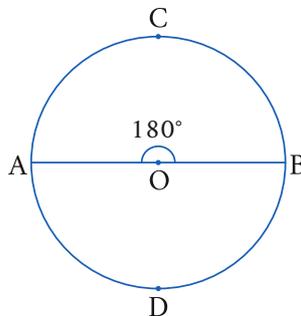
**Figure 1.** There are two arcs determined by A and B, the minor arc and the major arc.

A **central angle** is an angle whose vertex is the center of the circle and whose sides are radii. In Figure 1,  $\angle AOB$  is a central angle.  $\angle AOB$  is said to **intercept** arc  $\widehat{AB}$ .

The number of **degrees in an arc** is defined to be the number of degrees in the central angle that intercepts the arc. In Figure 1 minor arc  $\widehat{AB}$  has  $60^\circ$  because  $\angle AOB = 60^\circ$ . We write  $\widehat{AB} \cong 60^\circ$ , where the symbol  $\cong$  means **equal in degrees**. The plain = symbol will be reserved for arc length, to be discussed in Section 7.5.

In Figure 2  $\angle AOB$  is a straight angle so  $\angle AOB = 180^\circ$  and  $\widehat{ACB} \cong 180^\circ$ .

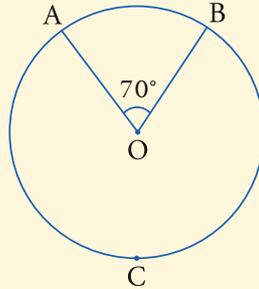
Similarly  $\widehat{ADB} \cong 180^\circ$ . Each of these arcs is called a **semicircle**. The complete circle measures  $360^\circ$ .



**Figure 2.**  $\widehat{AOB} = 180^\circ$  and  $\widehat{ACB} \cong 180^\circ$ .

**? EXAMPLE A**

Find the number of degrees in arcs  $\widehat{AB}$  and  $\widehat{ACB}$ :



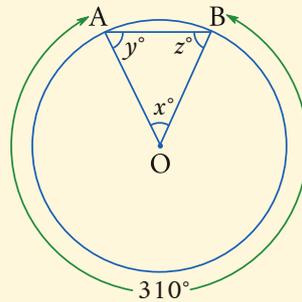
**SOLUTION**

$\widehat{AB} \cong \angle AOB = 70^\circ$  and  $\widehat{ACB} \cong 360^\circ - \widehat{AB} \cong 360^\circ - 70^\circ = 290^\circ$ .

**ANSWER :**  $\widehat{AB} \cong 70^\circ$ ,  $\widehat{ACB} \cong 290^\circ$ .

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



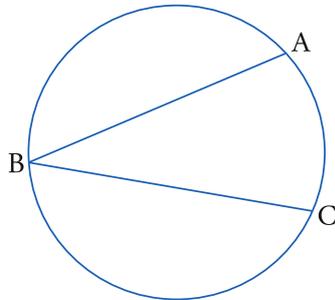
**SOLUTION**

$x^\circ \cong \widehat{AB} \cong 360^\circ - 310^\circ = 50^\circ$ ,  $OA = OB$  since all radii are equal. Therefore  $\triangle AOB$  is isosceles with  $y^\circ = z^\circ$ . We have

$$\begin{aligned} x^\circ + y^\circ + z^\circ &= 180^\circ \\ 50^\circ + y^\circ + y^\circ &= 180^\circ \\ 2y^\circ &= 130^\circ \\ y^\circ &= 65^\circ \end{aligned}$$

**ANSWER :**  $x = 50$ ,  $y = z = 65$ .

An **inscribed angle** is an angle whose vertex is on a circle and whose sides are chords of the circle. In Figure 3  $\angle ABC$  is an inscribed angle.  $\angle ABC$  is said to **intercept** arc  $\widehat{AC}$ .



**Figure 3.**  $\angle ABC$  is an inscribed angle.

We shall prove the following theorem:

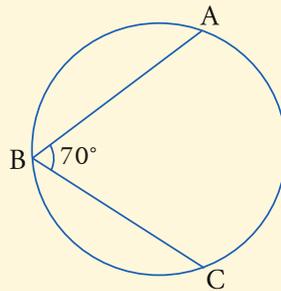
**THEOREM 1**

An inscribed angle  $\cong \frac{1}{2}$  of its intercepted arc.

In Figure 3,  $\angle ABC \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AC}$ .

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find the number of degrees in  $\widehat{AC}$ :



**SOLUTION**

$\angle ABC = 70^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AC}$ . Therefore  $\widehat{AC} \cong 140^\circ$ .

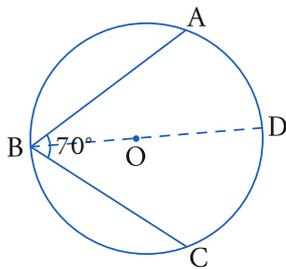
**ANSWER :**  $\widehat{AC} \cong 140^\circ$ .

Before giving the proof of Theorem 1 let us see if we can prove the answer to Example C. Draw the diameter from B through center O (Figure 4).  $\angle ABC$  is divided by the diameter into two smaller angles,  $\angle ABD$  and  $\angle DBC$ , whose sum is  $70^\circ$ . Suppose  $\angle ABD = 30^\circ$  and  $\angle DBC = 40^\circ$  (Figure 5).  $AO = BO$  because all radii are equal. Hence  $\triangle AOB$  is isosceles with  $\angle A = \angle ABD = 30^\circ$ . Similarly  $\angle C = \angle DBC = 40^\circ$ .  $\angle AOD$  is an exterior angle of  $\triangle AOB$  and so is equal to the sum of the remote interior angles,  $30^\circ + 30^\circ = 60^\circ$  (Theorem 2, Section 1.5). Similarly  $\angle COD = 40^\circ + 40^\circ = 80^\circ$ . Therefore central angle  $\angle AOC = 60^\circ + 80^\circ = 140^\circ$  and arc  $\widehat{AC} \cong 140^\circ$ . This agrees with our answer to Example C.

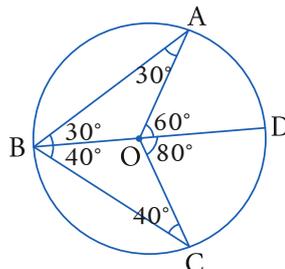
We will now give a formal proof of **Theorem 1**, which will hold for any inscribed angle:

**Proof of Theorem 1:**

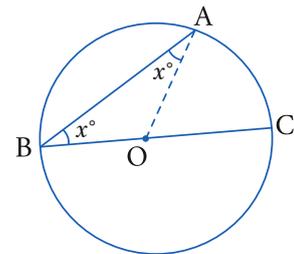
There are three cases according to whether the center is on, inside or outside the inscribed angle (Figures 6, 7 and 8).



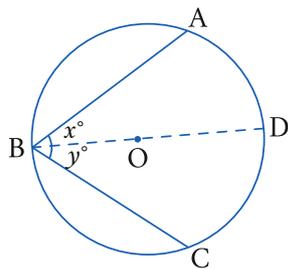
**Figure 4.** Draw diameter BD.



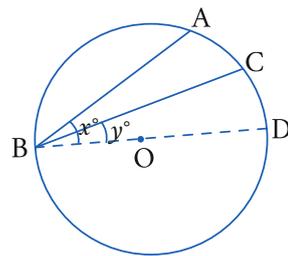
**Figure 5.** Suppose  $\angle ABD = 30^\circ$  and  $\angle DBC = 40^\circ$ .



**Figure 6.** The center is on the inscribed angle.



**Figure 7.** The center is inside the inscribed angle.



**Figure 8.** The center is outside the inscribed angle.

**Case I.**

The center is on the inscribed angle (Figure 6). Draw AO. The radii are equal so  $AO = BO$  and  $\angle A = \angle B = x^\circ$ . Therefore  $\widehat{AC} \cong \angle AOC = x^\circ + x^\circ = 2x^\circ$  and  $\angle ABC = x^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2}\widehat{AC}$ .

**Case II.**

The center is inside the inscribed angle (Figure 7). Draw diameter BD from B through O.

From case I we know  $\angle ABD = x^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2}\widehat{AD}$  and  $\angle DBC = y^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2}\widehat{DC}$ . Hence

$$\angle ABC = x^\circ + y^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2}\widehat{AD} + \frac{1}{2}\widehat{DC} \cong \frac{1}{2}(\widehat{AD} + \widehat{DC}) \cong \frac{1}{2}\widehat{AC}.$$

**Case III.**

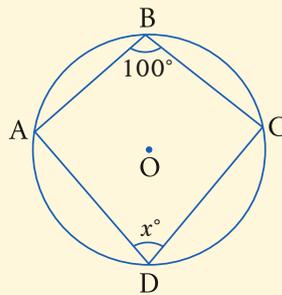
The center is outside the inscribed angle (Figure 8). Draw diameter BD from B through O.

From case I we know  $\angle ABD = x^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2}\widehat{AD}$  and  $\angle CBD = y^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2}\widehat{CD}$ . Therefore

$$\angle ABC = x^\circ - y^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2}\widehat{AD} - \frac{1}{2}\widehat{CD} \cong \frac{1}{2}(\widehat{AD} - \widehat{CD}) \cong \frac{1}{2}\widehat{AC}.$$

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find x:



**SOLUTION**

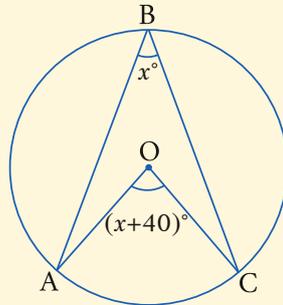
$$\angle B = 100^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2}\widehat{ADC}.$$

Therefore  $\widehat{ADC} = 200^\circ$ . So  $\widehat{ABC} \cong 360^\circ - 200^\circ = 160^\circ$  and  $x^\circ = \frac{1}{2}\widehat{ABC} = \frac{1}{2}(160^\circ) = 80^\circ$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x = 80$ .

**? EXAMPLE E**

Find  $x$ :



**SOLUTION**

$\angle B = x^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AC}$ . Also  $\widehat{AC} \cong \angle AOC = (x + 40)^\circ$ . We have

$$\angle B \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AC}$$

$$x = \frac{1}{2}(x + 40)$$

$$2x = x + 40$$

$$x = 40$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 40$ .

**CHECK**

$$\angle B \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AC}$$

$$x^\circ \quad \left| \quad \frac{1}{2} (x + 40)^\circ$$

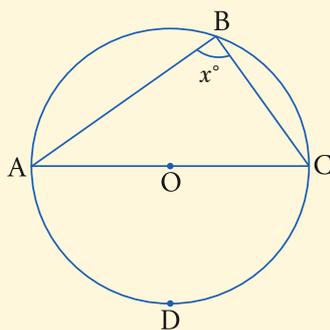
$$40^\circ \quad \left| \quad \frac{1}{2} (40 + 40)^\circ$$

$$\quad \left| \quad \frac{1}{2} 80^\circ$$

$$\quad \left| \quad 40^\circ$$

**? EXAMPLE F**

Find  $x$ :



**SOLUTION**

$\widehat{ADC}$  is a semicircle so  $\widehat{ADC} \cong 180^\circ$ .  $\angle B = x^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{ADC} \cong \frac{1}{2}(180^\circ) = 90^\circ$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x = 90$ .

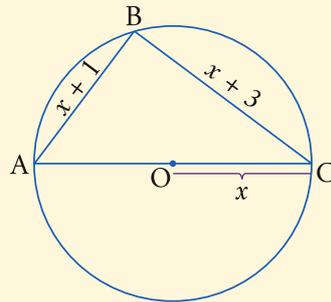
We state the result of Example F as a theorem:

**THEOREM 2**

An angle inscribed in a semicircle is a right angle.

**EXAMPLE G**

Find  $x$ :



**SOLUTION**

According to **Theorem 2**  $\angle B = 90^\circ$ .  
Therefore  $\triangle ABC$  is a right triangle and we can apply the Pythagorean theorem:

$$\begin{aligned} AB^2 + BC^2 &= AC^2 \\ (x + 1)^2 + (x + 3)^2 &= (2x)^2 \\ x^2 + 2x + 1 + x^2 + 6x + 9 &= 4x^2 \\ 2x^2 + 8x + 10 &= 4x^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$0 = 2x^2 - 8x - 10$$

$$0 = x^2 - 4x - 5$$

$$0 = (x - 5)(x + 1)$$

$$0 = x - 5$$

$$x = 5$$

$$0 = x + 1$$

$$x = -1$$

We reject the answer  $x = -1$  since  $OC = x$  must have positive length.

**ANSWER:**  $x = 5$ .

**CHECK**

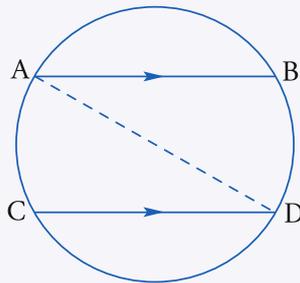
$$\begin{array}{r|l} AB^2 + BC^2 = AC^2 & \\ (x + 1)^2 + (x + 3)^2 & (2x)^2 \\ (5 + 1)^2 + (5 + 3)^2 & (2(5))^2 \\ 6^2 + 8^2 & 10^2 \\ 36 + 64 & 100 \\ 100 & \end{array}$$

The next four theorems are all consequences of **Theorem 1**:

**THEOREM 3**

Parallel lines intercept arcs equal in degrees.

In Figure 9 if  $AB \parallel CD$  then  $\widehat{AC} \cong \widehat{BD}$ .



**Figure 9.** If  $AB \parallel CD$  then  $\widehat{AC} \cong \widehat{BD}$ .

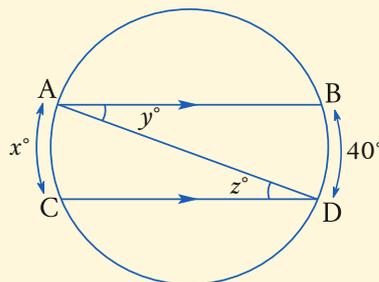
**Proof of Theorem 3:**

Draw AD. Then  $\angle ADC \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AC}$  and  $\angle BAD \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{BD}$ . Also  $\angle ADC = \angle BAD$  because they are alternate interior angles of parallel lines AB and CD.

Therefore  $\frac{1}{2} \widehat{AC} \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{BD}$  and  $\widehat{AC} \cong \widehat{BD}$ .

**? EXAMPLE H**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



**SOLUTION**

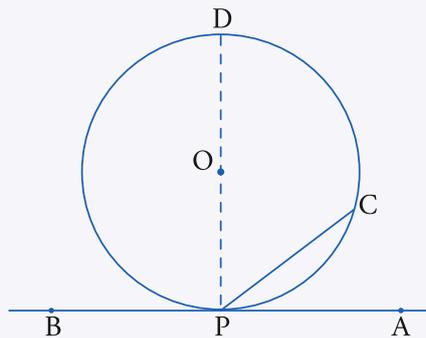
By **Theorem 3**  $x^\circ = 40^\circ$ .  $y^\circ = z^\circ \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AC} \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{BD} \cong \frac{1}{2} (40^\circ) = 20^\circ$ .

**ANSWER:**  $x = 40$ ,  $y = z = 20$ .

**THEOREM 4**

An angle formed by a tangent and a chord is  $\cong \frac{1}{2}$  of its intercepted arc.

In Figure 10  $\angle APC \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{PC}$  and  $\angle BPC \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{PDC}$ .



**Figure 10.**  $\angle APC$  and  $\angle BPC$  are formed by tangent  $\vec{AB}$  and chord  $PC$ .

**Proof of Theorem 4:**

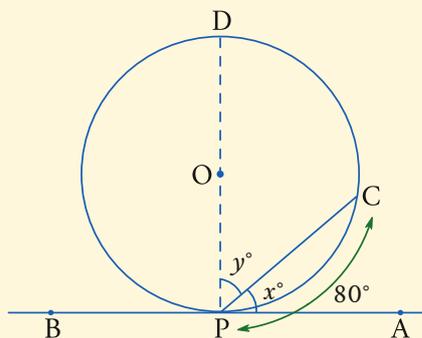
In Figure 10 draw diameter  $PD$ . Then by **Theorem 1** of Section 7.3  $\angle APD = \angle BPD = 90^\circ$ .  
By Theorem 1 of this section  $\angle CPD \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{CD}$ .

$$\angle APC = 90^\circ - \angle CPD \cong 90^\circ - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{CD} \cong 90^\circ - \frac{1}{2} (180^\circ - \widehat{PC}) \cong 90^\circ - 90^\circ + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{PC} \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{PC}.$$

$$\angle BPC = 90^\circ + \angle CPD \cong 90^\circ + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{CD} \cong \frac{1}{2} (180^\circ + \widehat{CD}) \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{PDC}.$$

**? EXAMPLE 1**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $\widehat{CD}$ :



**SOLUTION**

By **Theorem 4**,

$$x^\circ \doteq \frac{1}{2} \widehat{PC} \doteq \frac{1}{2} (80^\circ) = 40^\circ.$$

$$y^\circ = 90^\circ - x^\circ = 90^\circ - 40^\circ = 50^\circ.$$

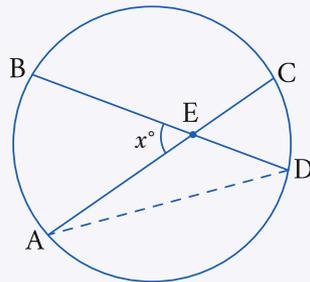
$$\widehat{CD} \doteq \frac{1}{2} 180^\circ - \widehat{CP} \doteq 180^\circ - 80^\circ = 100^\circ.$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 40$ ,  $y = 50$ ,  $\widehat{CD} \doteq 100^\circ$ .

**THEOREM 5**

An angle formed by two intersecting chords is  $\doteq$  to  $\frac{1}{2}$  the sum of the intercepted arcs.

In Figure 11  $x^\circ \doteq \frac{1}{2} (\widehat{AB} + \widehat{CD})$ .



**Figure 11.**  $x^\circ \doteq \frac{1}{2} (\widehat{AB} + \widehat{CD})$ .

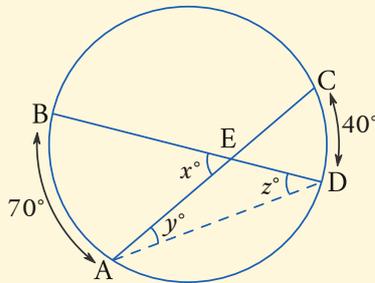
**Proof of Theorem 5:**

$\angle ADB \doteq \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AB}$  and  $\angle CAD \doteq \frac{1}{2} \widehat{CD}$ . By **Theorem 2, Section 1.5**, an exterior angle of a triangle is equal to the sum of the two remote interior angles.

$$\text{Therefore } x^\circ = \angle ADB + \angle CAD \doteq \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AB} + \frac{1}{2} \widehat{CD} \doteq \frac{1}{2} (\widehat{AB} + \widehat{CD}).$$

**? EXAMPLE J**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



**SOLUTION**

By **Theorem 5**,

$$x^\circ \doteq \frac{1}{2} (\widehat{AB} + \widehat{CD}) \doteq \frac{1}{2} (70^\circ + 40^\circ) = \frac{1}{2} (110^\circ) = 55^\circ .$$

$$y^\circ \doteq \frac{1}{2} \widehat{CD} = \frac{1}{2} (40^\circ) = 20^\circ .$$

$$z^\circ \doteq \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AB} = \frac{1}{2} (70^\circ) = 35^\circ .$$

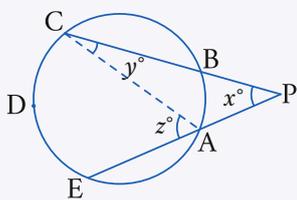
**ANSWER:**  $x = 55$ ,  $y = 20$ ,  $z = 35$ .

A line which intersects a circle in two points is called a **secant**.  
In Figure 12,  $PC$  is a secant.

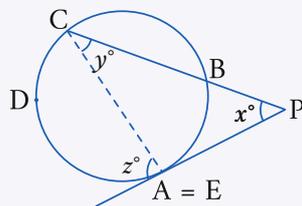
**THEOREM 6**

An angle formed outside a circle by two secants, a tangent and a secant, or two tangents is  $\doteq \frac{1}{2}$  the difference of the intercepted arcs.

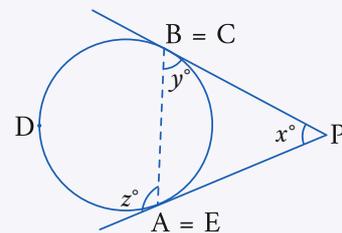
In each of Figures 12, 13 and 14,  $\angle P \doteq \frac{1}{2} (\widehat{CDE} - \widehat{AB})$ .



**Figure 12.**  
 $\angle P$  formed by two secants.



**Figure 13.**  
 $\angle P$  formed by a tangent and a secant.



**Figure 14.**  
 $\angle P$  formed by two tangents.

**Proof of Theorem 6:**

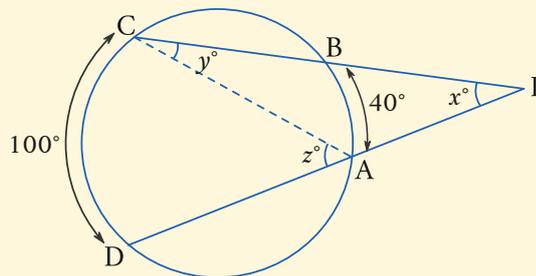
In each case  $x^\circ + y^\circ = z^\circ$  (because an exterior angle of a triangle is the sum of the two remote interior angles). Therefore  $x^\circ = z^\circ - y^\circ$ .

Using **Theorems 1** and **4** we have

$$\angle P = x^\circ = z^\circ - y^\circ \doteq \frac{1}{2} \widehat{CDE} - \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AB} \doteq \frac{1}{2} (\widehat{CDE} - \widehat{AB}).$$

**? EXAMPLE K**

Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :



**SOLUTION**

By **Theorem 6**,

$$x^\circ \doteq \frac{1}{2} (\widehat{CD} - \widehat{AB}) \doteq \frac{1}{2} (100^\circ - 40^\circ) = \frac{1}{2} (60^\circ) = 30^\circ.$$

By **Theorem 1**,

$$y^\circ \doteq \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AB} \doteq \frac{1}{2} (40^\circ) = 20^\circ \text{ and } z^\circ \doteq \frac{1}{2} \widehat{CD} \doteq \frac{1}{2} (100^\circ) = 50^\circ.$$

**ANSWER:**  $x = 30$ ,  $y = 20$ ,  $z = 50$ .



**HISTORICAL NOTE**

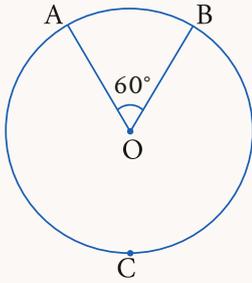
The practice of dividing the circle into 360 degrees goes back to the Greeks of the second century B.C., who in turn may have taken it over from the Babylonians. The reason for using the number 360 is not clear. It could stem from an early astronomical assumption that a year consisted of 360 days. Another explanation relies on the fact that the Babylonians used a sexagesimal or base 60 number system instead of the decimal or base 10 system that we use today. It is assumed that the Babylonians may have also used 60 as a convenient value for the radius of a circle. Since the circumference of a circle is about 6 times the radius (see next section), such a circle would consist of 360 units.



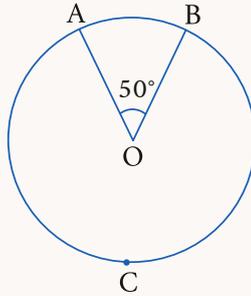
PROBLEMS

1 - 4. Find the number of degrees in arcs  $\widehat{AB}$  and  $\widehat{ACB}$ :

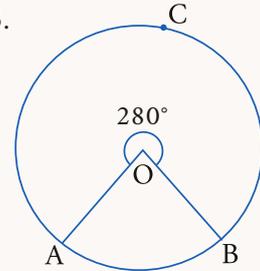
1.



2.

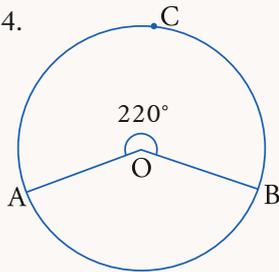


3.

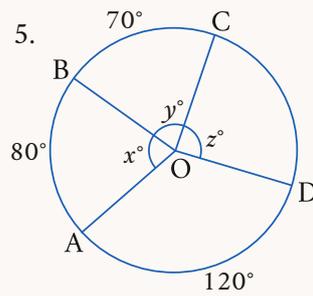


5 - 10. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :

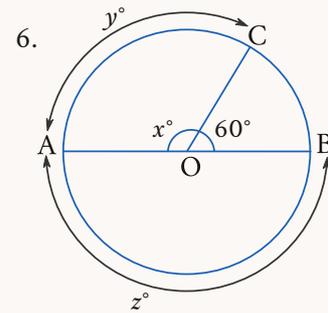
4.



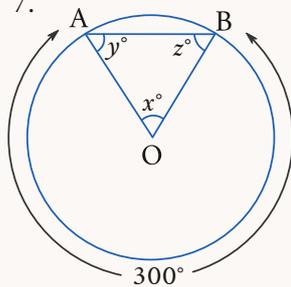
5.



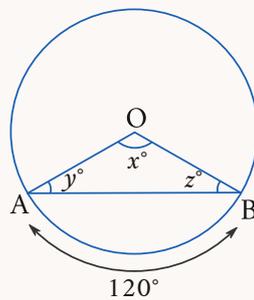
6.



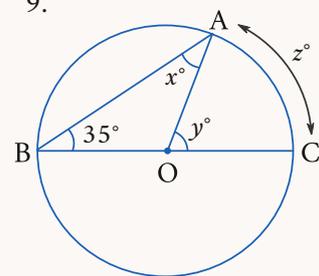
7.



8.



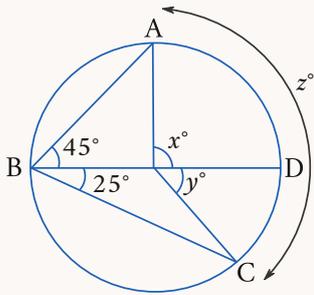
9.



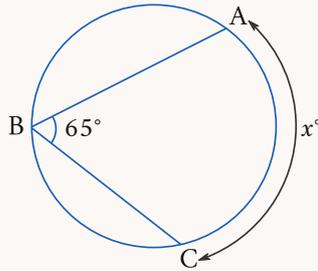
Regular Polygons and Circles

11 - 26. Find  $x$ :

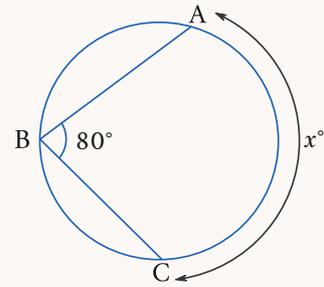
10.



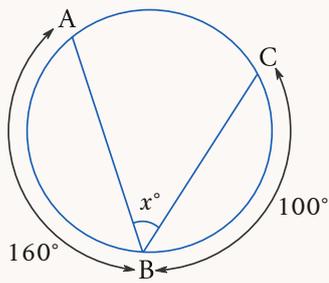
11.



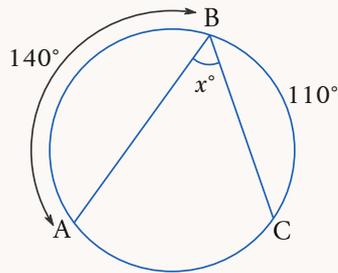
12.



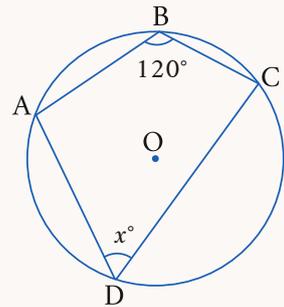
13.



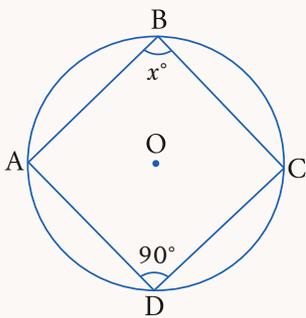
14.



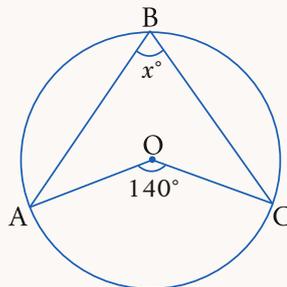
15.



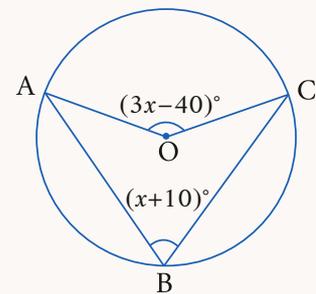
16.



17.

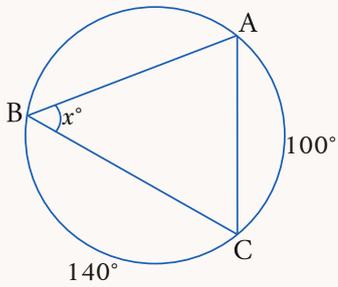


18.

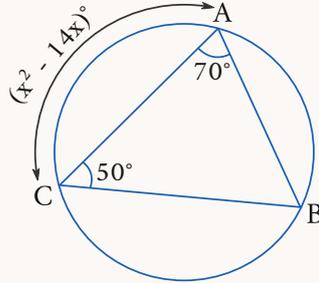


Regular Polygons and Circles

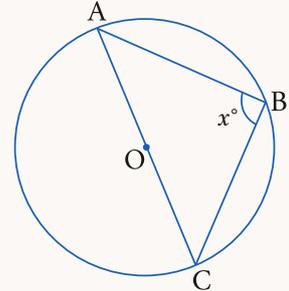
19.



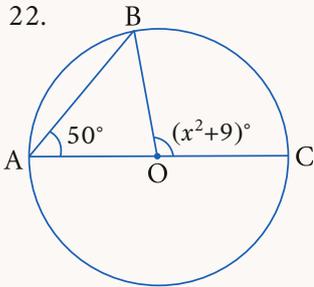
20.



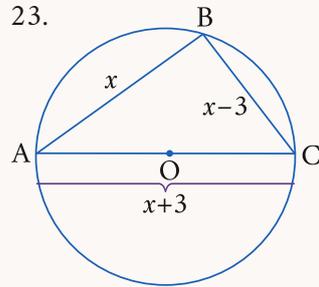
21.



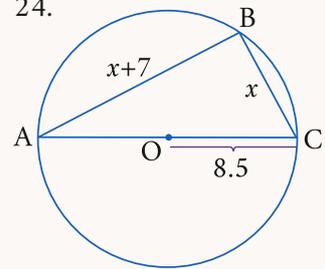
22.



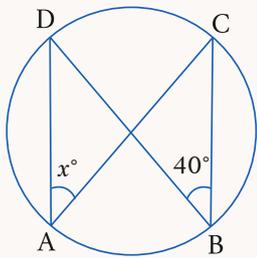
23.



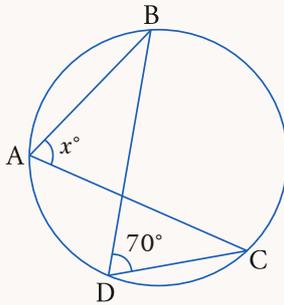
24.



25.

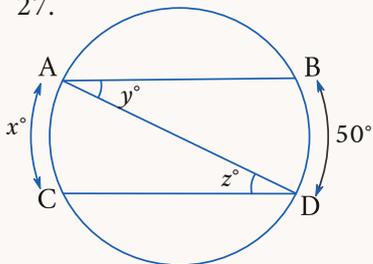


26.

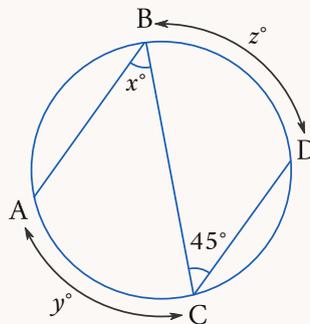


27 - 28. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :

27.



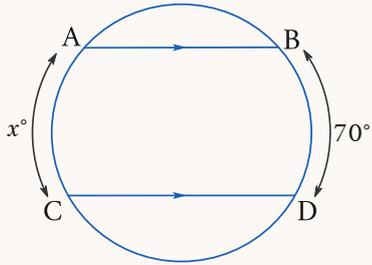
28.



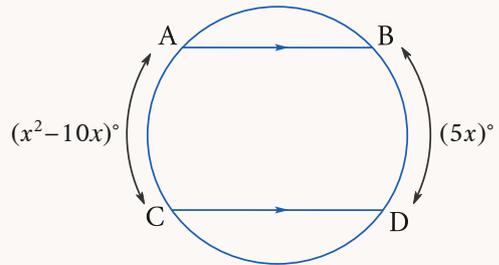
Regular Polygons and Circles

29 - 30. Find  $x$ :

29.

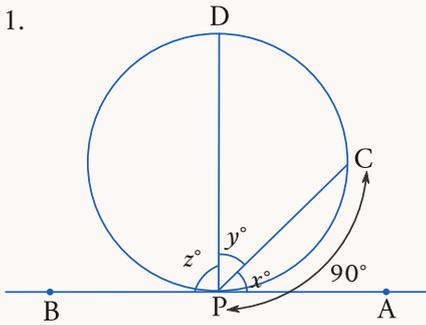


30.

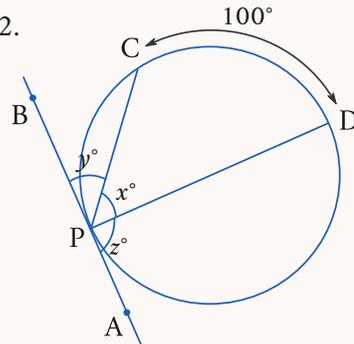


31 - 32. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :

31.

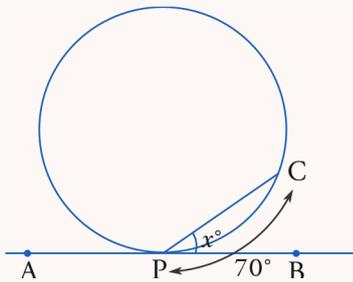


32.

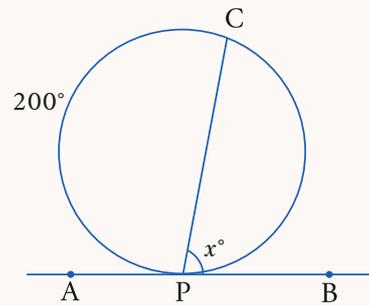


33 - 34. Find  $x$ :

33.



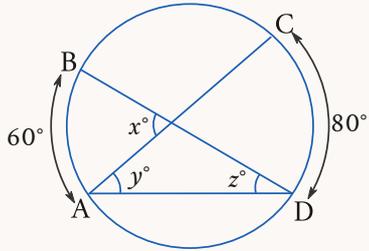
34.



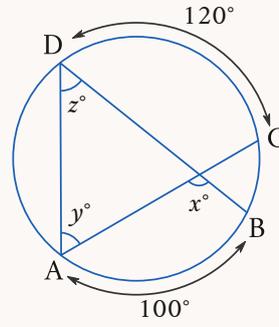
Regular Polygons and Circles

35 - 36. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :

35.

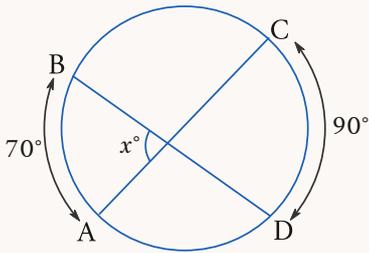


36.

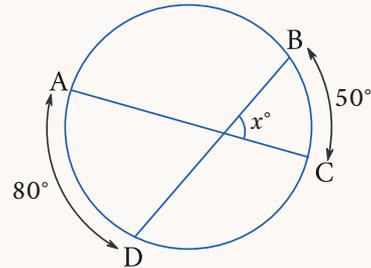


37 - 38. Find  $x$ :

37.

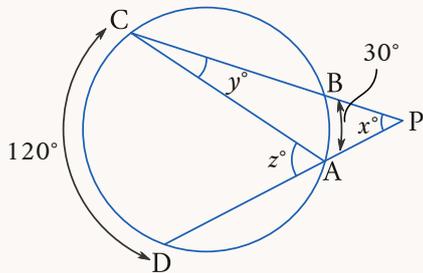


38.

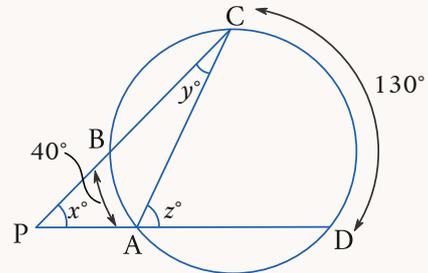


39 - 42. Find  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$ :

39.

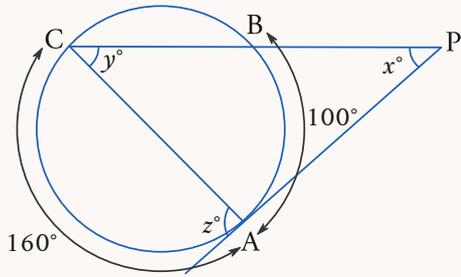


40.

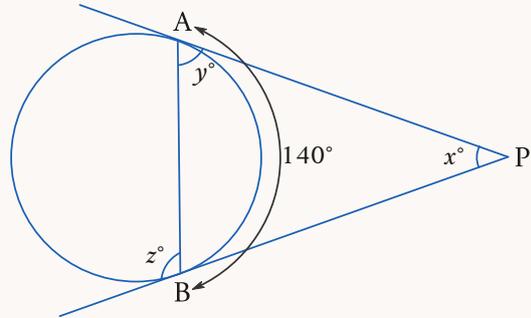


Regular Polygons and Circles

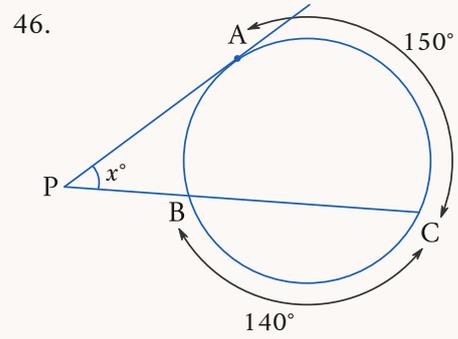
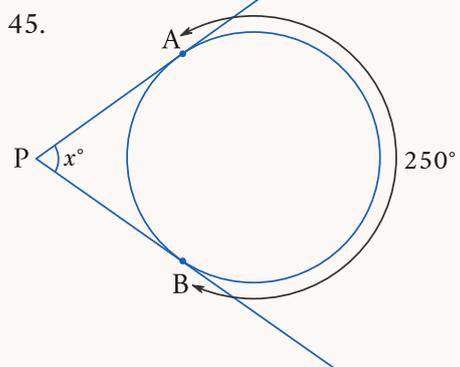
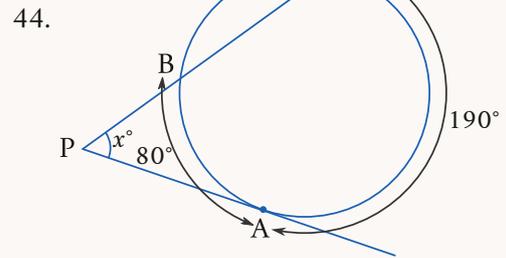
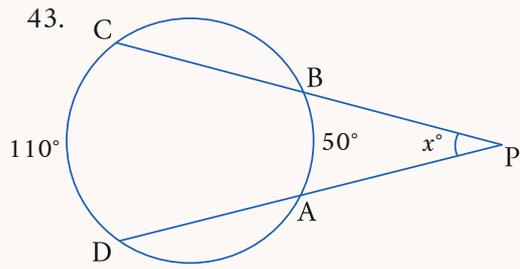
41.



42.

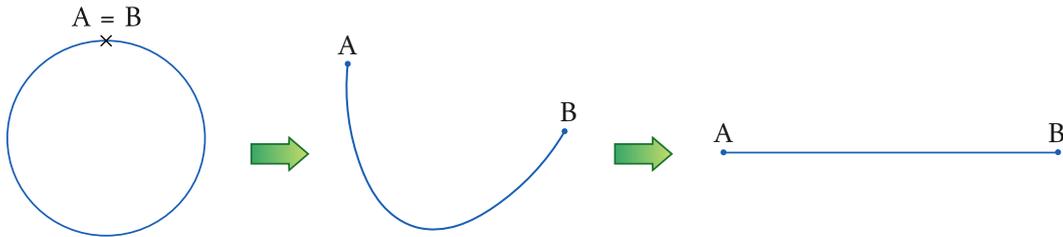


43 - 46. Find x:



7.5 CIRCUMFERENCE OF A CIRCLE

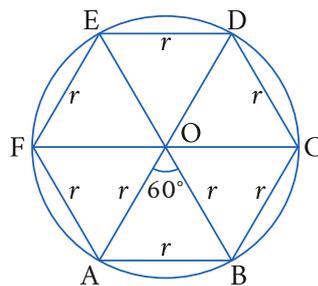
The **circumference** of a circle is the perimeter of the circle, the length of the line obtained by cutting the circle and "straightening out the curves" (Figure 1).



**Figure 1.** The circumference of a circle is the length of the line obtained by cutting the circle and straightening out the curves.

It is impractical to measure the circumference of most circular objects directly. A circular tape measure would be hard to hold in place and would become distorted as it would be bent. The object itself would be destroyed if we tried to cut it and straighten it out for measurement. Fortunately we can calculate the circumference of a circle from its radius or diameter, which are easy to measure.

An approximate value for the circumference of a circle of radius  $x$  can be obtained by calculating the perimeter of a regular hexagon of radius  $r$  inscribed in the circle (Figure 2). We see that the circumference is a little more than the perimeter of the hexagon, which is 6 times the radius or 3 times the diameter. To get a better approximation, we increase the number of sides of the inscribed regular polygon.

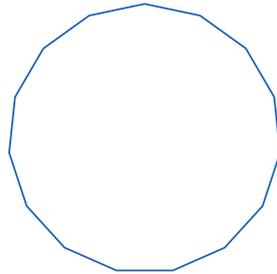


**Figure 2.** Regular hexagon ABCDEF is inscribed in circle O. Both have radius  $r$  and center O.

As the number of sides of a regular polygon increases, the polygon looks more and more like a circle (Figure 3). In Section 7.1, we calculated the perimeter of a 90-sided regular polygon to be 3.141 times the diameter or 6.282 times the radius.

## Regular Polygons and Circles

The perimeter of a 1000-sided regular polygon turned out to be only slightly larger, 3.1416 times the diameter or 6.283 times the radius. It therefore seems reasonable to conclude that the circumference of a circle is about 3.14 times its diameter or 6.28 times its radius.



**Figure 3.** A regular polygon of 15 sides looks almost like a circle.

### THEOREM 1

The circumference of a circle is  $\pi$  times its diameter or  $2\pi$  times its radius, where  $\pi$  is approximately 3.14.

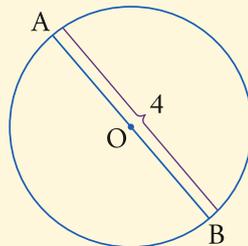
$$C = \pi d \quad \text{or} \quad C = 2\pi r$$

The symbol  $\pi$  (Greek letter pi) is standard notation for the number by which the diameter of a circle must be multiplied to get the circumference. Its value is usually taken to be 3.14, though 3.1416 and  $22/7$  are other commonly used approximations. These numbers are not exact, for like  $\sqrt{2}$ , it can be shown that  $\pi$  is an irrational number (infinite nonrepeating decimal). Its value to 50 decimal places is

3. 14159 26535 89793 23846 26433 83279 50288 41971 69399 37511.

### ? EXAMPLE A

Find the circumference:



**SOLUTION**

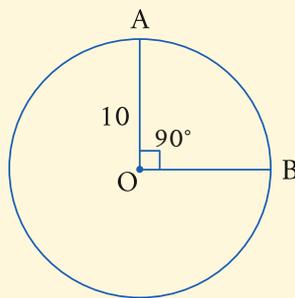
$$C = \pi d = (3.14)(4) = 12.56.$$

**ANSWER :** 12.56.

We define the **length of an arc** in the same manner as we defined circumference. We calculate it by multiplying the circumference by the appropriate fraction.

**? EXAMPLE B**

Find the length of arc  $\widehat{AB}$ :



**SOLUTION**

$$C = 2\pi r = 3(3.14)(10) = 62.8.$$

Since  $90^\circ$  is  $\frac{1}{4}$  of  $360^\circ$ ,  $\widehat{AB}$  is  $\frac{1}{4}$  of the circumference  $C$ .  $\widehat{AB} = \frac{1}{4} C = \frac{1}{4} (62.8) = 15.7$ .

**ANSWER :** 15.7.

As we stated in *Section 7.4*, the plain = symbol will be used for arc length and the  $\cong$  symbol will be used for degrees. Thus in Example B,  $\widehat{AB} = 15.7$  but  $\widehat{AB} \cong 90^\circ$ .

We may also use the following formula to find arc length:

$$\text{Arc length} = \frac{\text{Degrees in Arc}}{360^\circ} \cdot \text{Circumference}$$

or simply

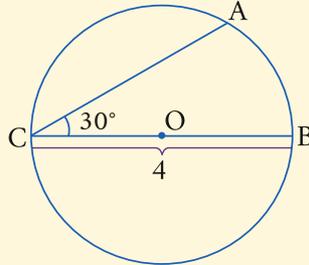
$$L = \frac{D}{360^\circ} \cdot C$$

Thus in Example B,

$$L = \frac{D}{360^\circ} \cdot C = \frac{90}{360^\circ} \cdot (62.8) = \frac{1}{4} (62.8) = 15.7.$$

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find the length of arc  $\widehat{AB}$ :



**SOLUTION**

$$C = \pi d = (3.14)(4) = 12.56. \angle ACB \cong \frac{1}{2} \widehat{AB} \cong 30^\circ.$$

Therefore  $\widehat{AB} \cong 60^\circ$ . Using the formula for arc length,

$$L = \frac{D}{360^\circ} C = \frac{60}{360^\circ} \cdot (12.56) = \frac{1}{6} (12.56) = 2.09.$$

**ANSWER :** 2.09.

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find the diameter of a circle whose circumference is 628.

**SOLUTION**

Letting  $C = 628$  and  $\pi = 3.14$  in the formula for circumference, we have

$$C = \pi d$$

$$628 = (3.14)d$$

$$\frac{628}{3.14} = \frac{3.14d}{3.14}$$

$$200 = d$$

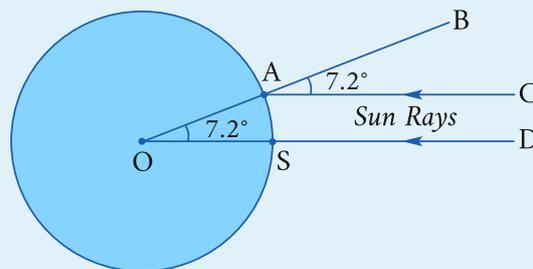
**ANSWER :** diameter = 200.

**Application:**

The odometer and speedometer of an automobile are calibrated in accordance with the number of rotations of one of the wheels. Suppose the diameter of a tire mounted on the wheel is 2 feet. Then its circumference is  $C = \pi d = (3.14)(2) = 6.28$  feet. Since 1 mile = 5280 feet, the wheel will rotate  $5280 \div 6.28 = 841$  times every mile. If the size of the tires is changed for any reason the odometer and speedometer must be recalibrated.

**HISTORICAL NOTE**

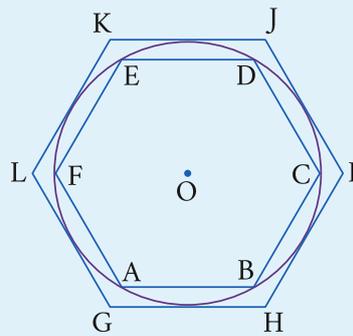
The circumference of the earth was first accurately calculated by the Greek geographer Eratosthenes (c. 284 - 192 B.C.), who lived in Alexandria, Egypt. It was known that at noon on the day of the summer solstice the sun's rays completely lit up the wells of Syene (now called Aswan), Egypt. This indicated that the rays of the sun were perpendicular to the Earth's surface at Syene, and so, in Figure 4,  $\vec{DS}$  passes through the earth's center  $O$ . At the same time, in Alexandria, Eratosthenes observed that the sun's rays were making an angle of  $1/50$  of  $360^\circ$  (that is,  $7.2^\circ$ ) with the perpendicular ( $\angle BAC = 7.2^\circ$  in Figure 4). The rays of the sun are assumed to be parallel hence  $\angle AOS = \angle BAC = 7.2^\circ$  and  $\widehat{AS} \cong 7.2^\circ$ . Since the distance between Alexandria and Syene is about 500 miles (the length of  $\widehat{AS}$ ). Eratosthenes was able to come up with a remarkably accurate figure of about  $(50)(500) = 25,000$  miles for the circumference of the earth.



**Figure 4.** The sun's rays were perpendicular to the Earth's surface at  $S$  at the same time they were making an angle of  $7.2^\circ$  with the perpendicular at  $A$ .

Early crude estimates of the value of  $\pi$  were made by the Chinese ( $\pi = 3$ ), Babylonians ( $\pi = 3$  or  $3\frac{1}{8}$ ), and Egyptians ( $\pi = 3.16$ ). The value  $\pi = 3$  is also the one assumed in the Bible (I Kings 7:23). The first accurate calculation was carried out by Archimedes (287 - 212 B.C.), the greatest mathematician of antiquity. (Archimedes was also a famous physicist and inventor. For example, he discovered the principle that a solid immersed in a liquid is buoyed up by a force equal to the weight of the fluid displaced.) In his treatise *On the Measurement of the Circle* he approximates the circumference by calculating the perimeters of inscribed and circumscribed regular polygons (Figure 5). This is similar to the method we described in the text except that Archimedes did not have accurate trigonometric tables and had to derive his own formulas. By carrying the process as far as the case of the polygon of 96 sides he found the value of  $\pi$  to be between  $3\frac{10}{71}$  and  $3\frac{1}{7}$ .

(Incidentally Archimedes did not actually use the symbol  $\pi$ . The symbol  $\pi$  was not used for the ratio of the circumference to the diameter of a circle until the 18th century.)



**Figure 5.** The circumference of circle O is greater than the perimeter of the inscribed polygon ABCDEF but less than the perimeter of the circumscribed polygon GHIJKL.

The procedure of Archimedes was the beginning of a long history of increasingly accurate calculations of the value of  $\pi$ . Since the 17th century these calculations have involved the use of infinite series, such as

$$\frac{1}{4} \pi = 1 - \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{7} + \frac{1}{9} - \dots,$$

the derivation of which can be found in many calculus textbooks. Most recently, with the help of a computer, the value of  $\pi$  has been determined to more than a trillion decimal places.

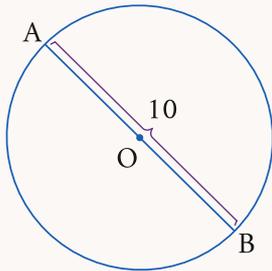


**PROBLEMS**

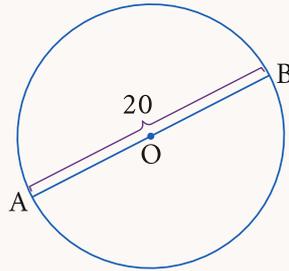
For each of the following use  $\pi = 3.14$ .

1 - 8. Find the circumference of each circle:

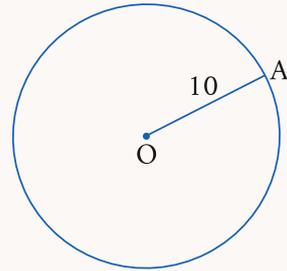
1.



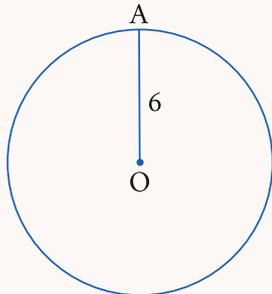
2.



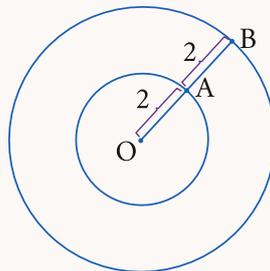
3.



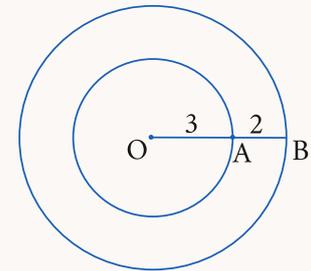
4.



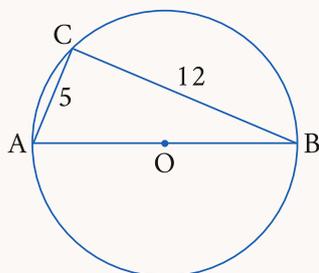
5.



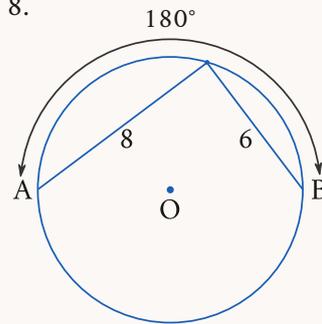
6.



7.



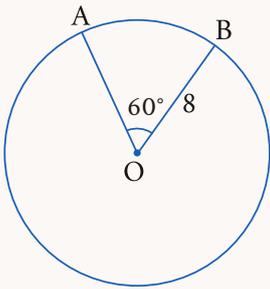
8.



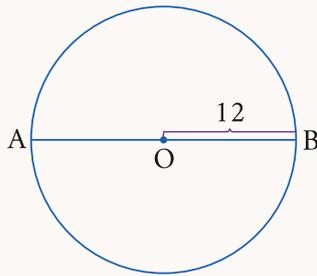
Regular Polygons and Circles

9 - 14. Find the length of arc  $\widehat{AB}$ :

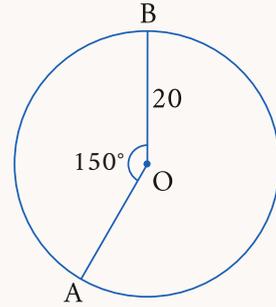
9.



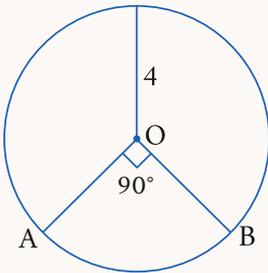
10.



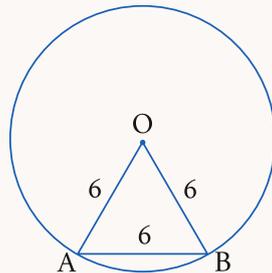
11.



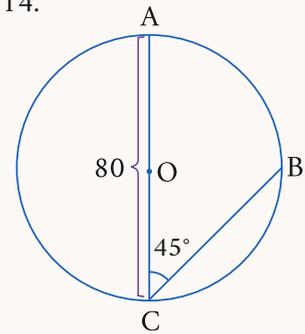
12.



13.

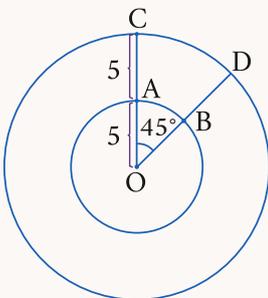


14.

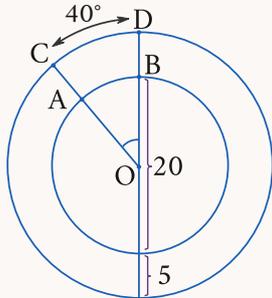


15 - 16. Find the lengths of arcs  $\widehat{AB}$  and  $\widehat{CD}$ :

15.



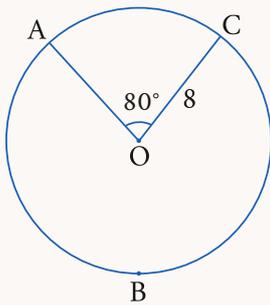
16.



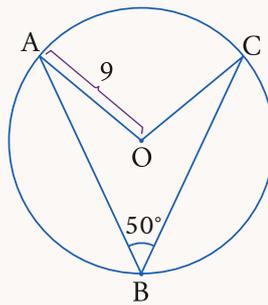
Regular Polygons and Circles

17 - 18. Find the length of major arc  $\widehat{ABC}$ :

17.



18.



19 - 22. Find the circumference of the circle whose ...

19. diameter is 30.

20. diameter is 8.

21. radius is 10.

22. radius is 6.

23. Find the radius and diameter of the circle whose circumference is 314.

24. Find the radius and diameter of the circle whose circumference is 100 (leave answer to the nearest whole number).

25. What is the circumference of an automobile wheel whose diameter is 14 inches?

26. What is the circumference of a 12 inch phonograph record?

27. What is the diameter of the earth if its circumference is 24,830 miles?

28. What is the diameter of a quarter mile circular running track?

7.6 AREA OF A CIRCLE

In chapter 6 we defined the area of a closed figure to be the number of square units contained in the figure. To apply this definition to the circle, we will again assume a circle is a regular polygon with a large number of sides. The following formula is then obtained:

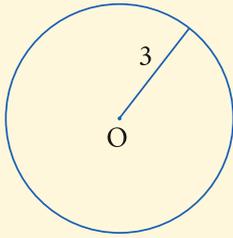
THEOREM 1

The area of circle is  $\pi$  times the square of its radius.

$$A = \pi r^2$$

EXAMPLE A

Find the area of the circle:



SOLUTION

$$A = \pi r^2 = \pi(3)^2 = 9\pi = 9(3.14) = 28.26.$$

ANSWER : 28.26.

Proof of Theorem 1:

The area of a circle with radius  $r$  is approximately equal to the area of a regular polygon with apothem  $a = r$  circumscribed about the circle (Figure 1). The approximation becomes more exact as the number of sides of the polygon becomes larger. At the same time the perimeter of the polygon approximates the circumference of the circle ( $= 2\pi r$ ).

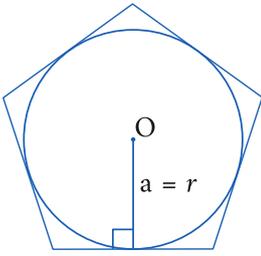


Figure 1. Regular polygon with apothem  $a = r$  circumscribed about circle with radius  $r$ .

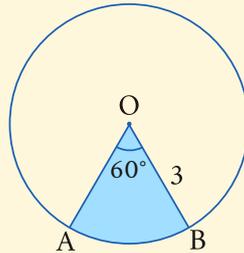
## Regular Polygons and Circles

Using the formula for the area of a regular polygon (**Theorem 4, Section 7.1**) we have

$$\text{area of circle} = \text{area of polygon} = \frac{1}{2} aP = \frac{1}{2} r(2\pi r) = \pi r^2.$$

### ? EXAMPLE B

Find the shaded area:



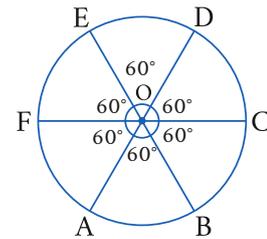
### SOLUTION

The shaded area OAB is  $\frac{60}{360} = \frac{1}{6}$  of the total area (see Figure 2).

The area of the whole circle =  $\pi r^2 = \pi(3)^2 = 9\pi = 9(3.14) = 28.26$ .

Therefore the area of OAB =  $\frac{1}{6} (28.26) = 4.71$ .

**ANSWER:** 4.71.



**Figure 2.**

A circle divided into six equal parts.

The shaded area in Example B is called a **sector** of the circle. Example B suggests the following formula for the area of a sector:

$$\text{Area of sector} = \frac{\text{Degrees in arc of sector}}{360} \cdot \text{Area of circle}$$

or simply

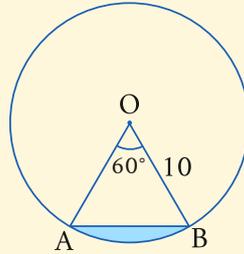
$$A = \frac{D}{360} \cdot \pi r^2 .$$

Using this formula, the solution of Example B would be

$$A = \frac{D}{360} \pi r^2 = \frac{60}{360} (3.14)(3)^2 = \frac{1}{6} (3.14)(9) = \frac{1}{6} (28.26) = 4.71.$$

**? EXAMPLE C**

Find the shaded area:



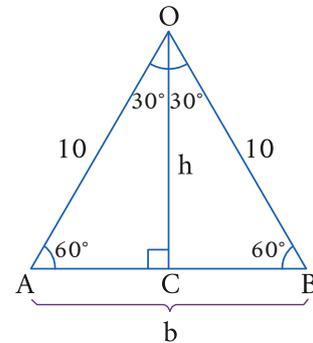
**SOLUTION**

Let us first find the area of triangle OAB (Figure 3).

$\triangle OAB$  is equilateral with base  $b = AB = 10$ . Drawing in height  $h = OC$  we have that  $\triangle AOC$  is a  $30^\circ - 60^\circ - 90^\circ$  triangle with  $AC = 5$  and  $h = 5\sqrt{3}$ . Therefore

shaded area = area of sector OAB – area of triangle OAB

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{D}{360} \pi r^2 - \frac{1}{2} bh \\ &= \frac{60}{360} \pi (10)^2 - \frac{1}{2} (10)(5\sqrt{3}) \\ &= \frac{1}{6} (100\pi) - \frac{1}{2} (50\sqrt{3}) \\ &= \frac{50\pi}{3} - 25\sqrt{3} \\ &= \frac{50(3.14)}{3} - 25(1.732) \\ &= 52.33 - 43.30 = 9.03. \end{aligned}$$



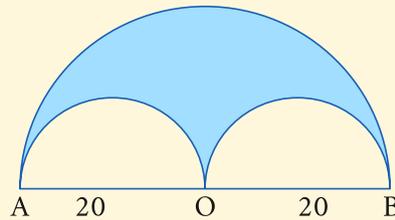
**Figure 3.**  
Triangle OAB with base  $b$  and height  $h$ .

**ANSWER :**  $\frac{50\pi}{3} - 25\sqrt{3}$  or 9.03.

The shaded area in Example C is called a **segment** of the circle. The area of a segment is obtained by subtracting the area of the triangle from the area of the sector.

**? EXAMPLE D**

Find the shaded area:



**SOLUTION**

The area of the large semicircle =  $\frac{1}{2} \pi r^2 = \frac{1}{2} \pi (20)^2 = \frac{1}{2} (400) \pi = 200\pi$ .

The area of each of the smaller semicircles =  $\frac{1}{2} \pi r^2 = \frac{1}{2} \pi (10)^2 = \frac{1}{2} (100) \pi = 50\pi$ .

Therefore

shaded area = area of large semicircle - (2)(area of small semicircles)

$$= 200\pi - 2(50\pi)$$

$$= 200\pi - 100\pi$$

$$= 100\pi = 100(3.14) = 314.$$

**ANSWER :**  $100\pi$  or 314.



**HISTORICAL NOTE**

Problem 50 of the Rhind Papyrus, a mathematical treatise written by an Egyptian scribe in about 1650 B.C., states that the area of a circular field with a diameter of 9 units is the same as the area of a square with a side of 8 units. This is equivalent to using the formula  $A = (\frac{8}{9} d)^2$  to find the area of a circle. If we let  $d = 2r$  this

becomes  $A = (\frac{8}{9} d)^2 = (\frac{8}{9} \cdot 2r)^2 = (\frac{16}{9} r)^2 = \frac{256}{81} r^2$  or about  $3.16r^2$ . Comparing this with our modern formula  $A = \pi r^2$  we find that the ancient Egyptians had a remarkably good approximation, 3.16, for the value of  $\pi$ .

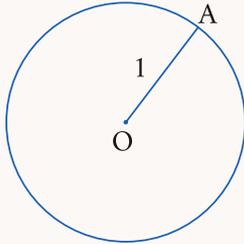
In the same work in which he calculated the value of  $\pi$ , Archimedes gives a formula for the area of a circle (see **Historical Note**, Section 7.5). He states that the area of a circle is equal to the area of a right triangle whose base  $b$  is as long as the circumference and whose altitude  $h$  equals the radius. Letting  $b = C$  and  $h = r$  in the formula for the area of a triangle, we obtain  $A = \frac{1}{2} bh = \frac{1}{2} Cr = \frac{1}{2} (2\pi r) = \pi r^2$ , the modern formula.



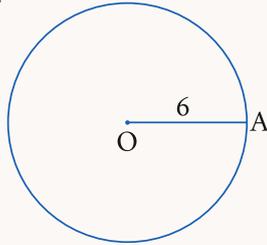
PROBLEMS

1 - 6. Find the area of the circle (use  $\pi = 3.14$ ):

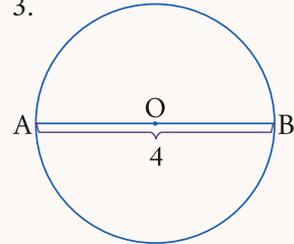
1.



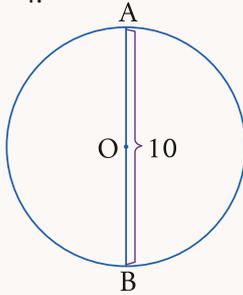
2.



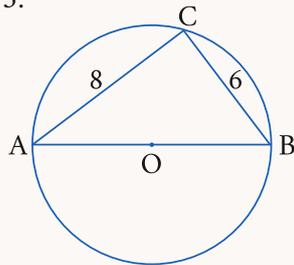
3.



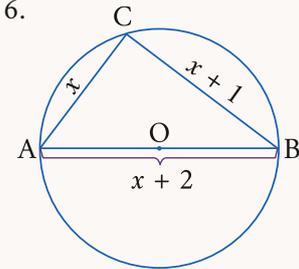
4.



5.



6.



7 - 10. Find the area of the circle with ...

7. radius 20.

8. radius 2.5

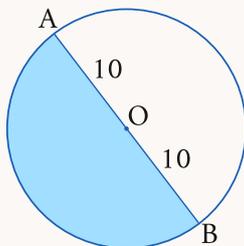
9. diameter 12.

10. diameter 15.

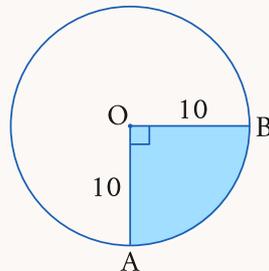
(use  $\pi = 3.14$ )

11 - 14. Find the shaded area (use  $\pi = 3.14$ ):

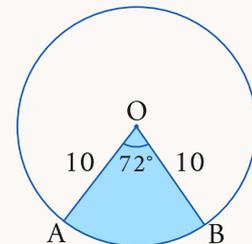
11.



12.

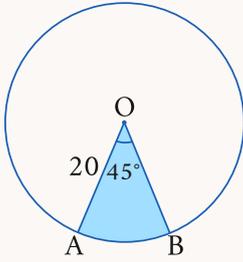


13.



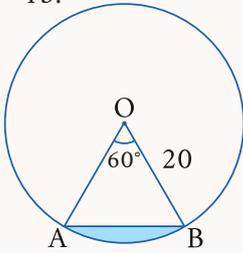
Regular Polygons and Circles

14.

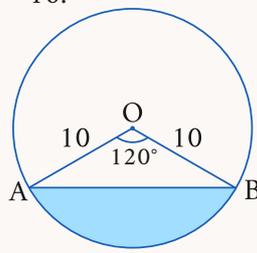


15 - 30. Find the shaded area. Answers may be left in terms of  $\pi$  and in radical form.

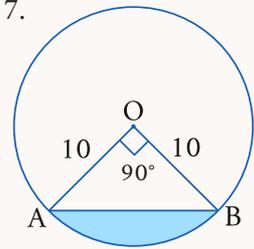
15.



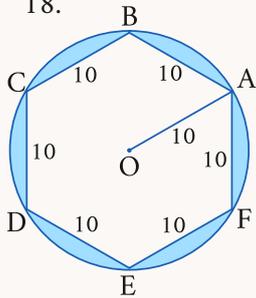
16.



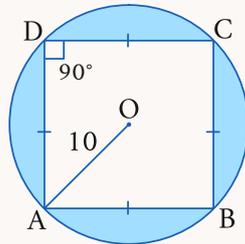
17.



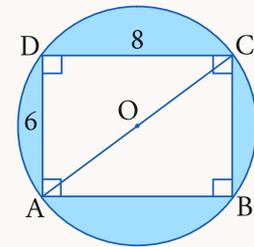
18.



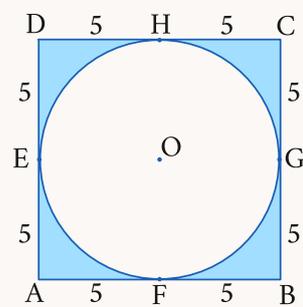
19.



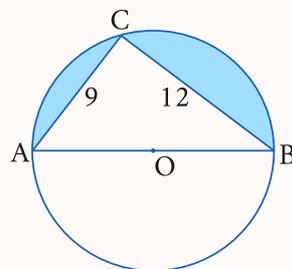
20.



21.

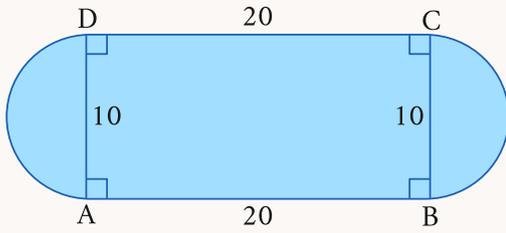


22.

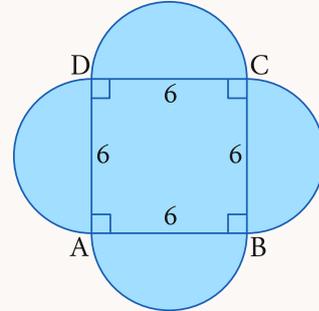


Regular Polygons and Circles

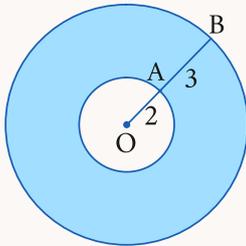
23.



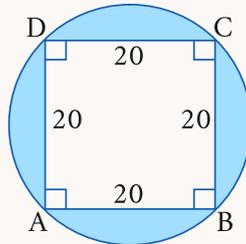
24.



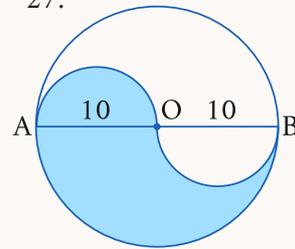
25.



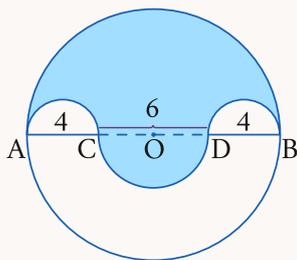
26.



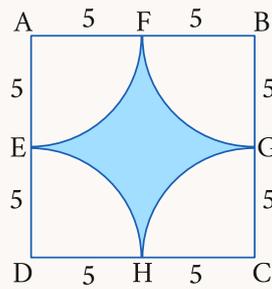
27.



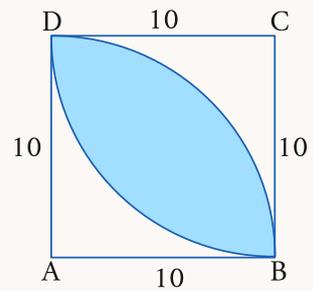
28.



29.



30.



PROOF OF THE Z THEOREM

In section 1.4 we stated but did not prove the following theorem:

THEOREM 1 (THE "Z" THEOREM)

If two lines are parallel then their alternate interior angles are equal. If the alternate interior angles of two lines are equal then the lines must be parallel.

Theorem 1 consists of two statements, each one the converse of the other. We will prove the second statement first:

THEOREM 1 (SECOND PART)

If the alternate interior angles of two lines are equal then the lines must be parallel. In Figure 1, if  $\angle x = \angle x'$  then  $\vec{AB}$  must be parallel to  $\vec{CD}$ .

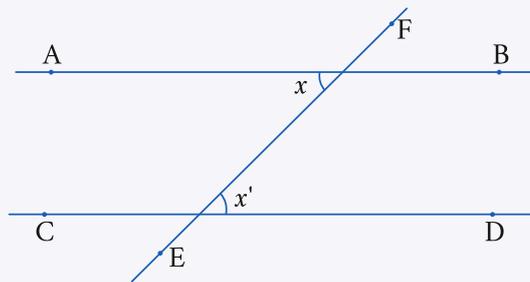


Figure 1. We will prove that if  $\angle x = \angle x'$  then  $\vec{AB}$  is parallel to  $\vec{CD}$ .

Proof:

Suppose  $\angle x = \angle x'$  and  $\vec{AB}$  is **not** parallel to  $\vec{CD}$ . This means that  $\vec{AB}$  and  $\vec{CD}$  meet at some point G, as in Figure 2, forming a triangle,  $\triangle KLG$ .

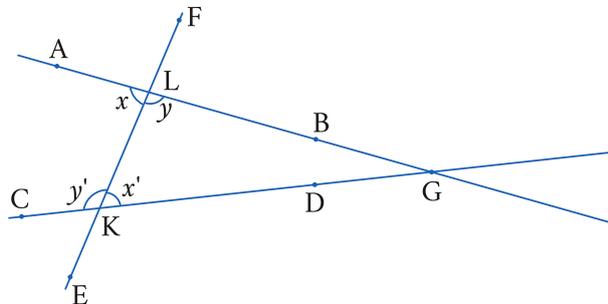
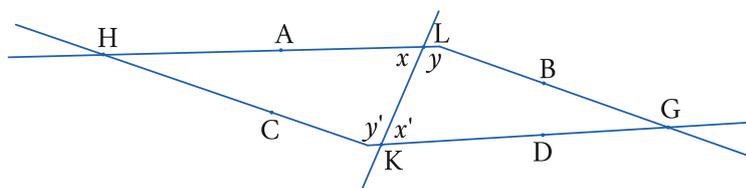


Figure 2. If  $\vec{AB}$  is not parallel to  $\vec{CD}$  then they must meet at some point G.

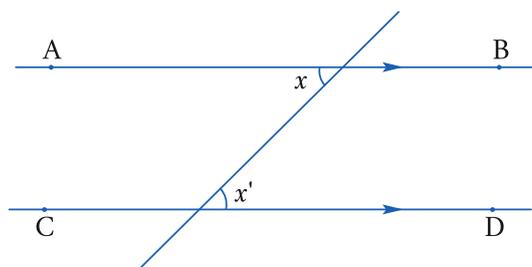
We know from the discussion preceding the **ASA Theorem** (Theorem 1, Section 2.3) that  $\triangle KLG$  can be constructed from the two angles  $\angle x'$  and  $\angle y$  and the included side  $KL$ . Now  $\angle x = \angle x'$  (by assumption) and  $\angle y' = \angle y$  ( $y' = 180^\circ - \angle x' = 180^\circ - \angle x = \angle y$ ). Therefore by the same construction  $\angle x$  and  $\angle y'$  when extended should yield a triangle congruent to  $\triangle KLG$ . Call this new triangle  $\triangle LKH$  (see Figure 3). We now have that  $\vec{AB}$  and  $\vec{CD}$  are both straight lines through  $G$  and  $H$ . This is impossible since one and only one distinct straight line can be drawn through two points. Therefore our assumption that  $\vec{AB}$  is **not** parallel to  $\vec{CD}$  is **incorrect**, that is,  $\vec{AB}$  must be parallel to  $\vec{CD}$ . This completes the proof.



**Figure 3.** Since  $\angle x = \angle x'$  and  $\angle y' = \angle y$ ,  $\angle x$  and  $\angle y'$  when extended should also form a triangle,  $\triangle LKH$ .

**THEOREM 1 (FIRST PART)**

If two lines are parallel then their alternate interior angles are equal. In Figure 4, if  $\vec{AB}$  is parallel to  $\vec{CD}$  then  $\angle x = \angle x'$ .

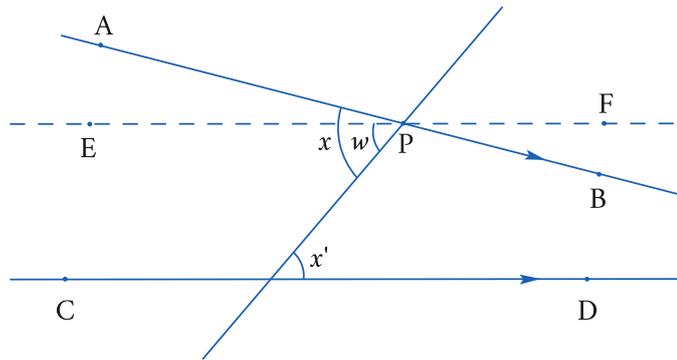


**Figure 4.** We will prove that if  $\vec{AB}$  is parallel to  $\vec{CD}$  then  $\angle x = \angle x'$ .

**Proof :**

Suppose  $\vec{AB}$  is parallel to  $\vec{CD}$  and  $\angle x \neq \angle x'$ . One of the angles is larger; suppose it is  $\angle x$  that is larger. Draw  $\vec{EF}$  through  $P$  so that  $\angle w = \angle x'$  as in Figure 5.  $\vec{EF}$  is parallel to  $\vec{CD}$  because we have just proven (Theorem 1, second part) that two lines are parallel if their alternate interior angles are equal.

This contradicts the parallel postulate (Section 1.4) which states that through a point not on a given line (here point  $P$  and line  $\overleftrightarrow{CD}$ ) one and only one line can be drawn parallel to the given line. Therefore  $\angle x$  must be equal to  $\angle x'$ . This completes the proof of **Theorem 1**.



**Figure 4.** Draw  $\overleftrightarrow{EF}$  so that  $\angle w = \angle x'$ .

## ■ BIBLIOGRAPHY

---

### **TEXTBOOKS**

Jacobs, Harold, *Geometry*, San Francisco, W. H. Freeman and Company, 1974.

Moise, Edwin E, and Downs, Floyd L., *College Geometry*, Reading, Mass., Addison-Wesley Publishing Company, 1971.

Richardson, Moses and Richardson, L. F., *Fundamentals of Mathematics*, 4th ed., New York, Macmillan Company, 1973.

Zlot, William, Graber, Matthew and Rauch, Harry E., *Elementary Geometry*, Baltimore, Williams & Wilkins Company, 1973.

### **HISTORIES**

Boyer, Carl B., *A history of Mathematics*, New York, John Wiley & Sons, 1968.

Eves, Howard W., *An Introduction to the History of Mathematics*, 4th ed., New York, Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1976.

Heath, Thomas L., editor, *The Thirteen Books of Euclid's Elements*, 3 volumes, New York, Dover Publications, 1956.

Kline, Morris, *Mathematical Thought from Ancient to Modern Times*, New York, Oxford University Press, 1972.

Smith, David E., *History of Mathematics*, 2 volumes, New York, Dover Publications, 1958.

## VALUES OF THE TRIGONOMETRIC FUNCTIONS

Angle	Sine	Cosine	Tangent
1°	0.0175	0.9998	0.0175
2°	0.0349	0.9994	0.0349
3°	0.0523	0.9986	0.0524
4°	0.0698	0.9976	0.0699
5°	0.0872	0.9962	0.0875
6°	0.1045	0.9945	0.1051
7°	0.1219	0.9925	0.1228
8°	0.1392	0.9903	0.1405
9°	0.1564	0.9877	0.1584
10°	0.1736	0.9848	0.1763
11°	0.1908	0.9816	0.1944
12°	0.2079	0.9781	0.2126
13°	0.2250	0.9744	0.2309
14°	0.2419	0.9703	0.2493
15°	0.2588	0.9659	0.2679
16°	0.2756	0.9613	0.2867
17°	0.2924	0.9563	0.3057
18°	0.3090	0.9511	0.3249
19°	0.3256	0.9455	0.3443
20°	0.3420	0.9397	0.3640
21°	0.3584	0.9336	0.3839
22°	0.3746	0.9272	0.4040
23°	0.3907	0.9205	0.4245
24°	0.4067	0.9135	0.4452
25°	0.4226	0.9063	0.4663
26°	0.4384	0.8988	0.4877
27°	0.4540	0.8910	0.5095
28°	0.4695	0.8829	0.5317
29°	0.4848	0.8746	0.5543
30°	0.5000	0.8660	0.5774
31°	0.5150	0.8572	0.6009
32°	0.5299	0.8480	0.6249
33°	0.5446	0.8387	0.6494
34°	0.5592	0.8290	0.6745
35°	0.5736	0.8192	0.7002
36°	0.5878	0.8090	0.7265
37°	0.6018	0.7986	0.7536
38°	0.6157	0.7880	0.7813
39°	0.6293	0.7771	0.8098
40°	0.6428	0.7660	0.8391
41°	0.6561	0.7547	0.8693
42°	0.6691	0.7431	0.9004
43°	0.6820	0.7314	0.9325
44°	0.6947	0.7193	0.9657
45°	0.7071	0.7071	1.0000

Angle	Sine	Cosine	Tangent
46°	0.7193	0.6947	1.0355
47°	0.7314	0.6820	1.0724
48°	0.7431	0.6691	1.1106
49°	0.7547	0.6561	1.1504
50°	0.7660	0.6428	1.1918
51°	0.7771	0.6293	1.2349
52°	0.7880	0.6157	1.2799
53°	0.7986	0.6018	1.3270
54°	0.8090	0.5878	1.3764
55°	0.8192	0.5736	1.4281
56°	0.8290	0.5592	1.4826
57°	0.8387	0.5446	1.5399
58°	0.8480	0.5299	1.6003
59°	0.8572	0.5150	1.6643
60°	0.8660	0.5000	1.7321
61°	0.8746	0.4848	1.8040
62°	0.8829	0.4695	1.8807
63°	0.8910	0.4540	1.9626
64°	0.8988	0.4384	2.0503
65°	0.9063	0.4226	2.1445
66°	0.9135	0.4067	2.2460
67°	0.9205	0.3907	2.3559
68°	0.9272	0.3746	2.4751
69°	0.9336	0.3584	2.6051
70°	0.9397	0.3420	2.7475
71°	0.9455	0.3256	2.9042
72°	0.9511	0.3090	3.0777
73°	0.9563	0.2924	3.2709
74°	0.9613	0.2756	3.4874
75°	0.9659	0.2588	3.7321
76°	0.9703	0.2419	4.0108
77°	0.9744	0.2250	4.3315
78°	0.9781	0.2079	4.7046
79°	0.9816	0.1908	5.1446
80°	0.9848	0.1736	5.6713
81°	0.9877	0.1564	6.3138
82°	0.9903	0.1392	7.1154
83°	0.9925	0.1219	8.1443
84°	0.9945	0.1045	9.5144
85°	0.9962	0.0872	11.4301
86°	0.9976	0.0698	14.3007
87°	0.9986	0.0523	19.0811
88°	0.9994	0.0349	28.6363
89°	0.9998	0.0175	57.2900
90°	1.0000	0.0000	

## ANSWERS TO ODD NUMBERED PROBLEMS

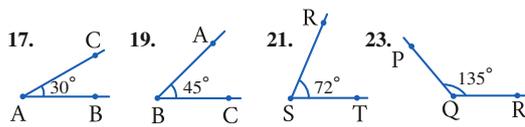
### CHAPTER 1

#### SECTION 1.1

1. 6  
 3.  $x = 9$ ,  $AC = 24$ .  
 5. 15  
 7. 3

#### SECTION 1.2

1.  $\angle CBD$  or  $\angle DBC$   
 3.  $\angle AED$  or  $\angle DEA$   
 5.  $\angle ABC$  or  $\angle CBA$   
 7.  $70^\circ$   
 9.  $x = 130^\circ$ ,  $y = 50^\circ$   
 11.  $x = 30^\circ$ ,  $y = 60^\circ$   
 13.  $\angle A = 60^\circ$ ,  $\angle B = 50^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 70^\circ$   
 15.  $\angle A = 110^\circ$ ,  $\angle B = 80^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 70^\circ$ ,  $\angle D = 100^\circ$



25.  $35^\circ$   
 27.  $30^\circ$

#### SECTION 1.3

1. (a)  $53^\circ$  (b)  $45^\circ$  (c)  $37^\circ$  (d)  $30^\circ$   
 3.  $15^\circ$   
 5.  $30^\circ$   
 7. (a)  $150^\circ$  (b)  $143^\circ$  (c)  $90^\circ$  (d)  $60^\circ$   
 9.  $30^\circ$   
 11.  $x=3$ ,  $-3$   
 13. 10  
 15.  $x = 70$ ,  $y = 110$ ,  $z = 70$   
 17.  $x = 30$ ,  $y = 45$ ,  $z = 105$   
 19.  $x = y = z = 90$   
 21.  $x = 40$ ,  $y = 80$ ,  $z = 100$   
 23. 8, -8  
 25. 4, -5  
 27.  $45^\circ$

#### SECTION 1.4

1.  $x = 50$ ,  $y = z = 130$   
 3.  $u = x = z = 120$ ,  $t = v = w = y = 60$   
 5. 55  
 7. 50  
 9. 50  
 11. 55  
 13. 60  
 15. 37

17. 11

19. alternate interior:  
 $\angle ABD$  &  $\angle CDB$  –  $AB \parallel CD$ ;  $\angle ADB$  &  $\angle CBD$  –  $AD \parallel BC$   
 21. corresponding:  
 $\angle BAC$  &  $\angle EDC$  –  $AB \parallel DE$ ;  $\angle ABC$  &  $\angle DEC$  –  $AB \parallel DE$   
 23. interior on same side of transversal:  
 $\angle BAD$  &  $\angle CDA$  –  $AB \parallel CD$ ;  $\angle ABC$  &  $\angle DCB$  –  $AB \parallel CD$   
 25. alternate interior:  
 $\angle BAC$  &  $\angle DCA$  –  $AB \parallel DE$ ;  $\angle ABC$  &  $\angle ECB$  –  $AB \parallel DE$   
 27.  $65^\circ$

#### SECTION 1.5

1.  $85^\circ$   
 3.  $37^\circ$   
 5.  $60^\circ$   
 7. 30  
 9. 6  
 11. 120  
 13.  $x = 50$ ,  $y = 40$ ,  $z = 50$   
 15.  $65^\circ$   
 17. 8  
 19. 24  
 21.  $720^\circ$   
 23.  $60^\circ$   
 25.  $108^\circ$

#### SECTION 1.6

1.  $2/3$   
 3. 6  
 5.  $x = 1$ ,  $AB = 2$   
 7.  $x = 9$ ,  $\angle ACB = 90^\circ$   
 9.  $\frac{25x + 11}{6}$ ,  $\frac{37}{2}$   
 11. 5

## CHAPTER 2

### SECTION 2.1

1.  $AB = DE$ ,  $BC = EF$ ,  $AC = DF$ ,  $\angle A = \angle D$ ,  
 $\angle B = \angle E$ ,  $\angle C = \angle F$ ,  $x = 5$ ,  $y = 6$
3.  $AB = CD$ ,  $BC = DA$ ,  $AC = CA$ ,  
 $\angle BAC = \angle DCA$ ,  $\angle B = \angle D$ ,  
 $\angle BCA = \angle DAC$ ,  $x = 55$ ,  $y = 35$
5.  $\triangle PQR \cong \triangle STU$
7.  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle ABD$
9.  $\triangle ABD \cong \triangle CDB$

### SECTION 2.2

1.  $BC = 1.7$ ,  $\angle B = 30^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 90^\circ$
3.  $BC = 1.95$ ,  $\angle B = 99^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 41^\circ$
5.  $\angle B$
7.  $\angle D$
9. (1)  $AC$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $AB$  of  $\triangle ABC = DF$ ,  $\angle D$ ,  $DE$  of  $\triangle DEF$   
(2)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$   
(3)  $x = 65$ ,  $y = 45$
11. (1)  $AB$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $BC$  of  $\triangle ABC = EF$ ,  $\angle F$ ,  $FD$  of  $\triangle EFD$   
(2)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EFD$   
(3)  $x = 40$ ,  $y = 50$
13. (1)  $AB$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $BC$  of  $\triangle ABC = ED$ ,  $\angle D$ ,  $DF$  of  $\triangle EDF$   
(2)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDF$   
(3)  $x = 8$
15. (1)  $AB$ ,  $\angle B$ ,  $BC$  of  $\triangle ABC = ED$ ,  $\angle D$ ,  $DF$  of  $\triangle EDF$   
(2)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDF$   
(3)  $x = 20$ ,  $y = 30$
17. (1)  $BA$ ,  $\angle A$ ,  $AC$  of  $\triangle ABC = DC$ ,  $\angle C$ ,  $CA$  of  $\triangle CDA$   
(2)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle CDA$   
(3)  $x = 22$
19. (1)  $AC$ ,  $\angle ACD$ ,  $CD$  of  $\triangle ACD = BC$ ,  $\angle BCD$ ,  $CD$   
of  $\triangle BCD$   
(2)  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$   
(3)  $x = 50$
21. (1)  $AD$ ,  $\angle ADC$ ,  $DC$  of  $\triangle ACD = BD$ ,  $\angle BDC$ ,  $DC$  of  
 $\triangle BCD$   
(2)  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$   
(3)  $x = 2$
23. (1)  $BC$ ,  $\angle BCA$ ,  $CA$  of  $\triangle ABC = DC$ ,  $\angle DCE$ ,  $CE$  of  
 $\triangle EDC$   
(2)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$   
(3)  $x = 20$ ,  $y = 10$
25. (1)  $AC$ ,  $\angle ACB$ ,  $CB$  of  $\triangle ABC = EC$ ,  $\angle ECD$ ,  $CD$  of  
 $\triangle EDC$   
(2)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$   
(3)  $x = 70$

### SECTION 2.3

1.  $BC = 1.9$ ,  $AC = 2.3$ ,  $\angle C = 90^\circ$
3.  $BC = 2.3$ ,  $AC = 1.9$ ,  $\angle C = 90^\circ$
5.  $AB$
7.  $DF$
9. (1)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$

(2)  $ASA = ASA$ :  $\angle A$ ,  $AB$ ,  $\angle B$  of  $\triangle ABC = \angle D$ ,  $DE$ ,  
 $\angle E$  of  $\triangle DEF$

(3)  $x = 5$ ,  $y = 6$

11. (1)  $\triangle RST \cong \triangle UVW$   
(2)  $AAS = AAS$ :  $\angle T$ ,  $\angle R$ ,  $RS$  of  $\triangle RST = \angle V$ ,  $\angle U$ ,  
 $UW$  of  $\triangle UVW$   
(3)  $x = 7$ ,  $y = 6$
13. (1)  $\triangle ABD \cong \triangle CDB$   
(2)  $ASA = ASA$ :  $\angle B$ ,  $BD$ ,  $\angle D$  of  $\triangle ABD = \angle D$ ,  $DB$ ,  
 $\angle B$  of  $\triangle CDB$   
(3)  $x = 30$ ,  $y = 25$
15. (1)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$   
(2)  $ASA = ASA$ :  $\angle A$ ,  $AC$ ,  $\angle ACB$  of  $\triangle ABC = \angle E$ ,  
 $EC$ ,  $\angle ECD$  of  $\triangle EDC$   
(3)  $x = 11$ ,  $y = 9$
17. (1)  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$   
(2)  $AAS = AAS$ :  $\angle A$ ,  $\angle ACD$ ,  $CD$  of  
 $\triangle ACD = \angle B$ ,  $\angle BCD$ ,  $CD$  of  $\triangle BCD$   
(3)  $x = 5$ ,  $y = 5$
19. (1)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$   
(2)  $ASA = ASA$ :  $\angle B$ ,  $BC$ ,  $\angle BCA$  of  $\triangle ABC = \angle D$ ,  
 $DC$ ,  $\angle DCE$  of  $\triangle EDC$   
(3)  $x = 2$ ,  $y = 3$
21. (1)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDF$   
(2)  $ASA = ASA$ :  $\angle B$ ,  $BC$ ,  $\angle C$  of  $\triangle ABC = \angle D$ ,  $DF$ ,  
 $\angle F$  of  $\triangle EDF$   
(3)  $x = 2$ ,  $y = 3$
23.  $\triangle PTB \cong \triangle STB$ ,  $ASA = ASA$ :  $\angle PTB$ ,  $TB$ ,  $\angle TBP$  of  
 $\triangle PTB = \angle STB$ ,  $TB$ ,  $\angle TBS$  of  $\triangle STB$ .  
 $SB = PB = 5$ ,  $SP = SB + BP = 5 + 5 = 10$ .
25.  $\triangle DEC \cong \triangle BAC$ ,  $ASA = ASA$ :  $\angle E$ ,  $EC$ ,  $\angle ECD$  of  
 $\triangle DEC = \angle A$ ,  $AC$ ,  $\angle ACB$  of  $\triangle BAC$ .  $AB = ED = 7$ .

### SECTION 2.4

1.  $\angle A = \angle D$  given,  $AB = DE$  given,  $\angle B = \angle E$  given,  
 $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ .  $ASA = ASA$ ,  $AC = DF$   
corresponding sides of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are =.
3.  $AC = EC$  given,  $\angle ACB = \angle ECD$  vertical  $\angle$ 's,  
 $BC = DC$  given,  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$   $SAS = SAS$ ,  
 $AB = ED$  corresponding sides of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are =.
5.  $\triangle ABD = \triangle CDB$  given,  $BD = DB$  identity,  
 $\angle ADB = \angle CBD$  given,  $\triangle ABD \cong \triangle CDB$ .  
 $ASA = ASA$ ,  $AB = CD$  corresponding sides of  
 $\cong \triangle$ 's are =.
7.  $AC = BC$  given,  $\angle ACD = \angle BCD$  given,  $CD = CD$   
identity,  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$ .  $SAS = SAS$ ,  $\angle A = \angle B$   
corresponding  $\angle$ 's of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are =.
9.  $\angle BAE = \angle DCE$  alternate interior  $\angle$ 's of  $\parallel$  lines are  
=,  $AB = CD$  given,  $\angle ABE = \angle CDE$  alternate interior  
 $\angle$ 's of  $\parallel$  lines are =,  $\triangle ABE \cong \triangle CDE$   $ASA = ASA$ ,  
 $AE = CE$  corresponding sides of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are =.

11.  $\angle ABC = \angle DCE$  corresponding  $\angle$ 's of  $\parallel$  lines are  $=$ ,  
 $\angle A = \angle D$  given,  $AC = DE$  given,  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DCE$   
 AAS = AAS,  $BC = CE$  corresponding sides of  $\cong \triangle$ 's  
 are  $=$ .

13.  $AD = BC$  given,  $\angle BAD = \angle ABC$  given,  $AB = BA$   
 identity,  $\triangle ABD \cong \triangle BAC$  SAS = SAS,  $AC = BD$   
 corresponding sides of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are  $=$ .

#### SECTION 2.5

1. 35
3. 7
5. 45
7.  $x = 18$ ,  $\angle A = \angle B = 52^\circ$ ,  $\angle C = 76^\circ$
9.  $x = 4$ ,  $AB = 24$ ,  $AC = BC = 21$
11.  $x = 1$ ,  $y = 4$ ,  $AC = 10$
13. 125

#### SECTION 2.6

1.  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle FDE$ , SSS = SSS:  $AB, BC, AC$  of  
 $\triangle ABC = FD, DE, FE$  of  $\triangle FDE$ ,  
 $x = 30$ ,  $y = 70$ ,  $z = 80$
3.  $\triangle ABD \cong \triangle CDB$ , SSS = SSS:  $AB, BD, AD$  of  
 $\triangle ABD = CD, DB, CB$  of  $\triangle CBD$ ,  
 $x = 70$ ,  $y = 50$ ,  $z = 60$
5.  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle EDC$ , SAS = SAS:  $AC, \angle ACB, CB$  of  
 $\triangle ABC = EC, \angle ECD, CD$  of  $\triangle EDC$ ,  
 $x = 8$ ,  $y = 60$ ,  $z = 56$
7.  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle ADC$ , ASA = ASA:  $\angle BAC, AC, \angle ACB$   
 of  $\triangle ABC = \angle DAC, AC, \angle ACD$  of  $\triangle ADC$ ,  
 $x = 3$ ,  $y = 4$
9.  $AB = DE, BC = EF, AC = DF$  given,  
 $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$ . SSS = SSS,  $\angle A = \angle D$  corresponding  
 $\angle$ 's of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are  $=$ .
11.  $AB = AD, BC = DC$  given,  $AC = AC$  identity,  
 $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle ADC$ . SSS = SSS,  $\angle BAC = \angle CAD$   
 corresponding  $\angle$ 's of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are  $=$ .
13.  $AE = CE$  given,  $\angle AEB = \angle CED$  vertical  $\angle$ 's are  $=$ ,  
 $EB = ED$  given,  $\triangle AEB \cong \triangle CED$  SAS = SAS,  
 $AB = CD$  corresponding sides of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are  $=$ .

#### SECTION 2.7

1. (1)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle DEF$   
 (2) Hyp - Leg = Hyp-Leg:  $AB, BC$  of  $\triangle ABC = DE,$   
 $EF$  of  $\triangle DEF$   
 (3)  $x = 42$ ,  $y = 48$
3. Triangles cannot be proven congruent.
5. Triangles cannot be proven congruent.
7. (1)  $\triangle ABC \cong \triangle CDA$   
 (2) AAS = AAS:  $\angle B, \angle BCA, CA$  of  
 $\triangle ABC = \angle D, \angle DAC, AC$  of  $\triangle CDA$   
 (3)  $x = 25$ ,  $y = 20$
9. (1)  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$

- (2) SAS = SAS :  $AD, \angle ADC, DC$  of  
 $\triangle ACD = BD, \angle BDC, DC$  of  $\triangle BCD$   
 (3)  $x = 4$

11. Triangles cannot be proven congruent.
13. Triangles cannot be proven congruent.
15. Triangles cannot be proven congruent.
17.  $OP = OP$  identity,  $OA = OB$  given,  
 $\triangle OAP \cong \triangle OBP$  Hyp-Leg = Hyp-Leg,  $AP = BP$   
 corresponding sides of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are  $=$ .
19.  $AB = CD, AD = CB$  given,  $BD = DB$  identity,  
 $\triangle ABD \cong \triangle CDB$ , SSS = SSS,  $\angle A = \angle C$   
 corresponding  $\angle$ 's of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are  $=$ .
21.  $AD = BD$  given,  $\angle ADC = \angle BDC = 90^\circ$  given  
 $AB \perp CD, CD = CD$  identity,  $\triangle ACD \cong \triangle BCD$ .  
 SAS = SAS,  $\angle A = \angle B$  corresponding  $\angle$ 's of  $\cong \triangle$ 's are  
 $=$ .

### CHAPTER 3

#### SECTION 3.1

1.  $w = 40, y = 140, r = 4, s = 8$
3.  $w = 35, x = 25, y = 120, z = 35$
5.  $x = 130, y = 50, z = 130$
7.  $x = 70, \angle A = 70^\circ, \angle B = 110^\circ, \angle C = 70^\circ, \angle D = 110^\circ$
9.  $x = 25, y = 20, AC = 40, BD = 50$
11.  $x = 2, AB = CD = 4$  or  $x = 3, AB = CD = 9$
13.  $x = 4, y = 1, AB = CD = 7, AD = BC = 3$
15.  $x = 4, y = 2, AC = 16, BD = 12$
17.  $x = 20, y = 10, \angle A = 40^\circ, \angle B = 140^\circ, \angle C = 40^\circ,$   
 $\angle D = 140^\circ$

#### SECTION 3.2

1.  $w = 50, x = 40, y = 50, z = 50$
3.  $x = 30, y = 60$
5.  $x = 4, y = 4, z = 4, AC = 8, BD = 8$
7.  $x = 40, y = 40, z = 100$
9. 1
11.  $x = y = z = 45$
13.  $x = 60, y = z = 120$
15.  $x = 135, y = 100$
17.  $w = x = 50, y = 130, z = 50$
19. 5.

## CHAPTER 4

### SECTION 4.1

- 1
- 12
- 21
- 20
- 6
- 1 or 6

### SECTION 4.2

- $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle FED$
- $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DFE$
- $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DBE$
- 6
- 7
- 1
- 5
- 6
- $x = 6, y = 1.5$
- 15
- $x = 4.5, y = 1.5, z = 15$
- 100 feet

### SECTION 4.3

- 5
- 1.5
- 4

### SECTION 4.4

- 10
- 8
- $\sqrt{2}$
- $\sqrt{3}$
- $3\sqrt{2}$
- $x = 6, BC = 6, AC = 8, AB = 10$
- $x = 17, PR = 8, QR = 15, PQ = 17$
- $2\sqrt{2}$
- $x = 3, AB = 16$
- $x = 7, AC = 30, BD = 16$
- $x = 8, y = 6$
- $x = 5, AB = 12, BD = 13$
- yes
- no
- no
- 24 feet
- no

### SECTION 4.5

- $x = 3\sqrt{3}, y = 6$
- $x = 5, y = 5\sqrt{3}$
- $x = \sqrt{3}, y = 2\sqrt{3}$
- $x = 3, y = 3\sqrt{2}$

- $x = y = 5\sqrt{2}$
- $10\sqrt{2}$
- $3\sqrt{2}$
- $x = 8, y = 4\sqrt{3}$
- $x = y = (5\sqrt{2})/2$
- $x = 3, y = 3\sqrt{3}$
- $x = 5\sqrt{3}, AB = 20$
- $x = 3, y = 6$
- $AC = 8, BD = 8\sqrt{3}$

### SECTION 4.6

- 4
- $\sqrt{3}$
- $2\sqrt{2}$

## CHAPTER 5

### SECTION 5.1

- $\frac{12}{13}, \frac{5}{13}, \frac{12}{5}, \frac{5}{13}, \frac{12}{13}, \frac{5}{12}$
- $\frac{8}{17}, \frac{15}{17}, \frac{8}{15}, \frac{15}{17}, \frac{8}{17}, \frac{15}{8}$
- $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \sqrt{3}$
- $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, 1, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}, 1$
- $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \sqrt{3}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$
- $\frac{2}{3}, \frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}, \frac{2\sqrt{5}}{5}, \frac{\sqrt{5}}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{\sqrt{5}}{2}$
- $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, \frac{1}{2}, \sqrt{3}$
- $\frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{3}$
- $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$
- $\frac{3\sqrt{10}}{10}, \frac{\sqrt{10}}{10}$

**SECTION 5.2**

1. 0.1736
3. 0.1736
5. 1.0000
7. 0.3090
9. 1.1918
11. 6.4
13. 7.7
15. 11.9
17. 8.4
19. 44.8
21. 7.8
23. 20.5
25. 14.5
27. 7.3
29. 4.8
31.  $42^\circ$
33.  $37^\circ$
35.  $56^\circ$
37.  $48^\circ$
39. 4.6
41.  $x = 4.6, y = 7.7$
43. 7.8
45.  $x = 8.2, y = 26.5$

**SECTION 5.3**

1. 50.3 feet
3. 5759 feet
5.  $1^\circ$
7. 18.8 feet

**CHAPTER 6****SECTION 6.1**

1.  $A = 12, P = 16$
3.  $A = 49, P = 28$
5.  $A = 3, P = 4\sqrt{5}$
7.  $A = 120, P = 46$
9.  $A = 48, P = 28$
11.  $A = 25\sqrt{3}, P = 10 + 10\sqrt{3}$
13.  $A = 50, P = 20\sqrt{2}$
15. 4
17. 4
19. 48000 square feet
21. 296
23. 450
25. 1800 pounds

**SECTION 6.2**

1.  $A = 240, P = 66$
3.  $A = 36, P = 28$
5.  $A = 96.4, P = 50$
7.  $A = 10, P = 10 + 4\sqrt{2}$
9. 7
11. 4
13.  $x = 8, y = 5$

**SECTION 6.3**

1. 60
3. 10
5. 11.5
7.  $A = 6, P = 12$
9.  $A = 108, P = 54$
11.  $A = 44, P = 28 + 4\sqrt{5}$
13.  $A = 60, P = 40$
15.  $A = 2, P = 4 + 2\sqrt{2}$
17.  $A = 16\sqrt{3}, P = 24$
19.  $A = 42.0, P = 31.4$
21. 5
23. 4

**SECTION 6.4**

1. 42
3.  $A = 96, P = 40$
5.  $A = 24, P = 20$
7.  $A = 32\sqrt{3}, P = 32$
9. 167.8

**SECTION 6.5**

1. 40
3.  $A = 36, P = 28$
5.  $A = 32, P = 21 + \sqrt{17}$
7.  $A = 44, P = 32$
9.  $A = 50 + 25\sqrt{3}, P = 40 + 10\sqrt{3}$
11.  $A = 375\sqrt{3}, P = 95 + 5\sqrt{21}$
13.  $A = 269.2, P = 84.9$
15. 7

## CHAPTER 7

### SECTION 7.1

1.  $x = y = z = 60, r = 3$
3.  $x = 72, y = z = 54, r = 7$
5.  $x = 90, y = z = 45, r = 5$
7.  $a = 27.5, P = 200, A = 2752.8$
9.  $a = 17.3, P = 120, A = 1039.2$
11.  $a = 30.8, P = 200, A = 3077.7$
13.  $a = 16.2, P = 117.6, A = 951.1$
15.  $a = 8.7, P = 60, A = 259.8$
17.  $a = 9.5, P = 61.8, A = 293.9$

### SECTION 7.2

1.  $r = 20, d = 40$
3. 30
5. 6
7.  $r = 15, d = 30$
9.  $r = 10, d = 20$
11.  $AB = 12, CD = 16$

### SECTION 7.3

1. 15
3. 80
5.  $x = 40, \angle O = 125^\circ, \angle P = 55^\circ$
7.  $x = 25, y = 24$
9. 10
11. 7
13. 36
15. 40

### SECTION 7.4

1.  $\widehat{AB} \cong 60, \widehat{ACB} \cong 300$
3.  $\widehat{AB} \cong 80^\circ, \widehat{ACB} \cong 280^\circ$
5.  $x = 80, y = 70, z = 90$
7.  $x = 60, y = 60, z = 60$
9.  $x = 35, y = 70, z = 70$
11. 130
13. 50
15. 60
17. 70
19. 50
21. 90
23. 12
25. 40
27.  $x = 50, y = z = 25$
29. 70
31.  $x = 45, y = 45, z = 90$
33. 35
35.  $x = 0.70, y = 40, z = 30$
37. 80
39.  $x = 45, y = 15, z = 60$
41.  $x = 30, y = 50, z = 80$
43. 30
45. 70

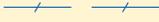
### SECTION 7.5

1. 31.4
3. 62.8
5. 12.56, 25.12
7. 40.82
9. 8.37
11. 52.3
13. 6.28
15.  $\widehat{AB} = 3.925, \widehat{CD} = 7.85$
17. 39.1
19. 94.2
21. 62.8
23.  $r = 50, d = 100$
25. 43.96 inches
27. 7907.6 miles

### SECTION 7.6

1. 3.14
3. 12.56
5. 78.5
7. 1256
9. 113.04
11. 157
13. 62.8
15.  $(200\pi/3) - 100\sqrt{3}$
17.  $25\pi - 50$
19.  $100\pi - 200$
21.  $100 - 25\pi$
23.  $200 + 25\pi$
25.  $21\pi$
27.  $50\pi$
29.  $100 - 25\pi$

## LIST OF SYMBOLS

<p>A, B,                    points A, B, 5</p> <p><math>\overleftrightarrow{AB}</math>                    line AB, 5</p> <p>AB                        line segment AB, 5</p> <p><math>\overrightarrow{AB}</math>                    ray AB, 5</p> <p>=                            equals, 5</p> <p>       equal line segments, 5</p> <p><math>\sphericalangle</math>                        angle, 11</p> <p>°                            degree, 11</p> <p>    equal angles, 14</p> <p>                    right angle, 19</p>		<p><math>\perp</math>                        perpendicular, 20</p> <p>                              parallel, 30</p> <p>       parallel lines, 30</p> <p><math>\triangle</math>                        triangle, 45</p> <p><math>\cong</math>                        congruent, 64</p> <p><math>\sim</math>                        similar, 141</p> <p>&gt;                            is greater than, 182</p> <p><math>\widehat{AB}</math>                        arc AB, 265</p> <p><math>\overset{\circ}{=}</math>                        equal in degrees, 265</p> <p><math>\pi</math>                            pi, 284</p>
---	--	--

- AA = AA, 142  
 AAA = AAA, 109  
 AAS Theorem, 80  
 acute angle, 19  
 acute triangle, 56  
 adjacent leg, 185  
 alternate interior angles, 31  
 altitude:  
   of a parallelogram, 216  
   of a trapezoid, 232  
   of a triangle, 58, 222  
 angle,  
   acute angle, 19  
   central angle, 265  
   exterior angle, 48  
   formed by a tangent and a chord, 273  
   formed by a tangent and a secant, 275  
   formed by two chords, 274  
   formed by two secants, 275  
   formed by two tangents, 275  
   has positive measure, 21  
   inscribed angle, 267  
   obtuse angle, 19  
   of a triangle, 45  
   of depression, 206  
   of elevation, 205  
   right angle, 19  
   straight angle, 19  
 angle bisector, 14, 59  
   of a regular polygon, 237  
 angle classification, 19  
 Angle - Side - Angle Theorem, 78, 83  
 angles:  
   alternate interior angles, 31  
   cointerior angles, 34  
   complementary angles, 20  
   corresponding angles:  
   of congruent triangles, 64  
   of parallel lines, 32  
   of similar triangles, 141  
   interior angles:  
   of a polygon, 115  
   of a regular polygon, 237  
   of a triangle, 48  
   on the same side of transversal, 34  
   supplementary angles, 22  
   vertical angles, 23  
 apothem, 239  
 Arabs, 178, 199  
 arc, 265  
   degrees in, 265  
   length of, 285  
 Archimedes, 287, 295  
 area, 209  
   of a circle, 292  
   of a parallelogram, 216  
   of a rectangle, 210  
   of a regular polygon, 241  
   of a rhombus, 228  
   of a sector, 293  
   of a segment, 294  
   of a square, 210  
   of a trapezoid, 232  
   of a triangle, 222  
 ASA Theorem, 78, 83  
 axiom, 26  
 Babylon, 9  
 Babylonians, 165, 213, 276,  
 base:  
   of a parallelogram, 216  
   of a trapezoid, 130, 232  
   of a triangle, 92, 222  
 base angles:  
   of a trapezoid, 130  
   of a triangle, 92  
 bisect, diagonals of a parallelogram, 120  
 bisector, angle 14, 59  
 bisector, perpendicular, 20  
   of a chord, 252  
 bisects, 14  
 brace, 103  
 bridge of fools, 98  
 C Theorem, 35  
 center:  
   of a circle, 247  
   of a regular polygon, 237  
 central angle, 265  
 chord of a circle, 248  
 circle, 247  
   area of, 292  
   circumference of, 283  
   diameter of, 248  
   radius of, 247  
 circumference of a circle, 283  
 circumference of the earth, 287  
 circumscribed polygon, 261  
 cointerior angles, 34  
 collinear points, 8  
 compass, 247  
 complement, 20  
 complementary angles, 20  
 congruence, reasons for, 110  
 congruent triangles, 64  
 converse of a statement, 94  
 corollary of a theorem, 95  
 corresponding angles:  
   of congruent triangles, 64  
   of parallel lines, 32  
   of similar triangles, 141  
 corresponding sides:  
   of congruent triangles, 64  
   of similar triangles, 141  
   are proportional, 143

cosine, 186, 199  
     table of values, 303  
 cross multiplication, 139  
  
 decagon, 115  
 degree, 11  
 degrees:  
     in a circle, 265  
     in an arc, 265  
     in an angle, 11  
     sum of, in the angles of:  
         a pentagon, 50  
         a quadrilateral, 50  
         a triangle, 45  
 depression, angles of, 206  
 diagonals:  
     bisect each other, 120  
     of a rectangle, 128  
     of a rhombus, 125  
     of a parallelogram, 115  
     of an isosceles trapezoid, 131  
 diameter of a circle, 248  
 distance:  
     between two points, 5  
     from a point to a line, 182, 183  
 double column of proof, 48, 87  
  
 Egypt, 9, 149  
 Egyptians, 213, 287, 295,  
 Einstein, 39  
 equal:  
     angles, 14  
     in degrees, 265  
     line segments, 5  
 equiangular triangle, 56, 96  
 equilateral triangle, 56, 96, 237  
 Eratosthenes, 287  
 Euclid, 9, 39, 74  
 Euclid's Elements, 9, 39, 74, 98, 213, 255  
 exterior angle of a triangle, 48  
  
 extremes of a proportions, 137  
  
 F Theorem, 33  
 formalist school, 74  
 45-45-90 triangle, 174  
  
 Gauss, Kal Friedrich, 52  
 geometry, 5, 9  
 given, 88  
 Greeks, 9, 213, 276  
  
 height:  
     of a trapezoid, 232  
     of a triangle, 222  
     of a parallelogram, 216  
 hexagon, 237  
 Hilbert, David, 74  
 Hindus, 178, 199  
 Hipparchus, 199  
 Hyp-Leg = Hyp-Leg, 107  
 hypotenuse 57, 158  
 Hypotenuse - Leg Theorem, 107  
  
 identity, 79, 88  
 included angle, 69  
 included side, 78  
 infinite series:  
     for sine function, 200  
     for  $\pi$ , 288  
 inscribed angle, 267  
 inscribed circle, 261  
 intercept, 265, 267  
 interior angles:  
     of a polygon, 115  
     of a regular polygon, 237  
     of a triangle, 48  
     on the same side of the transversal, 34  
 invalid reasons for congruence, 110  
 irrational numbers, 178  
  
 isosceles right triangle, 174  
 isosceles trapezoid, 130  
 isosceles triangle, 56, 92  
  
 legs of a right triangle, 57, 158  
 legs of a trapezoid, 130  
 Leibniz, 200  
 length:  
     of a line segment, 5  
     is always positive, 8  
     of an arc, 285  
 line, 5  
 line segment, 5  
 Lobachevsky, N. I., 39  
 longer leg of a 30-60-90 triangle, 172  
  
 major arc, 265  
 means of a proportion, 137  
 measure of an angle, 11, 19  
 median of a triangle, 59  
 midpoint, 6  
 minor arc, 265  
  
 Napoleon, 83  
 Newton, 200  
 non-Euclidean geometry, 39, 52  
  
 obtuse angle, 19  
 obtuse triangle, 56  
 octagon, 115, 238  
 opposite angle of a triangle, 92  
 opposite angles of a parallelogram, 116  
 opposite side of a triangle, 92  
 opposite sides of a parallelogram, 116  
 opposite leg, 185  
  
 parallel lines, 30  
 parallel postulate, 30, 39, 52

parallelogram, 115  
     area of, 216  
 pentagon, 50, 115, 237  
     sum of the angles of, 50  
 perimeter, 210  
     of a regular polygon, 241, 242  
     of a triangle, 60  
 perpendicular, 20  
 perpendicular bisector, 20  
 pi ( $\pi$ ), 284, 287  
 plane, 5  
 plane geometry, 5  
 point, 5  
 polygon, 115  
 perimeter of, 210  
 polygon, regular, 237  
     area of, 241  
     positive measure of an angle, 21  
 positive length, 8  
 postulate, 26  
 proof, 26, 88  
 proportion, 137  
 protractor, 11, 12  
 proving lines and angles are equal, 87  
 pyramids in Egypt, 149  
 Pythagoras, 9, 165  
 Pythagorean School, 9, 165, 178  
 Pythagoren Theorem, 158  
     converse of, 162  
  
 quadrilateral, 50, 115  
     sum of the angles of, 50  
 quadrilaterals, 125  
     properties of, 133  
     summary of, 132  
  
 radius:  
     of a circle, 247  
     of a regular polygon, 238  
  
 ray, 5  
 Reasons for Congruence, 110  
 rectangle, 126, 127  
     area of, 210  
 reflex angle, 19  
 regular polygon, 237  
     area of, 241  
     center of, 237  
     perimeter of, 241, 242  
     radius of, 238  
 relativity, 39  
 remote interior angle, 48  
 Rhind papyrus, 295  
 rhombus, 125  
     area of, 228  
 Riemann, Georg, 39  
 right angle, 19  
 right triangle, 57  
     isosceles, 174  
     Pythagorean Theorem, 158  
     solution of, 194  
     special, 171  
     trigonometry of, 185  
 rigid figure, 104  
 Russell, Bertrand, 74  
  
 SAS Theorem, 69, 74  
 scalene triangle, 56  
 secant, 275  
 sector of a circle, 294  
 semicircle, 265  
 shorter leg of a 30-60-90 triangle, 172  
 Side-Angle-Side Theorem, 69, 74  
 Side-Side-Side Theorem, 101  
 sides:  
     of a polygon, 115  
     of a triangle, 45  
     of an angle, 11  
 similar triangles, 109, 141  
     corresponding angles, 141  
     corresponding sides, 141  
     are proportional, 143  
 similarity statement, 141, 143  
 sine, 186, 199  
     infinite series, 200  
     table of values, 303  
     SOHCAHTOA, 187  
 special right triangles, 171  
 square, 129, 237  
     area of, 209, 210  
 SSA = SSA, 110  
 SSS Theorem, 101  
 straight line, 5  
 straight angle, 19  
 successive angles of a parallelogram, 118  
 sum of the angles:  
     of a triangle, 45, 52  
     of a quadrilateral, 50  
     of a pentagon, 50  
 supplement, 22  
 supplementary angles, 22  
  
 table of trigonometric values, 303  
 table of Hipparchus, 199  
 tangent:  
     of an angle, 186, 199  
     table of values, 303  
     to a circle, 257  
 Thales, 9, 83, 98, 149  
 theorem, 26  
 theory of relativity, 39  
 30-60-90 triangle, 171, 172  
 transversal, 31  
     to three lines, 154  
 trapezoid, 130  
     area of, 232  
     isosceles, 130  
 triangle, 45  
     acute, 56  
     area of, 209  
     equiangular, 56, 96  
     equilateral, 56, 96, 237.

- isosceles, 56, 92
- obtuse, 56
- right, 57
- scalene, 56
- sum of the angles, 45
- triangles:
  - congruent, 64
  - similar, 109, 141
- triangular bracing, 103
- trigonometric functions, 186
  - table of values of, 303
- trigonometry, 185
  
- unincluded side, 80
- unit square, 209
- units of measurement, 6
  
- vertex:
  - of an angle, 11
  - of a triangle, 45
  - of a polygon, 115
- vertical angles, 23
  
- Z Theorem, 31, 299.